# Technical Specification For

Utah Valley University
New Parking and Facilities Building
Division of Facilities Construction Management Project Number 09247790

02 August 2010

P+A Architects
821 Kensington Avenue
Salt Lake City, Utah 84105

TABLE OF CONTENTS


- PROJECT DIRECTORY
- GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION

ARCHITECTURAL SPECIFICATIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| DIVISION 1 | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS |
| Section 01010 | SUMMARY OF WORK |
| Section 01027 | APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT |
| Section 01035 | MODIFICATION PROCEDURES |
| Section 01040 | COORDINATION |
| Section 01045 | CUTTING AND PATCHING |
| Section 01200 | PROJECT MEETING |
| Section 01300 | SUBMITTALS |
| Section 01400 | QUALITY CONTROL |
| Section 01500 | CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND TEMPORARY CONTROLS |
| Section 01700 | CONTRACT CLOSEOUT |
| Section 01740 | WARRANTIES |
| DIVISION 2 | SITE WORK |
| Section 02060 | BUILDING DEMOLITION |
| Section 02080 | UTILITY MATERIALS |
| Section 02230 | SITE CLEARING |
| Section 02300 | EARTHWORK |
| Section 02510 | WATER DISTRIBUTION |
| Section 02511 | HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVING |
| Section 02751 | CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT |
| Section 02764 | PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS |
| DIVISION 3 | CONCRETE |
| Section 03300 | CAST-IN PLACE CONCRETE |
| Section 03490 | GLASS-FIBER REINFORCED PRECAST CONCRETE |
| DIVISION 4 | MASONRY |
| Section 04810 | UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES |
| DIVISION 5 | METALS |
| Section 05210 | STEEL JOISTS |
| Section 05310 | STEEL DECK |
| Section 05400 | COLD FORM METAL FRAMING |
| Section 05500 | METAL FABRICATIONS |
| Section 05511 | METAL STAIRS |
| Section 05521 | PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS |

DIVISION 6 WOODS AND PLASTICS

Section 06105 MISCELLANEOUS CARPENTRY
Section 06200 FINISH CARPENTRY
Section 06402 INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL

DIVISION 7 THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTERCTION

Section 07210 BUILDING INSULATION
Section 07430 ALUMINUM COMPOSITE PANELS
Section 07531 EDPM SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE ROOFING
Section 07620 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM
Section 07720 ROOF ACCESSORIES
Section 07841 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEMS
Section 07900 JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 8 DOORS AND WINDOWS

Section 08110 STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES
Section 08211 FLUSH WOOD DOORS
Section 08410 ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS
Section 08710 DOOR HARDWARE
Section 08800 GLAZING
Section 08920 GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

DIVISION 9 FINISHES

Section 09255 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES
Section 09265 GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT-WALL ASSEMBLIES
Section 09310 CERAMIC TILE
Section 09511 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS
Section 09570 WOOD CEILING SYSTEMS
Section 09651 RESILIENT TILE FLOORING
Section 09653 RESILIENT WALL BASE AND ACCESSORIES
Section 09680 CARPET
Section 09770 SPECIAL WALL SURFACES (Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Panels)
Section 09900 PAINTING

DIVISION 10 SPECIALTIES

Section 10100 VISUAL DISPLAY BOARDS
Section 10155 TOILET COMPARTMENTS
Section 10520 FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES
Section 10801 TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

DIVISION 11 EQUIPMENT

NOT USED

DIVISION 12 FURNISHINGS

Section 12511 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

DIVISION 13 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

Section 13916 FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING

DIVISION 14 CONVEYING SYSTEMS

Section 14200 LIMITED USE/LIMITED APPLICATION COMMERCIAL ELEVATOR

MECHANICAL SPECIFICATIONS

DIVISION 15

Section 15010 MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS
Section 15050 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC
Section 15055 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
Section 15060 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
Section 15075 IDENTIFICATION FOR PIPING EQUIPMENT
Section 15082 EQUIPMENT INSULATION
Section 15083 PIPE INSULATION
Section 15100 GENERAL PIPING VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING
Section 15122 METERS AND GAUGES
Section 15170 COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
Section 15185 HYDRONIC PUMPS
Section 15241 VIBRATION ISOLATIONS AND SEISMIC RESTRAINTS
Section 15411 WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING
Section 15420 DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPING
Section 15425 PLUMBING SPECIALTIES
Section 15440 PLUMBING FIXTURES
Section 15445 WATER DISTRIBUTION PUMPS
Section 15486 ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
Section 15510 HYDRONIC PIPING
Section 15545 CHEMICAL WATER TREATMENT
Section 15714 LOUVERS AND VENTS
Section 15745 HEAT PUMPS
Section 15810 COMMON DUCT REQUIREMENTS
Section 15815 METAL DUCTS
Section 15820 AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
Section 15853 POWER VENTILATORS
Section 15855 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS AND GRILLS
Section 15860 ELECTRIC HEATER UNIT
Section 15875 AIR TO AIR ENERGY RECOVERY UNIT
Section 15900 HVAC INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS
Section 15975 GENERAL TESTING, ADJUSTING, BALANCING AND COMMISSIONING
Section 15993 SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC CONTROLS

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

DIVISION 16


| | |
|---|---|
| Section 16051 | COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL |
| Section 16060 | GROUNDING AND BONDING |
| Section 16073 | HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEM |
| Section 16074 | VIBRRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS |
| Section 16075 | ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION |
| Section 16120 | CONDUCTORS & CABLES |
| Section 16130 | RACEWAY AND BOXES |
| Section 16139 | CABLE TRAYS |
| Section 16140 | WIRING DEVICES |
| Section 16145 | LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES |
| Section 16269 | VARIABLE FREQUENCY CONTROLLER |
| Section 16410 | ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS |
| Section 16442 | PANELBOARDS |
| Section 16511 | INTERIOR LIGHTING |
| Section 16521 | EXTERIOR LIGHTING |
| Section 16852 | DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM |

Applied Geotechnical Engineering Consultants, Inc.

# GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION

## PROPOSED FACILITIES BUILDING

UTAH VALLEY UNIVERSITY
APPROXIMATELY 910 SOUTH 400 WEST

OREM, UTAH

PREPARED FOR:

PRIOR & ASSOCIATES ARCHITECTS
821 EAST KENSINGTON AVENUE
SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH 84105

ATTENTION: SCOTT PRIOR

PROJECT NO. 1090751

DECEMBER 3, 2009

600 West Sandy Parkway • Sandy, Utah 84070 • (801) 566-6399 • FAX (801) 566-6493

TABLE OF CONTENTS


EXECUTIVE SUMMARY . . . . . Page 1

SCOPE . . . . . Page 2

SITE CONDITIONS . . . . . Page 2

FIELD STUDY . . . . . Page 3

SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS . . . . . Page 3

SUBSURFACE WATER . . . . . Page 4

PROPOSED CONSTRUCTION . . . . . Page 5

RECOMMENDATIONS . . . . . Page 5
- A. Site Grading . . . . . Page 5
- B. Foundations . . . . . Page 7
- C. Concrete Slab-on-Grade . . . . . Page 9
- D. Lateral Earth Pressures . . . . . Page 9
- E. Seismicity, Faulting and Liquefaction . . . . . Page 11
- F. Water Soluble Sulfates . . . . . Page 12

LIMITATIONS . . . . . Page 13

REFERENCES . . . . . Page 14

FIGURES AND TABLES

| | |
|---|---|
| LOGS OF EXPLORATORY BORINGS | FIGURE 1 |
| LOGS, LEGEND AND NOTES OF EXPLORATORY BORINGS | FIGURE 2 |
| GRADATION TEST RESULTS | FIGURE 3 |
| SUMMARY OF LABORATORY TEST RESULTS | TABLE I |

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

1. Up to approximately 3 feet of fill was encountered in the upper portion of borings drilled at the site. Approximately 3½ to 7½ feet of gravel was encountered below the fill. Silty sand was encountered below the gravel and extends the maximum depth investigated, approximately 15½ feet.

2. No free water was encountered in the borings drilled at the site at the time of our field investigation to the maximum depth investigated, approximately 15½ feet.

3. Up to approximately 3 feet of fill was encountered in the upper portion of borings drilled at the site. Fill associated with demolition of the existing structure, unsuitable fill, topsoil, debris, organics and other deleterious material should be removed from below the proposed building area.

4. The proposed structure may be supported on spread footings bearing on the undisturbed natural soil or on compacted structural fill extending down to the undisturbed natural soil. Footings bearing on the undisturbed natural soil may be designed using an allowable net bearing pressure of 2,000 pounds per square foot (psf). Footings bearing on at least 2 feet of undisturbed natural gravel or on at least 2 feet of properly compacted structural fill extending down to undisturbed natural soil may be designed using an allowable net bearing pressure of 3,000 pounds per square foot.

5. Geotechnical information related to foundations, subgrade preparation, and compaction is included in the report.

## SCOPE

This report presents the results of a geotechnical investigation for the proposed Facilities Building for Utah Valley University to be located at approximately 910 South 400 West in Orem, Utah. The report presents the subsurface conditions encountered, laboratory test results and recommendations for design and construction at the site. The study was conducted in general accordance with our proposal dated October 27, 2009.

Field exploration was conducted to obtain information on the subsurface conditions. Samples obtained from the field investigation were tested in the laboratory to determine physical and engineering characteristics of the on-site soil. Information obtained from the field and laboratory was used to define conditions at the site for our engineering analysis and to develop recommendations for the proposed construction.

This report has been prepared to summarize the data obtained during the study and to present our conclusions and recommendations based on the proposed construction and the subsurface conditions encountered. Design parameters and a discussion of geotechnical engineering considerations related to construction are included in the report.

## SITE CONDITIONS

The site is located within the Utah Valley University Facilities Compound located at approximately 910 South 400 West in Orem, Utah. The Facilities Compound contains several single story slab-on-grade structures surrounded by asphaltic concrete pavement and landscaping areas.

The site for the proposed Facilities Building is the location of the existing Plant Services Building (see Figure 1). The Plant Services Building is a single-story, slab-on-grade masonry structure. Concrete flatwork and landscaping areas surround the building.

400 West Street extends along the east side of the site. The Space Planning and Development, Greenhouse Grounds and Key Shop buildings extend along the south and west sides of the site. An asphalt paved parking area extends north of the site.

## FIELD STUDY

The field study was conducted on November 25, 2009. Two borings were drilled at the approximate locations indicated on Figure 1. The borings were drilled using 8 inch diameter hollow stem auger powered by a truck mounted drill rig. The borings were logged and soil samples obtained by an engineer from AGEC. Logs of the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings are graphically shown on Figure 2.

## SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

Up to approximately 3 feet of fill was encountered in the upper portion of borings drilled at the site. Approximately 3½ to 7½ feet of gravel was encountered below the fill. Silty sand was encountered below the gravel and extends the maximum depth investigated, approximately 15½ feet.

A description of the soils encountered in the borings follows:

Fill - The fill consists of silty and clayey sand with small amounts of gravel. It is moist and brown to dark brown.

Clayey Sand - The clayey sand contains occasional gravel. It is medium dense, moist and brown to dark brown.

Laboratory tests conducted on a sample of clayey sand indicate that it has a natural moisture content of 17 percent and a natural dry density of 101 pounds per cubic foot (pcf).

Silty Sand- The silty sand contains occasional gravel. It is medium dense, slightly moist to moist and brown.

Laboratory tests conducted on a sample of the silty sand indicate that it has a natural moisture content of 16 percent and a natural dry density of 99 pcf.

Gravel - The gravel is well-and poorly-graded and contains small to moderate amounts of silt and sand. The angular gravel has a maximum particle size of approximately 2 inches. The gravel is dense to very dense, slightly moist and gray to grayish brown.

Laboratory tests conducted on a sample of the gravel indicate that it has a natural moisture content of 6 percent and natural dry density of 120 pcf.

Results of a gradation test conducted on a relatively small sample of the gravel are presented on Figure 3.

Results of laboratory tests are summarized on Table I and are included on the Logs of Exploratory Borings.

## SUBSURFACE WATER

No free water was encountered in the borings drilled at the site at the time of our field investigation to the maximum depth investigated, approximately 15½ feet.

## PROPOSED CONSTRUCTION

We understand that the existing Plant Services Building is planned to be demolished and removed from the site. The proposed Facilities Building is planned to be a single-story, slab-on-grade, masonry structure. The building is planned to be approximately 5,000 square feet in size.

We have assumed that building loads will consist of wall loads of up to 5 kips per lineal foot and column loads of up to 50 kips.

If the proposed construction or building loads are significantly different from those described above, we should be notified to reevaluate the recommendations given.

## RECOMMENDATIONS

Based on the subsurface conditions encountered, laboratory test results and our understanding of the proposed construction, the following recommendations are given:

A. Site Grading

Final site grading plans were not available at the time of our investigation. We anticipate that there will be less than 3 feet in elevation change at the site.

Topsoil, organics, unsuitable fill, debris associated with demolition of structure at the site and other deleterious materials should be removed from below proposed building areas.

1. Excavation

Excavation at the site can be accomplished with typical excavation equipment. Care should be taken to minimize disturbance of the soils to remain below the proposed structure.

2. Materials

Listed below are materials recommended for imported structural fill.

| Fill to Support | Recommendations |
|---|---|
| Footings | Non-expansive granular soil<br>Passing No. 200 Sieve < 35%<br>Liquid Limit < 30%<br>Maximum size 4 inches |
| Floor Slab<br>(Upper 4 inches) | Sand and/or Gravel<br>Passing No. 200 Sieve < 5%<br>Maximum size 2 inches |
| Slab Support | Non-expansive granular soil<br>Passing No. 200 Sieve < 50%<br>Liquid Limit < 30%<br>Maximum size 6 inches |

Materials placed as fill to support the building should consist of non-expansive granular soil. The on-site granular fill and natural sand and gravel meeting the criteria above may be used as fill below structures, as site grading fill and utility trench backfill.

The on-site soil may require moisture conditioning (wetting or drying) prior to use as fill. Drying of the soil may not be practical during cold or wet times of the year.

3. Compaction

Compaction of materials placed at the site should equal or exceed the minimum densities as indicated below when compared to the maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D1557.

| Fill To Support | Compaction |
|---|---|
| Foundations | ≥ 95% |
| Concrete Slabs and Pavement | ≥ 90% |
| Landscaping | ≥ 85% |
| Retaining Wall Backfill | 85 - 90% |

To facilitate the compaction process, fill should be compacted at a moisture content within 2 percent of the optimum moisture content.

Fill and pavement materials placed for the project should be frequently tested during construction for compaction. Fill should be placed in thin enough lifts to allow for proper compaction.

4. Drainage

The ground surface surrounding the proposed building should be sloped away from the building in all directions. Roof downspouts and drains should discharge beyond the limits of backfill.

B. Foundations

1. Bearing Material

With the proposed construction and the subsurface conditions encountered, the building may be supported on spread footings bearing on the undisturbed natural soil or on compacted structural fill extending down to the undisturbed

natural soil. Structural fill should extend out away from the edge of the footings at least a distance equal to the depth of fill beneath footings.

Unsuitable fill, topsoil, organics, debris associated with demolition of existing structures and other deleterious materials should be removed from below proposed foundation areas.

2. Bearing Pressures

Footings bearing on the undisturbed natural soil may be designed using an allowable net bearing pressure of 2,000 psf. Footings bearing on at least 2 feet of undisturbed natural gravel or on at least 2 feet of properly compacted structural fill extending down to undisturbed natural soil may be designed using an allowable net bearing pressure of 3,000 psf.

Footings should have a minimum width of 18 inches and a minimum depth of embedment of 10 inches.

3. Temporary Loading Conditions

The allowable bearing pressures indicated above may be increased by one-half for temporary loading conditions such as wind or seismic loads.

4. Settlement

Based on the subsurface conditions encountered and the assumed building loads, we estimate that total settlement for foundations designed and constructed as described above will be on the order of ¾ inch or less. Differential settlement is estimated to be on the order of ½ inch or less.

5. Frost Depth

Exterior footings and footings beneath unheated areas should be placed at least 30 inches below grade for frost protection.

6. Foundation Base

The base of footing excavations should be cleared of loose or deleterious material prior to structural fill or concrete placement.

7. Construction Observation

A representative of the geotechnical engineer should observe footing excavations prior to structural fill or concrete placement.

C. Concrete Slab-on-Grade

1. Slab Support

Concrete slabs may be supported on the undisturbed natural soil or on compacted structural fill extending down to the natural undisturbed soil. Unsuitable fill, topsoil, organics and other deleterious materials should be removed from below proposed floor slabs.

2. Underslab Sand and/or Gravel

A 4-inch layer of free draining sand and/or gravel (less than 5 percent passing the No. 200 sieve) should be placed below the concrete slabs for ease of construction and to promote even curing of the slab concrete.

3. Vapor Barrier

Vapor barrier should be placed under the concrete floor if the floor will receive an impermeable floor covering. The barrier will reduce the amount of water vapor passing from below the slab to the floor covering.

D. Lateral Earth Pressures

1. Lateral Resistance for Footings

Lateral resistance for spread footings placed on the natural soil or on compacted structural fill is controlled by sliding resistance between the

footing and the foundation soils. A friction value of 0.4 may be used in design for ultimate lateral resistance for footings.

2. Subgrade Walls and Retaining Structures

The following equivalent fluid weights are given for design of subgrade walls and retaining structures. The active condition is where the wall moves away from the soil. The passive condition is where the wall moves into the soil and the at-rest condition is where the wall does not move. The values listed below assume a horizontal surface adjacent the top and bottom of the wall.

| Soil Type | Active | At-Rest | Passive |
|---|---|---|---|
| Clay & Silt | 50 pcf | 65 pcf | 250 pcf |
| Sand & Gravel | 40 pcf | 55 pcf | 300 pcf |

3. Seismic Conditions

Under seismic conditions, the equivalent fluid weight should be increased by 26 pcf for active and at-rest conditions and decreased by 26 pcf for the passive condition. This assumes a short period spectral response acceleration of 1.17g for a 2 percent probability of exceedance in a 50-year period (IBC 2006 and 2009).

4. Safety Factors

The values recommended above assume mobilization of the soil to achieve soil strength. Conventional safety factors used for structural analysis for such items as overturning and sliding resistance should be used in design.

E. Seismicity, Faulting and Liquefaction

1. Seismicity

Listed below is a summary of the site parameters for the 2006 and 2009 International Building Code.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| a. | Site Class | C |
| b. | Short Period Spectral Response Acceleration, $S_s$ | 1.17g |
| c. | One Second Period Spectral Response Acceleration, $S_1$ | 0.49g |

2. Faulting

There are no mapped active faults extending through the project site. The closest mapped fault which is considered active is the Wasatch Fault located approximately 3¼ miles northeast of the site (Black and others, 2003).

3. Liquefaction

The site is located in an area mapped as having a "low" to "very low" potential for liquefaction (Anderson and others, 1994). Research indicates that the soil type most susceptible to liquefaction during a large magnitude earthquake is loose, clean sand. The liquefaction potential for soil tends to decrease with an increase in fines content and density.

The subsurface conditions encountered at the site to the depth investigated, consist primarily of sand and gravel. No free water was encountered in the borings to the maximum depth investigated, approximately 15½ feet. Clay and soil above the free water level are not considered susceptible to liquefaction.

Based on the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings to the depth investigated and our understanding of geologic conditions in the area, it is our professional opinion that liquefaction is not a concern for the project site.

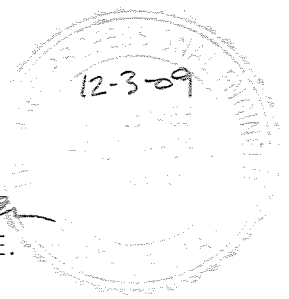
F. Water Soluble Sulfates

One sample of the natural soil was tested in the laboratory for water soluble sulfate content. Test results indicate there is less than 0.1 percent water soluble sulfate in the sample tested. Based on the results of the test and published literature, the natural soil possesses a negligible sulfate attack potential on concrete. No special cement type is needed for concrete placed in contact with the natural soil. Other conditions may dictate the type of cement to be used in concrete for the project.

LIMITATIONS

This report has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted soil and foundation engineering practices in the area for the use of the client for design purposes. The conclusions and recommendations included within the report are based on the information obtained from the borings drilled at the approximate locations indicated on Figure 1 and the data obtained from laboratory testing. Variations in the subsurface conditions may not become evident until additional exploration or excavation is conducted. If the subsurface conditions or groundwater level is found to be significantly different from what is described above, we should be notified to reevaluate the recommendations given.

APPLIED GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING CONSULTANTS, INC.




Christopher J. Beckman, P.E.

Reviewed by Matthew B. Olsen, P.E.

CJB/rs

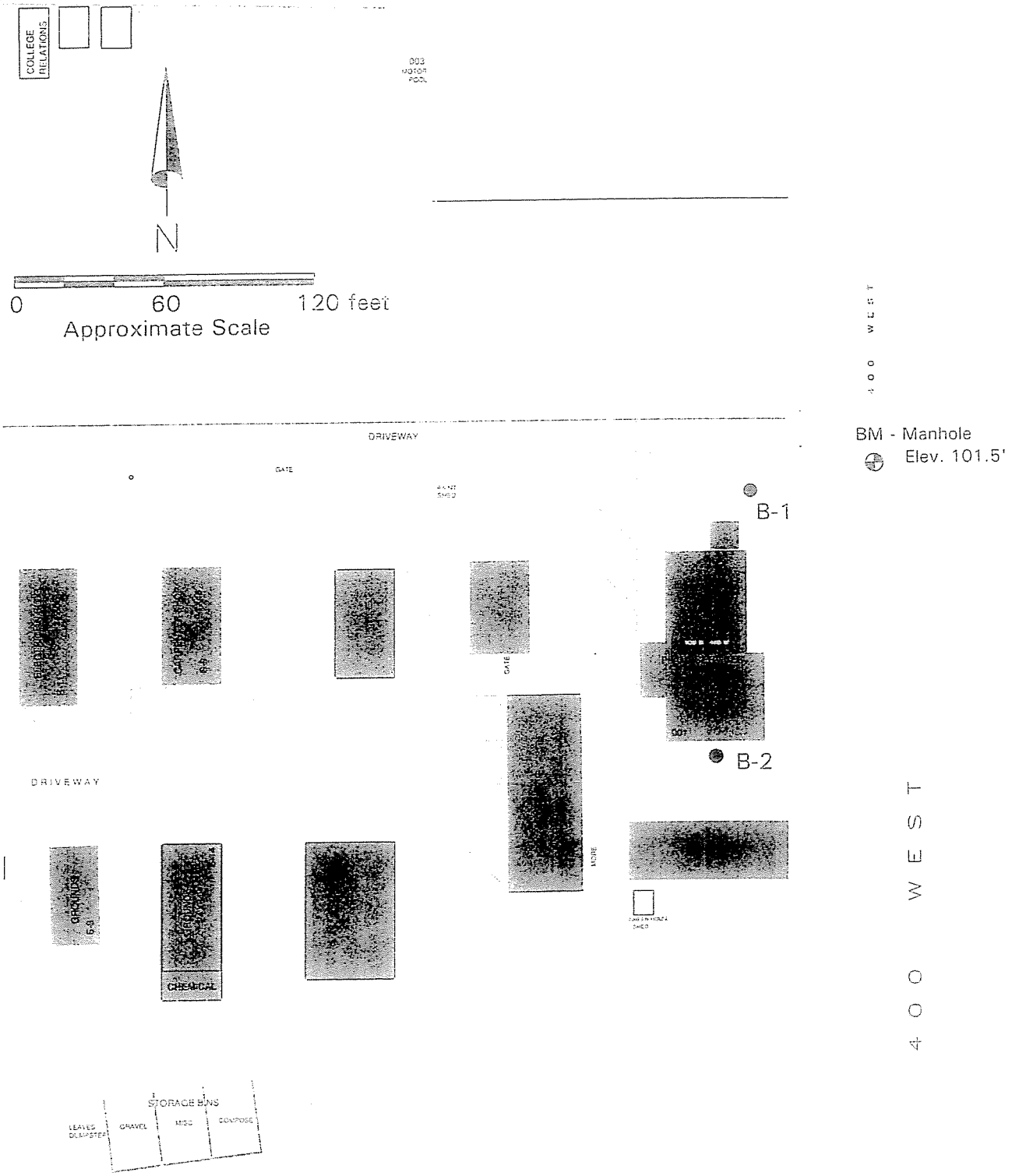
## REFERENCES

Anderson, L.R., Keaton, J.R., and Rice, J.D., 1994; Liquefaction Potential map for Central Utah, Utah Geological Survey, Contract Report 94-10.

Anderson, L. R., Keaton, J. R. and Bischoff, J. E., 1994; Liquefaction Potential Map for Utah County, Utah Geological Survey Contract Report 94-8.

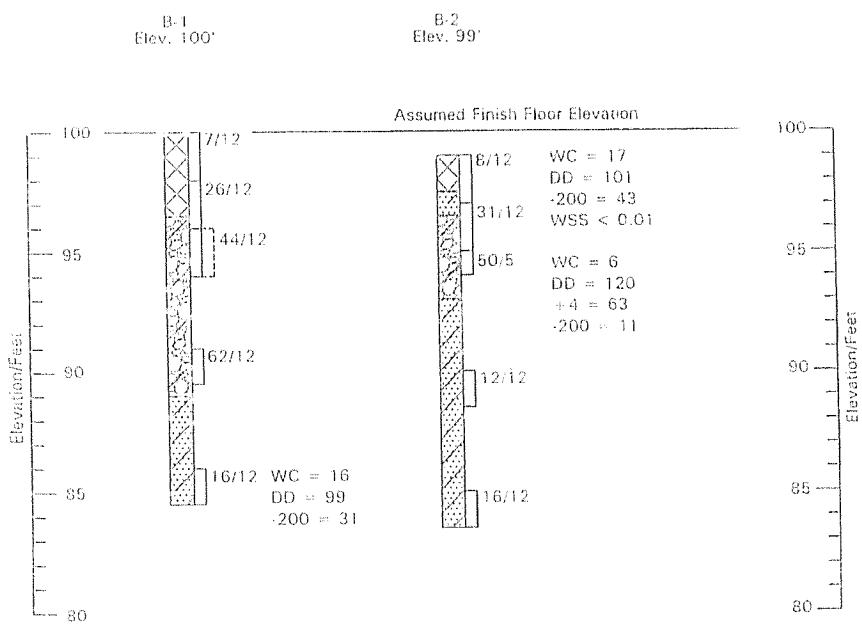
Black,B.D.,Hecker, S., Hylland, M.D.,Chrstenson,G.E., and McDonald,G.N.,2003;Quaternary fault and fold database and map of Utah; Utah Geological Survey Map 193M.

International Building Code, 2006 and 2009; International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia.




PROPOSED FACILITIES BUILDING
UTAH VALLEY UNIVERSITY
APPROXIMATELY 910 SOUTH 400 WEST
OREM, UTAH

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1090751 | AGE | Locations of Exploratory Borings | Figure 1 |




LEGEND:

Fill; silty and clayey sand, small amounts of gravel, moist, brown to dark brown.

Clayey Sand (SC); occasional gravel, medium dense, moist, brown to dark brown.

Silty Sand (SM); occasional gravel, medium dense, slightly moist to moist, brown.

Well and Poorly Graded Gravel with Silt (GW-GM, GP-GM); small to moderate amounts of silt and sand, angular gravel up to approximately 2 inches in size, dense to very dense, slightly moist, gray to grayish brown.

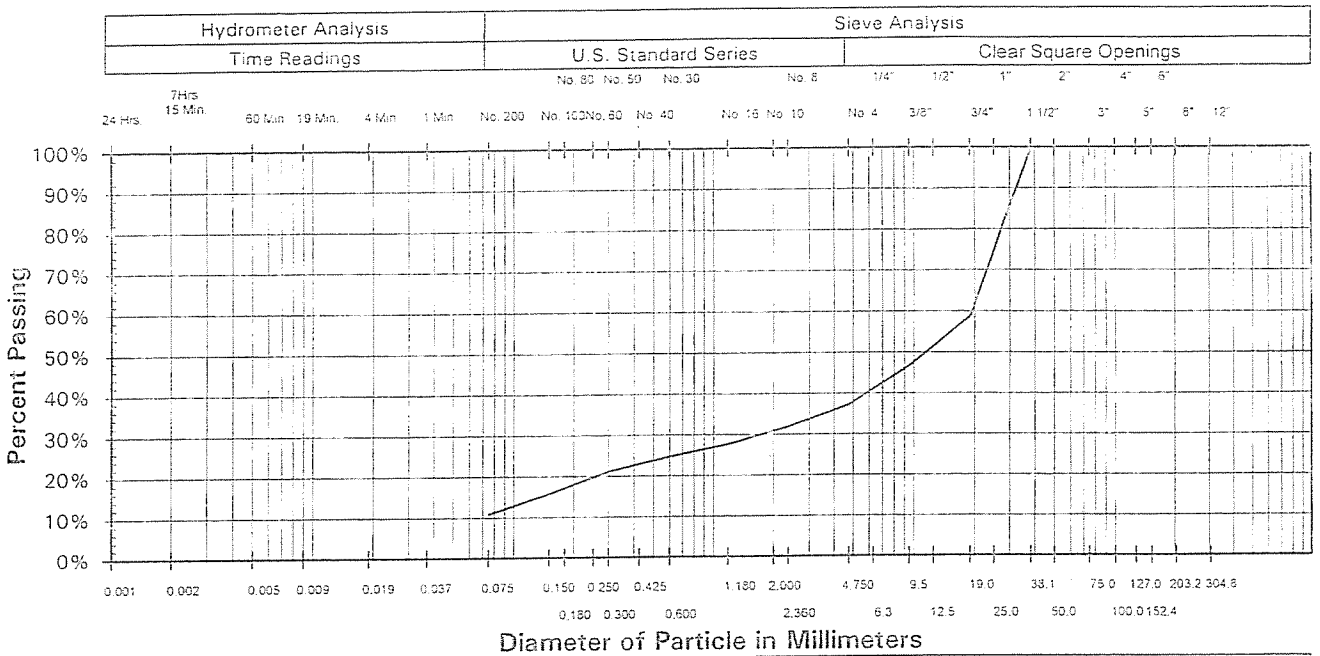
10/12 California Drive sample taken. The symbol 10/12 indicates that 10 blows from a 140 pound automatic hammer falling 30 inches were required to drive the sampler 12 inches.

Indicates disturbed sample taken.

NOTES:

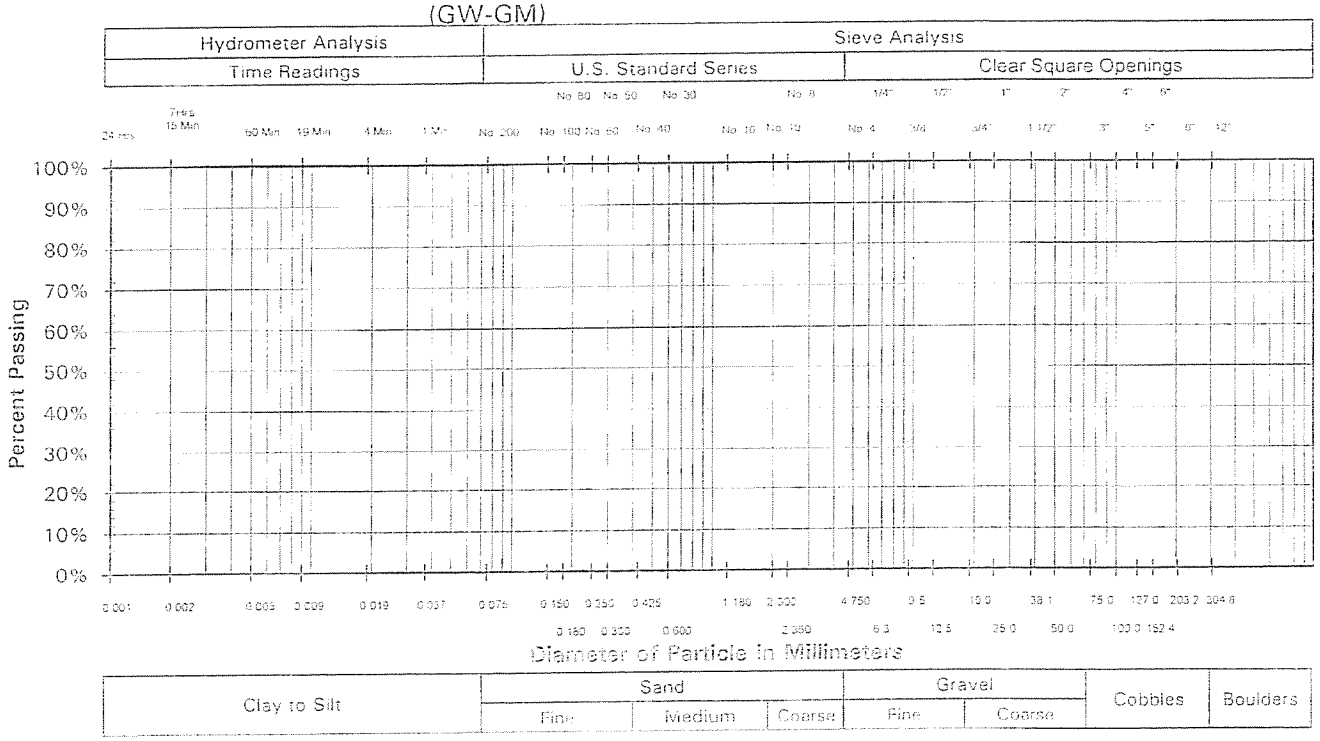
1. Borings were drilled on November 25, 2009 with 8-inch diameter hollowstem auger.
2. Locations of borings were measured approximately by pacing from features shown on the site plan provided.
3. Elevations of borings were measured by hand level and refer to the bench mark shown on Figure 1.
4. The boring locations and elevations should be considered accurate only to the degree implied by the method used.
5. The lines between the materials shown on the boring logs represent the approximate boundaries between material types and the transitions may be gradual.
6. No subsurface water was encountered in the borings at the time of drilling.
7. WC = Water Content (%);
   DD = Dry Density (pcf);
   +4 = Percent Retained on No. 4 Sieve;
   -200 = Percent Passing No. 200 Sieve;
   WSS = Water Soluble Sulfates (%).

Approximate Vertical Scale 1" = 8'




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Gravel | 63% | Liquid Limit | - |
| Sand | 26% | Plasticity Index | - |
| Silt and Clay | 11% | Sample Location | B-2 @ 4 feet |

Sample Description: Well Graded Gravel with Silt and Sand (GW-GM)




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Gravel | - | Liquid Limit | - |
| Sand | - | Plasticity Index | - |
| Silt and Clay | - | Sample Location | |

Sample Description

APPLIED GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING CONSULTANTS, INC.

TABLE I

## SUMMARY OF LABORATORY TEST RESULTS

PROJECT NUMBER 1090751

| SAMPLE LOCATION | | NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT (%) | NATURAL DRY DENSITY (PCF) | GRADATION | | | ATTERBERG LIMITS | | UNCONFINED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (PSF) | WATER SOLUBLE SULFATE (%) | SAMPLE CLASSIFICATION |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| BORING | DEPTH (FEET) | | | GRAVEL (%) | SAND (%) | SILT/ CLAY (%) | LIQUID LIMIT (%) | PLASTICITY INDEX (%) | | | |
| B-1 | 14 | 16 | 99 | | | 31 | | | | | Silty Sand (SM) |
| B-2 | 0 | 17 | 101 | | | 43 | | | | <0.01 | Clayey Sand (SC) |
| | 4 | 6 | 120 | 63 | 26 | 11 | | | | | Well Graded Gravel with Silt and Sand (GW-GM) |

# SECTION 01010 - SUMMARY OF WORK

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. The Project consists of demolition of the existing space, site landscaped items and construction of a new building as shown on construction documents.

1. Project Location: Utah Valley University – Extended Education Building, Orem Utah
2. Owner: State of Utah, Utah Valley University

B. Contract Documents, dated August 2nd, 2010, were prepared for the project by P+A architects located at 821 East Kensington Avenue, Salt Lake City, Utah

C. The Work will be constructed under a single prime contract.

D. Use of the Site: Limit use of premises to areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of the site beyond the areas indicated.

1. Keep driveways and entrances clear. Do not use these areas for parking or material storage. Schedule deliveries to minimize on-site storage of materials and equipment.

## 1.2 CONTRACTOR USE OF PREMISES

A. General: During the construction period the Contractor shall have use of the premises for construction operations as shown on construction documents including. The Contractor's use of the premises is limited only by the Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of the Project. Parking and contractor staging at the site is limited and will be reviewed at the pre bid conference.

B. Use of the Site: Limit use of the premises to work in areas indicated. Confine operations to areas within contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of the site beyond the areas in which the Work is indicated.

1. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving the premises clear and available to other occupants and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

END OF SECTION 01010

# SECTION 01027 - APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Coordinate the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment with the Contractor's Construction Schedule, Submittal Schedule, and List of Subcontracts.

B. Schedule of Values: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of the Contractor's Construction Schedule.

1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative schedules and forms, including:

   a. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
   b. Application for Payment forms, including Continuation Sheets.
   c. List of subcontractors.
   d. List of products.
   e. List of principal suppliers and fabricators.
   f. Schedule of submittals.

2. Submit the Schedule of Values at the earliest possible date but no later than 7 days before the date scheduled for submittal of the initial Applications for Payment.

C. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish the format for the Schedule of Values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.

1. Include the following Project identification:

   a. Project name and location.
   b. Name of Architect.
   c. Project number.
   d. Contractor's name and address.
   e. Date of submittal.

2. Arrange the Schedule of Values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:

   a. Related Specification Section or Division.
   b. Description of Work.
   c. Name of subcontractor.
   d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
   e. Name of supplier.
   f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
   g. Dollar value.
   h. Percentage of Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.

3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in sufficient detail to facilitate evaluation of Applications for Payment. Break subcontract amounts down into several line items. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; the total shall equal the Contract Sum.
4. Provide a separate line item for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment, purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.

5. Provide separate line items for initial cost of the materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value.
6. Show line items for indirect costs and margins on costs only when such items are listed individually in Applications for Payment. Each item in the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include the total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit margin for each item.

    a. Temporary facilities and items that are not direct cost of work-in-place may be shown as separate line items or distributed as general overhead expense.

7. Update and resubmit the Schedule of Values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives change the Contract Sum.

D. Applications for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by the Owner and paid for by the Owner.

E. Payment-Application Times: Payment dates are indicated in the Agreement. The period covered by each application is the period indicated in the Agreement.

F. Payment-Application Forms: Use D.F.C.M. form for Applications for Payment.

G. Application Preparation: Complete every entry, including notarization and execution by a person authorized to sign on behalf of the Contractor. The owner will return incomplete applications without action.

1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and the Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued prior to the last day of the construction period covered by the application.

H. Transmittal: Submit 3 executed original copies of each Application for Payment to the ownerwithin 24 hours. One copy shall be complete, including waivers of lien and similar attachments.

1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal listing attachments and recording appropriate information related to the application.

I. Waivers of Mechanics Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of lien from every entity who may file a lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.

1. Submit partial waivers on each item for the amount requested, prior to deduction for retainage, on each item.
2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit final or full waivers.
3. Submit each Application for Payment with Contractor's waiver of lien for the period of construction covered by the application.

    a. Submit final Applications for Payment with final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who may file a lien.

4. Waiver Forms: Submit waivers of lien on forms, and executed in a manner, acceptable to the Owner.

J. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of the first Application for Payment include the following:

1. List of subcontractors.
2. List of principal suppliers and fabricators.
3. Schedule of Values.
4. Contractor's Construction Schedule (preliminary if not final).
5. Submittal Schedule (preliminary if not final).
6. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
7. Copies of building permits.
8. Copies of licenses from governing authorities.
9. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
10. Performance and payment bonds.

K. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: Following issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment. This application shall reflect Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.

1. Administrative actions and submittals that shall precede or coincide with this application include the following:

a. Occupancy permits.
b. Warranties and maintenance agreements.
c. Maintenance instructions.
d. Meter readings.
e. Changeover information related to Owner's occupancy.
f. Final cleaning.
g. Application for reduction of retainage and consent of surety.

L. Final Payment Application: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of the final Application for Payment include the following:

1. Completion of Project closeout requirements.
2. Completion of items specified for completion after Substantial Completion.
3. Transmittal of Project construction records to the Owner.
4. Removal of temporary facilities and services.
5. Change of door locks to Owner's access.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

1.3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01027

# SECTION 01035 - MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing contract modifications.

1. Multiple Prime Contracts: Provisions of this Section apply to the work of each prime contractor.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section.

1. Division 1 Section "Submittals" for requirements for the Contractor's Construction Schedule.
2. Division 1 Section "Applications for Payment" for administrative procedures governing Applications for Payment.

### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. The Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time on D.F.C.M. Supplemental Instructions forms.

### 1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROPOSAL REQUESTS

A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: The Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that will require adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

1. Proposal requests issued by the Architect are for information only. Do not consider them as an instruction either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within 20 days of receipt of a proposal request, submit an estimate of cost necessary to execute the change to the Architect for the Owner's review.

a. Include a list of quantities of products required and unit costs, with the total amount of purchases to be made. Where requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
c. Include a statement indicating the effect the proposed change in the Work will have on the Contract Time.

B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: When latent or unforseen conditions require modifications to the Contract, the Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to the Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining the reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required and unit costs, with the total amount of purchases to be made. Where requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Comply with requirements in Section "Product Substitutions" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for a product or system specified.

C. Proposal Request Form: Use D.F.C.M. forms for Change Order Proposal Requests.

D. Proposal Request Form: Use D.F.C.M. Change Order Forms.

1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. Construction Change Directive: When the Owner and the Contractor disagree on the terms of a Proposal Request, the Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on D.F.C.M. form. The Construction Change Directive instructs the Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

1. The Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of the change in the Work. It also designates the method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.

1. After completion of the change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. Upon the Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, the Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of the Owner and the Contractor on D.F.C.M. forms.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01035

# SECTION 01040 - COORDINATION

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. This Section includes requirements for coordinating construction operations including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:

1. Coordination drawings.
2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
3. Cleaning and protection.

## 1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction to assure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate operations that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule operations in the sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
2. Coordinate installation of different components to assure maximum accessibility for maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

B. Where necessary, prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices and reports.

1. Prepare similar memoranda for the Owner and separate contractors where coordination of their work is required.

C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required procedures with other activities to avoid conflicts and assure orderly progress. Such activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of schedules.
2. Delivery and processing of submittals.
3. Progress meetings.
4. Project closeout activities.

D. Conservation: Coordinate construction to assure that operations are carried out with consideration for conservation of energy, water, and materials.

E. Staff Names: Within 15 days of commencement of construction, submit a list of the Contractor's staff assignments, including the superintendent and other subcontractors at the Project. Identify individuals and their responsibilities. List their addresses and telephone numbers.

## 1.3 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## 1.4 EXECUTION

A. Inspection of Conditions: Require Installers of major components to inspect substrate and conditions under which Work is to be performed. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials, during handling and installation. Apply protective covering to assure protection from damage.

C. Clean and maintain completed construction as necessary through the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to assure operability without damaging effects.

D. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction to assure that no part is subject to harmful, dangerous, or damaging exposure. Such exposures include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Excessive static or dynamic loading.
2. Excessive internal or external pressures.
3. Excessively high or low temperatures.
4. Water or ice.
5. Solvents and chemicals.
6. Abrasion.
7. Soiling, staining, and corrosion.
8. Combustion.
9. Wind.

END OF SECTION 01040

# SECTION 01045 - CUTTING AND PATCHING

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures in advance of the time cutting and patching will be performed. Request approval to proceed. Include the following:

1. Describe extent of cutting and patching. Show how it will be performed.
2. Describe changes to existing construction. Include changes to structural elements and operating components.
3. List products to be used and firms that will perform Work.
4. Indicate dates when cutting and patching will be performed.
5. Utilities: List utilities that will be disturbed or relocated and those that will be temporarily out-of-service. Indicate how long service will be disrupted.
6. Where cutting and patching involves adding reinforcement to structural elements, submit details and engineering calculations showing integration of reinforcement with the original structure.
7. Approval to proceed does not waive the owner's right to later require complete removal and replacement of unsatisfactory work.

B. Requirements for Structural Work: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that would change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.

1. Obtain approval before cutting and patching the following structural elements:

a. Foundation construction.
b. Bearing and retaining walls.

C. Operational Limitations: Do not cut and patch operating elements in a manner that would reduce their capacity to perform as intended. Do not cut and patch operating elements in a manner that would increase maintenance or decrease operational life or safety.

D. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in the Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Do not cut and patch in a manner that would result in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Remove and replace construction cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Use materials identical to existing materials. Use materials that visually match adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible if identical materials are unavailable. Use materials whose performance will equal that of existing materials.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which work is to be performed before cutting. If unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions are encountered, take corrective action.

1. Before proceeding, meet with parties involved. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.

C. Protection: Protect existing construction to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

D. Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.

E. Avoid cutting pipe, conduit, or ductwork serving the building but scheduled to be removed or relocated until provisions have been made to bypass them.

F. Performance: Employ skilled workmen. Proceed at the earliest feasible time and complete without delay.

1. Cut construction to install other components or perform other construction and subsequent fitting and patching required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

G. Cutting: Cut using methods that will not damage elements retained or adjoining construction. Comply with the original Installer's recommendations.

1. Use hand or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
2. To avoid marring finished surfaces, cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
3. Cut through concrete and masonry using a cutting machine, such as a Carborundum saw or a diamond-core drill.
4. Where services are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, by-pass utility services before cutting. Cut-off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal the remaining pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after by-passing and cutting.

H. Patching: Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with specified tolerances.

1. Inspect and test patched areas to demonstrate integrity of the installation.
2. Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
3. Where removing walls or partitions extends one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform color and appearance.

I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar items. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or finishing materials. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.

END OF SECTION 01045

# SECTION 01200 - PROJECT MEETINGS

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for project meetings, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Preconstruction conferences.
2. Preinstallation conferences.
3. Progress meetings.

B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule a preconstruction conference before starting construction. Review responsibilities and personnel assignments.

C. Attendees: Authorized representatives of the Owner, Architect, and their consultants; the Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; and other concerned parties shall attend.

1. Participants shall be familiar with the Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

D. Agenda: Discuss items that could affect progress, including the following:

1. Tentative construction schedule.
2. Critical work sequencing.
3. Submittal of Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples.
4. Use of the premises.

E. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a conference before each activity that requires coordination with other operations.

F. Attendees: The Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation shall attend. Advise the Architect of scheduled meeting dates.

1. Review the progress of other operations and preparations for the activity under consideration at each preinstallation conference, including requirements for the following:

a. Compatibility problems and acceptability of substrates.
b. Time schedules and deliveries.
c. Manufacturer's recommendations.
d. Warranty requirements.
e. Inspecting and testing requirements.

2. Record significant discussions and agreements and disagreements, and the approved schedule. Promptly distribute the record of the meeting to everyone concerned, including the Owner and the Architect.
3. Do not proceed with the installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate actions necessary to resolve problems and reconvene the conference.

G. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at the Project Site at regular intervals. Notify the Owner and the Architect of scheduled dates. Coordinate meeting dates with preparation of the payment request.

H. Attendees: The Owner, Architect, and other entities concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or future activities shall be represented. Participants shall be authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

I. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous meeting. Review items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion appropriate to Project status.

1. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine where each activity is in relation to the Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how to expedite construction behind schedule; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss revisions required to insure subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
2. Review the present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:

    a. Time.
    b. Sequences.
    c. Status of submittals.
    d. Deliveries and off-site fabrication problems.
    e. Temporary facilities and services.
    f. Quality and work standards.
    g. Change Orders.

3. Reporting: Distribute meeting minutes to each party present and to parties who should have been present. Include a summary of progress since the previous meeting and report.
4. Schedule Updating: Revise the Contractor's Construction Schedule after each meeting where revisions have been made. Issue the revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

1.3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01200

# SECTION 01300 - SUBMITTALS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submittals required for performance of the Work, including the following:

1. Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Submittal schedule.
3. Daily construction reports.
4. Shop Drawings.
5. Product Data.
6. Samples.
7. Quality assurance submittals.

B. Administrative Submittals: Refer to other Division 1 Sections and other Contract Documents for requirements for administrative submittals. Such submittals include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Permits.
2. Applications for Payment.
3. Performance and payment bonds.
4. Insurance certificates.
5. List of subcontractors.

C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 1 Section "Coordination" specifies requirements governing preparation and submittal of required Coordination Drawings.
2. Division 1 Section "Project Meetings" specifies requirements for submittal and distribution of meeting and conference minutes.
3. Division 1 Section "Quality Control" specifies requirements for submittal of inspection and test reports.
4. Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout" specifies requirements for submittal of Project Record Documents and warranties at project closeout.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Coordination Drawings show the relationship and integration of different construction elements that require careful coordination during fabrication or installation to fit in the space provided or to function as intended.

1. Preparation of Coordination Drawings is specified in Division 1 Section "Coordination" and may include components previously shown in detail on Shop Drawings or Product Data.

B. Field samples are full-size physical examples erected on-site to illustrate finishes, coatings, or finish materials. Field samples are used to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

C. Mockups are full-size assemblies for review of construction, coordination, testing, or operation; they are not Samples.

## 1.4 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities. Transmit each submittal sufficiently in advance of performance of related construction activities to avoid delay.

1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related elements of the Work so processing will not be delayed by the need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.

    a. The Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until all related submittals are received.

3. Processing: To avoid the need to delay installation as a result of the time required to process submittals, allow sufficient time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals.

    a. Allow **2 weeks** for initial review. Allow additional time if the Architect must delay processing to permit coordination with subsequent submittals.
    b. If an intermediate submittal is necessary, process the same as the initial submittal.
    c. Allow **2 weeks** for reprocessing each submittal.
    d. No extension of Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals to the Architect sufficiently in advance of the Work to permit processing.

B. Submittal Preparation: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification. Indicate the name of the entity that prepared each submittal on the label or title block.

1. Provide a space approximately 4 by 5 inches (100 by 125 mm) on the label or beside the title block on Shop Drawings to record the Contractor's review and approval markings and the action taken.
2. Include the following information on the label for processing and recording action taken.

    a. Project Title and Number: Renovation To Building 4165
    b. Current Date
    c. Name and address of the Contractor.
    d. Name and address of the subcontractor.
    e. Name and address of the supplier.
    f. Name of the manufacturer.
    g. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
    h. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.

C. Submittal Transmittal: Package each submittal appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal from the Contractor to the Contracting Officer using a transmittal form. The Architect will not accept submittals received from sources other than the Contractor.

1. On the transmittal, record relevant information and requests for data. On the form, or separate sheet, record deviations from Contract Document requirements, including variations and limitations. Include Contractor's certification that information complies with Contract Document requirements.
2. Transmittal Form: Use AIA Document G810.

## 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Prepare a fully developed, horizontal bar-chart-type, contractor's construction schedule. Submit within 30 days after the date established for "Commencement of the Work."

1. Provide a separate time bar for each significant construction activity. Provide a continuous vertical line to identify the first working day of each week. Use the same breakdown of units of the Work as indicated in the "Schedule of Values."
2. Within each time bar, indicate estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments. As Work progresses, place a contrasting mark in each bar to indicate Actual Completion.
3. Prepare the schedule on a sheet, or series of sheets, of stable transparency, or other reproducible media, of sufficient width to show data for the entire construction period.
4. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties involved. Coordinate each element on the schedule with other construction activities; include minor elements involved in the sequence of the Work. Show each activity in proper sequence. Indicate graphically the sequences necessary for completion of related portions of the Work.
5. Coordinate the Contractor's Construction Schedule with the Schedule of Values, list of subcontracts, Submittal Schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other schedules.
6. Indicate completion in advance of the date established for Substantial Completion. Indicate Substantial Completion on the schedule to allow time for the Architect's procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.

B. Phasing: On the schedule, show how requirements for phased completion to permit Work by separate Contractors and partial occupancy by the Owner affect the sequence of Work.

C. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including submittal review, testing, and installation.

D. Area Separations: Provide a separate time bar to identify each major construction area for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each element in an area must be sequenced or integrated with other activities.

E. Distribution: Following response to the initial submittal, print and distribute copies to the Contracting Officer, subcontractors, and other parties required to comply with scheduled dates. Post copies in the Project meeting room and temporary field office.

1. When revisions are made, distribute to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in construction activities.

F. Schedule Updating: Revise the schedule after each meeting, event, or activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue the updated schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. After development and acceptance of the Contractor's Construction Schedule, prepare a complete schedule of submittals. Submit the schedule within 10 days of the date required for submittal of the Contractor's Construction Schedule.

1. Coordinate Submittal Schedule with the list of subcontracts, Schedule of Values, and the list of products as well as the Contractor's Construction Schedule.
2. Prepare the schedule in chronological order. Provide the following information:

a. Scheduled date for the first submittal.
b. Related Section number.
c. Submittal category (Shop Drawings, Product Data, or Samples).
d. Name of the subcontractor.
e. Description of the part of the Work covered.
f. Scheduled date for resubmittal.
g. Scheduled date for the contracting officers final release or approval.

B. Distribution: Following response to the initial submittal, print and distribute copies to the Architect, Owner, subcontractors, and other parties required to comply with submittal dates indicated. Post copies in the Project meeting room and field office.

1. When revisions are made, distribute to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in construction activities.

C. Schedule Updating: Revise the schedule after each meeting or activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue the updated schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

## 1.7 DAILY CONSTRUCTION REPORTS

A. Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at the site, and submit duplicate copies to the Architect at weekly intervals:

1. List of subcontractors at the site.
2. Approximate count of personnel at the site.
3. High and low temperatures, general weather conditions.
4. Accidents and unusual events.
5. Meetings and significant decisions.
6. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
7. Meter readings and similar recordings.
8. Emergency procedures.
9. Orders and requests of governing authorities.
10. Change Orders received, implemented.
11. Services connected, disconnected.
12. Equipment or system tests and startups.
13. Partial Completions, occupancies.
14. Substantial Completions authorized.

## 1.8 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Submit newly prepared information drawn accurately to scale. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise indicate deviations from the Contract Documents. Do not reproduce Contract Documents or copy standard infor-

mation as the basis of Shop Drawings. Standard information prepared without specific reference to the Project is not a Shop Drawing.

B. Shop Drawings include fabrication and installation Drawings, setting diagrams, schedules, patterns, templates and similar Drawings. Include the following information:

1. Dimensions.
2. Identification of products and materials included by sheet and detail number.
3. Compliance with specified standards.
4. Notation of coordination requirements.
5. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
6. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm) but no larger than 36 by 48 inches (890 by 1220 mm).
7. Initial Submittal: Submit one correctable, translucent, reproducible print and one blue- or black-line print for the Contracting Officer's review. The Contracting Officer will return the reproducible print.
8. Initial Submittal: Submit 2 blue- or black-line prints for the Contracting Officer's review. The Contracting Officer will return one print.
9. Final Submittal: Submit 3 blue- or black-line prints; submit 5 prints where required for maintenance manuals. The Contracting Officer will retain 2 prints and return the remainder.
10. Final Submittal: Submit 3 blue- or black-line prints and 2 additional prints where required for maintenance manuals, plus the number of prints needed by the contracting officer for distribution. The Contracting Officer will retain 2 prints and return the remainder.

    a. One of the prints returned shall be marked up and maintained as a "Record Document."

11. Do not use Shop Drawings without an appropriate final stamp indicating action taken.

## 1.9 PRODUCT DATA

A. Collect Product Data into a single submittal for each element of construction or system. Product Data includes printed information, such as manufacturer's installation instructions, catalog cuts, standard color charts, roughing-in diagrams and templates, standard wiring diagrams, and performance curves.

1. Mark each copy to show applicable choices and options. Where printed Product Data includes information on several products that are not required, mark copies to indicate the applicable information. Include the following information:

    a. Manufacturer's printed recommendations.
    b. Compliance with trade association standards.
    c. Compliance with recognized testing agency standards.
    d. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    e. Notation of dimensions verified by field measurement.
    f. Notation of coordination requirements.

2. Do not submit Product Data until compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents has been confirmed.
3. Preliminary Submittal: Submit a preliminary single copy of Product Data where selection of options is required.
4. Submittals: Submit 2 copies of each required submittal; submit 4 copies where required for maintenance manuals. The Architect will retain one and will return the other marked with action taken and corrections or modifications required.

a. Unless noncompliance with Contract Document provisions is observed, the submittal may serve as the final submittal.

5. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittal to installers, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, fabricators, and others required for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

a. Do not proceed with installation until a copy of Product Data is in the Installer's possession.
b. Do not permit use of unmarked copies of Product Data in connection with construction.

1.10 SAMPLES

A. Submit full-size, fully fabricated Samples cured and finished as specified and physically identical with the material or product proposed. Samples include partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components, cuts or containers of materials, color range sets, and swatches showing color, texture, and pattern.

1. Mount or display Samples in the manner to facilitate review of qualities indicated. Prepare Samples to match the Architect's sample. Include the following:

a. Specification Section number and reference.
b. Generic description of the Sample.
c. Sample source.
d. Product name or name of the manufacturer.
e. Compliance with recognized standards.
f. Availability and delivery time.

2. Submit Samples for review of size, kind, color, pattern, and texture. Submit Samples for a final check of these characteristics with other elements and a comparison of these characteristics between the final submittal and the actual component as delivered and installed.

a. Where variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in the material or product represented, submit at least 3 multiple units that show approximate limits of the variations.
b. Refer to other Specification Sections for requirements for Samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation, and similar construction characteristics.
c. Refer to other Sections for Samples to be returned to the Contractor for incorporation in the Work. Such Samples must be undamaged at time of use. On the transmittal, indicate special requests regarding disposition of Sample submittals.
d. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as the Owner's property, are the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the site prior to Substantial Completion.

3. Preliminary Submittals: Submit a full set of choices where Samples are submitted for selection of color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics from a range of standard choices.

a. The Contracting Officer will review and return preliminary submittals with the Contracting Officer's notation, indicating selection and other action.

4. Submittals: Except for Samples illustrating assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and similar characteristics, submit 3 sets. The Architect will return one set marked with the action taken.

5. Maintain sets of Samples, as returned, at the Project Site, for quality comparisons throughout the course of construction.

    a. Unless noncompliance with Contract Document provisions is observed, the submittal may serve as the final submittal.
    b. Sample sets may be used to obtain final acceptance of the construction associated with each set.

B. Distribution of Samples: Prepare and distribute additional sets to subcontractors, manufacturers, fabricators, suppliers, installers, and others as required for performance of the Work. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

1. Field samples are full-size examples erected on-site to illustrate finishes, coatings, or finish materials and to establish the Project standard.

    a. Comply with submittal requirements to the fullest extent possible. Process transmittal forms to provide a record of activity.

## 1.11 QUALITY ASSURANCE SUBMITTALS

A. Submit quality-control submittals, including design data, certifications, manufacturer's instructions, manufacturer's field reports, and other quality-control submittals as required under other Sections of the Specifications.

B. Certifications: Where other Sections of the Specifications require certification that a product, material, or installation complies with specified requirements, submit a notarized certification from the manufacturer certifying compliance with specified requirements.

1. Signature: Certification shall be signed by an officer of the manufacturer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of the company.

C. Inspection and Test Reports: Requirements for submittal of inspection and test reports from independent testing agencies are specified in Division 1 Section "Quality Control."

## 1.12 CONTRACTING OFFICER'S ACTION

A. Except for submittals for the record or information, where action and return is required, the Architect will review each submittal, mark to indicate action taken, and return promptly.

1. Compliance with specified characteristics is the Contractor's responsibility.

B. Action Stamp: The Contracting Officer will stamp each submittal with a uniform, action stamp. The Architect will mark the stamp appropriately to indicate the action taken, as follows:

1. Final Unrestricted Release: When the contracting officers marks a submittal "Approved," the Work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with requirements of the Contract Documents. Final payment depends on that compliance.
2. Final-But-Restricted Release: When the Architect marks a submittal "Approved as Noted," the Work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with notations or corrections on the submittal and requirements of the Contract Documents. Final payment depends on that compliance.

3. Returned for Resubmittal: When the Contracting Officer marks a submittal "Not Approved, Revise and Resubmit," do not proceed with Work covered by the submittal, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, or other activity. Revise or prepare a new submittal according to the notations; resubmit without delay. Repeat if necessary to obtain different action mark.

    a. Do not use, or allow others to use, submittals marked "Not Approved, Revise and Resubmit" at the Project Site or elsewhere where Work is in progress.

4. Other Action: Where a submittal is for information or record purposes or special processing or other activity, the Architect will return the submittal marked "Action Not Required."

C. Unsolicited Submittals: The Architect will return unsolicited submittals to the sender without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01300

# SECTION 01400 - QUALITY CONTROL

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Quality-control services include inspections, tests, and related actions, including reports performed by Contractor, by independent agencies, and by governing authorities.

B. Contractor Responsibilities: Unless they are the responsibility of another entity, Contractor shall provide inspections and tests specified elsewhere and required by authorities having jurisdiction. Costs for these services are included in the Contract Sum.

1. Where inspections and tests are the Contractor's responsibility, the Contractor shall employ and pay a qualified independent testing agency to perform these services. Costs for these services are included in the Contract Sum.

C. Retesting: The Contractor is responsible for retesting where results of inspections and tests prove unsatisfactory and indicate noncompliance with requirements.

1. The cost of retesting is the Contractor's responsibility where tests performed indicated noncompliance with requirements.

D. Auxiliary Services: Cooperate with agencies performing inspections and tests. Provide auxiliary services as requested. Notify the agency in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Auxiliary services include the following:

1. Providing access to the Work.
2. Furnishing incidental labor and facilities to assist inspections and tests.
3. Taking adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing or assisting the agency in taking samples.
4. Providing facilities for storage and curing of test samples.
5. Delivering samples to testing laboratories.
6. Providing preliminary design mix proposed for use for materials mixes that require control by the testing agency.
7. Providing security and protection of samples and test equipment.

E. Duties of the Testing Agency: The testing agency shall cooperate with the owner and the Contractor in performing its duties. The agency shall provide qualified personnel to perform inspections and tests.

1. The agency shall notify the owner and the Contractor of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
2. The agency shall not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
3. The agency shall not perform duties of the Contractor.

F. Coordination: Coordinate activities to accommodate services with a minimum of delay. Avoid removing and replacing construction to accommodate inspections and tests.

1. The Contractor is responsible for scheduling inspections, tests, taking samples, and similar activities.

G. Submittals: The testing agency shall submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each inspection and test to the Owner. If the Contractor is responsible for the service, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each inspection or test through the Contractor.

1. Submit additional copies of each report to the governing authority, when the authority so directs.
2. Report Data: Reports of each inspection, test, or similar service include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Date of issue.
b. Project title and number.
c. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
d. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
e. Names of individuals making the inspection or test.
f. Designation of the Work and test method.
g. Identification of product and Specification Section.
h. Complete inspection or test data.
i. Test results and an interpretation of test results.
j. Ambient conditions at the time of sample taking and testing.
k. Comments or professional opinion on whether inspected or tested Work complies with requirements.
l. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
m. Recommendations on retesting.

H. Qualifications for Service Agencies: Engage inspection and testing service agencies that are prequalified as complying with the American Council of Independent Laboratories' "Recommended Requirements for Independent Laboratory Qualification" and that specialize in the types of inspections and tests to be performed.

1. Each agency shall be authorized by authorities having jurisdiction to operate in the state where the Project is located.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Repair and Protection: Upon completion of inspection, testing, and sample taking, repair damaged construction. Restore substrates and finishes. Comply with Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching."

B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities, and protect repaired construction.

C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for inspection and testing.

END OF SECTION 01400

# SECTION 01500 - CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND TEMPORARY CONTROLS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes requirements for construction facilities and temporary controls, including temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection.

B. Temporary utilities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Water service and distribution.
2. Temporary electric power and light.
3. Temporary heat.
4. Ventilation.
5. Telephone service.
6. Sanitary facilities, including drinking water.
7. Storm and sanitary sewer.

C. Support facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Field offices and storage sheds.
2. Dewatering facilities and drains.
3. Temporary enclosures.
4. Hoists and temporary elevator use.
5. Temporary project identification signs and bulletin boards.
6. Waste disposal services.
7. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities.

D. Security and protection facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Temporary fire protection.
2. Barricades, warning signs, and lights.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulations: Comply with industry standards and applicable laws and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Building code requirements.
2. Health and safety regulations.
3. Utility company regulations.
4. Police, fire department, and rescue squad rules.
5. Environmental protection regulations.

B. Standards: Comply with NFPA 241 "Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alterations, and Demolition Operations," ANSI A10 Series standards for "Safety Requirements for Construction and Demolition," and NECA Electrical Design Library "Temporary Electrical Facilities."

1. Electrical Service: Comply with NEMA, NECA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service in compliance with NFPA 70 "National Electric Code."

## 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Utilities: Prepare a schedule indicating dates for implementation and termination of each temporary utility. At the earliest feasible time, when acceptable to the Owner, change over from use of temporary service to use of permanent service.

B. Conditions of Use: Keep temporary services and facilities clean and neat in appearance. Operate in a safe and efficient manner. Relocate temporary services and facilities as the Work progresses. Do not overload facilities or permit them to interfere with progress. Take necessary fire-prevention measures. Do not allow hazardous, dangerous, or unsanitary conditions, or public nuisances to develop or persist on-site.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide new materials. If acceptable to the Architect, the Contractor may use undamaged, previously used materials in serviceable condition. Provide materials suitable for use intended..

B. Tarpaulins: Provide waterproof, fire-resistant, UL-labeled tarpaulins with flame-spread rating of 15 or less. For temporary enclosures, provide translucent, nylon-reinforced, laminated polyethylene or polyvinyl chloride, fire-retardant tarpaulins.

C. Water: Provide potable water approved by local health authorities.

D. Open-Mesh Fencing: Provide 0.120-inch- (3-mm-) thick, galvanized 2-inch (50-mm) chainlink fabric fencing 6 feet (2 m) high with galvanized barbed-wire top strand and galvanized steel pipe posts, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) I.D. for line posts and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) I.D. for corner posts.

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT

A. General: Provide new equipment. If acceptable to the Architect, the Contractor may use undamaged, previously used equipment in serviceable condition. Provide equipment suitable for use intended.

B. Water Hoses: Provide 3/4-inch (19-mm), heavy-duty, abrasion-resistant, flexible rubber hoses 100 feet (30 m) long, with pressure rating greater than the maximum pressure of the water distribution system. Provide adjustable shutoff nozzles at hose discharge.

C. Electrical Outlets: Provide properly configured, NEMA-polarized outlets to prevent insertion of 110- to 120-Volt plugs into higher voltage outlets. Provide receptacle outlets equipped with ground-fault circuit interrupters, reset button, and pilot light for connection of power tools and equipment.

D. Electrical Power Cords: Provide grounded extension cords. Use hard-service cords where exposed to abrasion and traffic. Provide waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electric cords if single lengths will not reach areas where construction activities are in progress. Do not exceed safe length-voltage ratio.

E. Lamps and Light Fixtures: Provide general service incandescent lamps of wattage required for adequate illumination. Provide guard cages or tempered-glass enclosures where exposed to breakage. Provide exterior fixtures where exposed to moisture.

F. Heating Units: Provide temporary heating units that have been tested and labeled by UL, FM, or another recognized trade association related to the type of fuel being consumed.

G. Temporary Offices: Provide prefabricated or mobile units or similar job-built construction with lockable entrances, operable windows, and serviceable finishes. Provide heated and air-conditioned units on foundations adequate for normal loading.

H. Temporary Toilet Units: Provide self-contained, single-occupant toilet units of the chemical, aerated recirculation, or combustion type. Provide units properly vented and fully enclosed with a glass-fiber-reinforced polyester shell or similar nonabsorbent material.

I. Fire Extinguishers: Provide hand-carried, portable, UL-rated, Class A fire extinguishers for temporary offices and similar spaces. In other locations, provide hand-carried, portable, UL-rated, Class ABC, dry-chemical extinguishers or a combination of extinguishers of NFPA-recommended classes for the exposures.

1. Comply with NFPA 10 and NFPA 241 for classification, extinguishing agent, and size required by location and class of fire exposure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Use qualified personnel for installation of temporary facilities. Locate facilities where they will serve the Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required.

B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Maintain and modify as required. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

A. General: Engage the appropriate local utility company to install temporary service or connect to existing service. Where company provides only part of the service, provide the remainder with matching, compatible materials and equipment. Comply with company recommendations.

1. Arrange with company and existing users for a time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
2. Provide adequate capacity at each stage of construction.

3. Use Charges: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities are not chargeable to the Owner or Architect. Neither the Owner nor Architect will accept cost or use charges as a basis of claims for Change Orders.

B. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping of sizes and pressures adequate for construction until permanent water service is in use.

1. Sterilization: Sterilize temporary water piping prior to use.

C. Temporary Electric Power Service: Provide weatherproof, grounded electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics during construction period. Include meters, transformers, overload-protected disconnects, automatic ground-fault interrupters, and main distribution switch gear.

1. Install electric power service underground, except where overhead service must be used.
2. Power Distribution System: Install wiring overhead and rise vertically where least exposed to damage. Where permitted, wiring circuits not exceeding 125 Volts, ac 20 Ampere rating, and lighting circuits may be nonmetallic sheathed cable where overhead and exposed for surveillance.

D. Temporary Lighting: When overhead floor or roof deck has been installed, provide temporary lighting with local switching.

1. Install and operate temporary lighting that will fulfill security and protection requirements without operating the entire system. Provide temporary lighting that will provide adequate illumination for construction operations and traffic conditions.

E. Temporary Heat: Provide temporary heat required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protection of installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select safe equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce the ambient condition required and minimize consumption of energy.

F. Heating Facilities: Except where the Owner authorizes use of the permanent system, provide vented, self-contained, LP-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.

1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open flame, or salamander heating units is prohibited.

G. Temporary Telephones: Provide temporary telephone service throughout the construction period for all personnel engaged in construction activities. Install telephone on a separate line for each temporary office and first-aid station.

H. Sanitary facilities include temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking-water fixtures. Comply with regulations and health codes for the type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities. Install where facilities will best serve the Project's needs.

I. Provide toilet tissue, paper towels, paper cups, and similar disposable materials for each facility.

J. Toilets: Install self-contained toilet units. Shield toilets to ensure privacy. Use of pit-type privies will not be permitted.

K. Wash Facilities: Install wash facilities supplied with potable water at convenient locations for personnel involved in handling materials that require wash-up for a healthy and sanitary condition. Dispose of drainage properly. Supply cleaning compounds appropriate for each condition.

L. Drinking-Water Facilities: Provide containerized, including paper supply.

M. Provide earthen embankments and similar barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction, sufficient to prevent flooding by runoff of storm water from heavy rains.

## 3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Locate field offices, storage sheds, and other temporary construction and support facilities for easy access.

1. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove prior to Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to the Owner.

B. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within the construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines. Comply with requirements of NFPA 241.

C. Field Offices: Provide insulated, weathertight temporary offices of sufficient size to accommodate required office personnel at the Project Site. Keep the office clean and orderly for use for small progress meetings. Furnish and equip offices as follows:

D. Temporary Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities for hoisting materials and employees. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

E. Temporary Elevator Use: Refer to Division 14 Sections for elevators.

F. Temporary Exterior Lighting: Install exterior yard and sign lights so signs are visible when Work is being performed.

G. Collection and Disposal of Waste: Collect waste from construction areas and elsewhere daily. Comply with requirements of NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste material and debris. Enforce requirements strictly. Do not hold materials more than 7 days during normal weather or 3 days when the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C). Handle hazardous, dangerous, or unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste by containerizing properly. Dispose of material lawfully.

H. Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate. Cover finished, permanent stairs with a protective covering of plywood or similar material so finishes will be undamaged at the time of acceptance.

## 3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Except for use of permanent fire protection as soon as available, do not change over from use of temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion, or longer, as requested by the Architect.

B. Temporary Fire Protection: Until fire-protection needs are supplied by permanent facilities, install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of the types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 10 "Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers" and NFPA 241 "Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alterations, and Demolition Operations."

1. Locate fire extinguishers where convenient and effective for their intended purpose, but not less than one extinguisher on each floor at or near each usable stairwell.
2. Store combustible materials in containers in fire-safe locations.
3. Maintain unobstructed access to fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, temporary fire-protection facilities, stairways, and other access routes for fighting fires. Prohibit smoking in hazardous fire-exposure areas.
4. Provide supervision of welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition.

C. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with standards and code requirements for erection of structurally adequate barricades. Paint with appropriate colors, graphics, and warning signs to inform personnel and the public of the hazard being protected against. Where appropriate and needed, provide lighting, including flashing red or amber lights.

D. Enclosure Fence: Before excavation begins, install an enclosure fence with lockable entrance gates. Locate where indicated, or enclose the entire site or the portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations. Install in a manner that will prevent people, dogs, and other animals from easily entering the site, except by the entrance gates.

1. Provide open-mesh, chainlink fencing with posts set in a compacted mixture of gravel and earth.

E. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure of partially completed areas of construction. Provide locking entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.

1. Storage: Where materials and equipment must be stored, and are of value or attractive for theft, provide a secure lockup. Enforce discipline in connection with the installation and release of material to minimize the opportunity for theft and vandalism.

F. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations, and minimize the possibility that air, waterways, and subsoil might be contaminated or polluted or that other undesirable effects might result. Avoid use of tools and equipment that produce harmful noise. Restrict use of noise-making tools and equipment to hours that will minimize complaints from persons or firms near the site.

## 3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. Limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses to minimize waste and abuse.

B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal. Protect from damage by freezing temperatures and similar elements.

1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
2. Protection: Prevent water-filled piping from freezing. Maintain markers for underground lines. Protect from damage during excavation operations.

C. Termination and Removal: Unless the Architect requests that it be maintained longer, remove each temporary facility when the need has ended, when replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may

have been delayed because of interference with the temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are the Contractor's property. The Owner reserves the right to take possession of project identification signs.
2. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at the temporary entrances, as required by the governing authority.
3. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during the construction period including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Replace air filters and clean inside of ductwork and housings.
    b. Replace significantly worn parts and parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
    c. Replace lamps burned out or noticeably dimmed by hours of use.

END OF SECTION 01500

# SECTION 01700 - CONTRACT CLOSEOUT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Project record document submittal.
3. Operation and maintenance manual submittal.
4. Submittal of warranties.
5. Final cleaning.

B. Closeout requirements for specific construction activities are included in the appropriate Sections in Divisions 2 through 16.

### 1.3 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List exceptions in the request.

1. In the Application for Payment that coincides with, or first follows, the date Substantial Completion is claimed, show 100 percent completion for the portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.

    a. Include supporting documentation for completion as indicated in these Contract Documents and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
    b. If 100 percent completion cannot be shown, include a list of incomplete items, the value of incomplete construction, and reasons the Work is not complete.

2. Advise the Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
3. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
4. Submit record drawings, maintenance manuals, final project photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
5. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra stock, and similar items.
6. Make final changeover of permanent locks and transmit keys to the Owner. Advise the Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
7. Complete startup testing of systems and instruction of the Owner's operation and maintenance personnel. Discontinue and remove temporary facilities from the site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
8. Complete final cleanup requirements, including touchup painting.

9. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes.

B. Inspection Procedures: On receipt of a request for inspection, the Architect will either proceed with inspection or advise the Contractor of unfilled requirements. The Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion following inspection or advise the Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before the certificate will be issued.

1. The Architect will repeat inspection when requested and assured that the Work is substantially complete.
2. Results of the completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final acceptance.

## 1.4 FINAL ACCEPTANCE

A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for certification of final acceptance and final payment, complete the following. List exceptions in the request.

1. Submit the final payment request with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted. Include insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required.
2. Submit an updated final statement, accounting for final additional changes to the Contract Sum.
3. Submit a certified copy of the Architect's final inspection list of items to be completed or corrected, endorsed and dated by the Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance and shall be endorsed and dated by the Architect.
4. Submit final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of the date of Substantial Completion or when the Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
5. Submit consent of surety to final payment.
6. Submit a final liquidated damages settlement statement.
7. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.

B. Reinspection Procedure: The Architect will reinspect the Work upon receipt of notice that the Work, including inspection list items from earlier inspections, has been completed, except for items whose completion is delayed under circumstances acceptable to the Architect.

1. Upon completion of reinspection, the Architect will prepare a certificate of final acceptance. If the Work is incomplete, the Architect will advise the Contractor of Work that is incomplete or of obligations that have not been fulfilled but are required for final acceptance.
2. If necessary, reinspection will be repeated.

## 1.5 RECORD DOCUMENT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Do not use record documents for construction purposes. Protect record documents from deterioration and loss in a secure, fire-resistant location. Provide access to record documents for the Architect's reference during normal working hours.

B. Record Drawings: Maintain a clean, undamaged set of white-prints of Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings. Mark the set to show the actual installation where the installation varies substantially from the Work as originally shown. Mark which drawing is most capable of showing conditions fully and accurately. Where Shop Drawings are used, record a cross-reference at the corresponding location on the Contract Drawings. Give particular attention to concealed elements that would be difficult to measure and record at a later date.

1. Mark record sets with red erasable pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between variations in separate categories of the Work.
2. Mark new information that is important to the Owner but was not shown on Contract Drawings or Shop Drawings.
3. Note related change-order numbers where applicable.
4. Organize record drawing sheets into manageable sets. Bind sets with durable-paper cover sheets; print suitable titles, dates, and other identification on the cover of each set.

C. Record Sample Submitted: Immediately prior to Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall meet with the Architect and the Owner's personnel at the Project Site to determine which Samples are to be transmitted to the Owner for record purposes. Comply with the Owner's instructions regarding delivery to the Owner's Sample storage area.

D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Refer to other Specification Sections for requirements of miscellaneous record keeping and submittals in connection with actual performance of the Work. Immediately prior to the date or dates of Substantial Completion, complete miscellaneous records and place in good order. Identify miscellaneous records properly and bind or file, ready for continued use and reference. Submit to the Architect for the Owner's records.

E. Maintenance Manuals: Organize operation and maintenance data into suitable sets of manageable size. Bind properly indexed data in individual, heavy-duty, 2-inch (51-mm), 3-ring, vinyl-covered binders, with pocket folders for folded sheet information. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Provide three copies of each binder, two for the owner and one for the DFCM. Include the following types of information:

1. Emergency instructions.
2. Spare parts list.
3. Copies of warranties.
4. Wiring diagrams.
5. Recommended "turn-around" cycles.
6. Inspection procedures.
7. Shop Drawings and Product Data.
8. Fixture lamping schedule.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

A. Operation and Maintenance Instructions: Arrange for each Installer of equipment that requires regular maintenance to meet with the Owner's personnel to provide instruction in proper operation and maintenance. Provide instruction by manufacturer's representatives if installers are not experienced in operation and maintenance procedures. Include a detailed review of the following items:

1. Maintenance manuals.
2. Record documents.
3. Spare parts and materials.
4. Tools.
5. Lubricants.
6. Fuels.

7. Identification systems.
8. Control sequences.
9. Hazards.
10. Cleaning.
11. Warranties and bonds.
12. Maintenance agreements and similar continuing commitments.

B. As part of instruction for operating equipment, demonstrate the following procedures:

1. Startup.
2. Shutdown.
3. Emergency operations.
4. Noise and vibration adjustments.
5. Safety procedures.
6. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
7. Effective energy utilization.

## 3.2 FINAL CLEANING

A. General: The General Conditions require general cleaning during construction. Regular site cleaning is included in Division 1 Section "Construction Facilities and Temporary Controls."

B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to the condition expected in a normal, commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion.

a. Remove labels that are not permanent labels.
b. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other substances that are noticeable vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials.
c. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dust-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition. Leave concrete floors broom and moped clean. Vacuum carpeted surfaces.
d. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment. Remove excess lubrication and other substances. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition. Clean light fixtures and lamps.
e. Clean the site, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, litter, and other foreign substances. Sweep paved areas broom clean; remove stains, spills, and other foreign deposits. Rake grounds that are neither paved nor planted to a smooth, even-textured surface.

C. Removal of Protection: Remove temporary protection and facilities installed for protection of the Work during construction.

D. Compliance: Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or excess materials on the Owner's property. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from the site and dispose of lawfully.

1. Where extra materials of value remain after completion of associated Work, they become the Owner's property. Dispose of these materials as directed by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 01700

# SECTION 01740 - WARRANTIES

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Standard product warranties are preprinted written warranties published by individual manufacturers for particular products and are specifically endorsed by the manufacturer to the Owner.

B. Special warranties are written warranties required by or incorporated in the Contract Documents, either to extend time limits provided by standard warranties or to provide greater rights for the Owner.

C. Disclaimers and Limitations: Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve the Contractor of the warranty on the Work that incorporates the products. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve suppliers, manufacturers, and subcontractors required to countersign special warranties with the Contractor.

D. Related Damages and Losses: When correcting failed or damaged warranted construction, remove and replace construction that has been damaged as a result of such failure or must be removed and replaced to provide access for correction of warranted construction.

E. Reinstatement of Warranty: When Work covered by a warranty has failed and been corrected by replacement or rebuilding, reinstate the warranty by written endorsement. The reinstated warranty shall be equal to the original warranty with an equitable adjustment for depreciation.

F. Replacement Cost: Upon determination that Work covered by a warranty has failed, replace or rebuild the Work to an acceptable condition complying with requirements of the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of replacing or rebuilding defective Work regardless of whether the Owner has benefited from use of the Work through a portion of its anticipated useful service life.

G. Owner's Recourse: Expressed warranties made to the Owner are in addition to implied warranties and shall not limit the duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise available under the law. Expressed warranty periods shall not be interpreted as limitations on the time in which the Owner can enforce such other duties, obligations, rights, or remedies.

1. Rejection of Warranties: The Owner reserves the right to reject warranties and to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
2. Where the Contract Documents require a special warranty, or similar commitment, the Owner reserves the right to refuse to accept the Work, until the Contractor presents evidence that entities required to countersign such commitments are willing to do so.

H. Submit written warranties to the Architect prior to the date certified for Substantial Completion. If the Owner's Certificate of Substantial Completion designates a commencement date for warranties other than the date of Substantial Completion, submit written warranties upon request of the Owner's.

I. When the Contract Documents require the Contractor, or the Contractor and a subcontractor, supplier or manufacturer to execute a special warranty, prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution by the required parties. Submit a draft to the Owner for approval prior to final execution.

1. Refer to Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

J. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, commercial-quality, durable 3-ring, vinyl-covered loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch (115-by-280-mm) paper.

1. Provide heavy paper dividers with celluloid covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark the tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product, and the name, address, and telephone number of the Installer.
2. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project title or name, and name of the Contractor.
3. When warranted construction requires operation and maintenance manuals, provide additional copies of each required warranty, as necessary, for inclusion in each required manual.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Schedule: Provide warranties on products and installations as specified in the following Sections:

END OF SECTION 01740

# SECTION 02060 - BUILDING DEMOLITION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Demolition and removal of buildings.
2. Demolition and removal of site improvements.
3. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and abandoning site utilities in place.
4. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching" for cutting and patching procedures for demolition operations.
2. Division 1 Section "Construction Facilities and Temporary Controls" for temporary utilities, temporary construction and support facilities, temporary security and protection facilities, and environmental protection measures for demolition operations.
3. Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout" for record document requirements.
4. Division 2 Section "Selective Demolition" for partial demolition of a building or structure undergoing alterations and for the removal, salvage, or reuse of materials in new construction.
5. Division 2 Section "Site Clearing" for site clearing and removing above- and below-grade improvements.
6. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for soil materials, excavating, backfilling, and site grading.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Remove: Remove and legally dispose of items except those indicated to be reinstalled, salvaged, or to remain the Owner's property.

B. Remove and Salvage: Items indicated to be removed and salvaged remain the Owner's property. Remove, clean, and pack or crate items to protect against damage. Identify contents of containers and deliver to Owner's designated storage area.

C. Remove and Reinstall: Remove items indicated; clean, service, and otherwise prepare them for reuse; store and protect against damage. Reinstall items in locations indicated.

D. Existing to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during demolition. When permitted by the Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during demolition and then cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, salvaged, or otherwise indicated to remain the Owner's property, demolished materials shall become the Contractor's property and shall be removed from the site with further disposition at the Contractor's option.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections, for information only, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Proposed dust-control measures.

C. Proposed noise-control measures.

D. Schedule of demolition activities indicating the following:

1. Detailed sequence of demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity.
2. Dates for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.

E. Inventory of items to be removed and salvaged.

F. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations.

G. Record drawings at Project closeout according to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."

1. Identify and accurately locate capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, or mechanical conditions.

H. Landfill records for record purposes indicating receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: Engage an experienced firm that has successfully completed demolition Work similar to that indicated for this Project.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before starting demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with preinstallation conference requirements of Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Buildings to be demolished will be vacated and their use discontinued before start of Work.

B. Owner assumes no responsibility for actual condition of buildings to be demolished.

1. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.

C. Asbestos: It is not expected that asbestos will be encountered in the course of this Contract. If any materials suspected of containing asbestos are encountered, do not disturb the materials. Immediately notify the Architect and the Owner.

1. Asbestos will be removed by Owner before start of Work.

D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site will not be permitted.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Arrange demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's on-site operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.

B. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of demolition required.

C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.

D. Survey the condition of the building to determine whether removing any element might result in a structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of the structure or adjacent structures during demolition.

E. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from demolition activities.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES

A. Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during demolition operations.

1. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or operating facilities, except when authorized in writing by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to Owner and to governing authorities.

    a. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner if shutdown of service is required during changeover.

B. Utility Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services serving structures to be demolished.
1. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.

C. Utility Requirements: Refer to Division 15 and 16 Sections for shutting off, disconnecting, removing, and sealing or capping utility services. Do not start demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing.

## 3.3 PREPARATION

A. Drain, purge, or otherwise remove, collect, and dispose of chemicals, gases, flammables, or other dangerous materials before proceeding with demolition operations.

B. Conduct demolition operations and remove debris to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.

C. Conduct demolition operations to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain. Ensure safe passage of people around demolition area.

1. Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.

D. Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of buildings to be demolished and adjacent buildings to remain.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of demolition.

## 3.4 EXPLOSIVES

A. Explosives: Use of explosives will not be permitted.

## 3.5 POLLUTION CONTROLS

A. Use water mist, temporary enclosures, and other suitable methods to limit the spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental protection regulations.

1. Do not create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution, when using water.

B. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.

C. Clean adjacent buildings and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before start of demolition.

## 3.6 DEMOLITION

A. Building Demolition: Demolish buildings completely and remove from the site. Use methods required to complete Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Locate demolition equipment throughout the building and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
2. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. On-site storage or sale of removed items is prohibited.
3. Demolish concrete and masonry in small sections.
4. Break up and remove concrete slabs on grade, unless otherwise shown to remain.
5. Remove air-conditioning equipment without releasing refrigerants.

B. Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction, as follows:

1. Completely remove below-grade construction, including foundation walls and footings.
2. Break up and remove below-grade concrete slabs, unless indicated to remain.

C. Filling Below-Grade Areas: Completely fill below-grade areas and voids resulting from demolition of buildings and pavements with soil materials according to requirements specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

D. Damages: Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by demolition operations.

## 3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

A. General: Promptly dispose of demolished materials. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 02060

# SECTION 02080 - UTILITY MATERIALS

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Submittals: Include the following:

1. Product Data for identification materials and devices.
2. Samples of color, lettering style, and other graphic representation for each identification material and device.
3. Shop Drawings detailing fabrication and installation for supports and anchorage for utility piping materials and equipment.

B. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipe and Fittings: Refer to individual Division 2 Sections for pipe and fitting materials and joining methods. Comply with ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and fittings.

B. Joining Materials: Refer to individual Division 2 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
1. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Solvent Cements: Manufacturer's standard solvent cements for the following:
   a. PVC Plastic Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
   b. ABS to PVC Plastic Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
3. Plastic Pipe Seals: ASTM F 477, elastomeric gasket.
4. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

C. Identifying Devices and Labels: Manufacturer's standard products of categories and types required for each application as referenced in other Division 2 Sections.

1. Snap-On Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap on, color-coded, complying with ASME A13.1.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Piping Systems: Install piping as described below, unless piping Sections specify otherwise. Individual Division 2 piping Sections specify unique piping installation requirements.

1. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Install piping at indicated slopes.
3. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
4. Install piping free of sags and bends.
5. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.

6. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
7. Install couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in. Refer to equipment specifications in other Division 2 Sections for roughing-in requirements.
9. Piping Joint Construction: Join pipe and fittings as follows and as specifically required in individual piping Sections:
   a. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside pipe and fittings before assembly.
   b. Flanged Joints: Align flange surfaces parallel. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly using torque wrench.
   c. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

      1) Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
      2) ABS Plastic Piping: ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661.
      3) PVC Plastic, Pressure Piping: ASTM D 2672.
      4) PVC Plastic, Nonpressure Piping: ASTM D 2855.
      5) ABS to PVC Plastic, Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Procedure and solvent cement according to ASTM D 3138.

   d. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657 procedures and manufacturer's written instructions.

      1) Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
      2) Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

B. Install equipment according to approved submittal data. Portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Install equipment level and plumb, giving right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

C. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.

END OF SECTION 02080

# SECTION 02230 - SITE CLEARING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Removing trees and other vegetation.
2. Clearing and grubbing.
3. Topsoil stripping.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Building Demolition" for demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.
2. Division 2 Section "Landscaping" for finish grading, including placing and preparing topsoil for lawns and planting.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter; and free of weeds, roots, and other deleterious materials.

### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Except for materials indicated to be stockpiled or to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from the site.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.

B. Record drawings according to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."

1. Identify and accurately locate capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.

B. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.

1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 UTILITIES

A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.

1. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.

B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

C. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.

D. Removal of underground utilities is included in Division 15 mechanical or Division 16 electrical Sections.

## 3.3 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction. Removal includes digging out stumps and obstructions and grubbing roots.

1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
2. Completely remove stumps, roots, obstructions, and debris extending to a depth of 18 inches (450 mm) below exposed subgrade.
3.

B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material, unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding 8-inch (200-mm) loose depth, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

## 3.4 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.

B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.

1. Strip surface soil of unsuitable topsoil, including trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

C. Stockpile topsoil materials away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches (1800 mm).
2. Do not stockpile topsoil within drip line of remaining trees.
3. Dispose of excess topsoil as specified for waste material disposal.
4. Stockpile surplus topsoil and allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

## 3.5 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.

B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.

1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.

3.6 DISPOSAL

A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials, including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 02230

# SECTION 02300 - EARTHWORK

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, lawns, and plantings.
2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
3. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
4. Base course for asphalt paving.
5. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
6. Excavating and backfilling trenches within building lines.
7. Excavating and backfilling trenches for buried mechanical and electrical utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, removing topsoil, and protecting trees to remain.
2. Division 2 Section "Landscaping" for finish grading, including placing and preparing topsoil for lawns and plantings.
3. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course over vapor retarder.
4. Division 15 and 16 Sections for excavating and backfilling buried mechanical and electrical utilities and buried utility structures.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil materials used to fill an excavation.

1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Layer placed between the subbase course and asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Drainage Course: Layer supporting slab-on-grade used to minimize capillary flow of pore water.

F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations.

G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, and conglomerate deposits and boulders of rock material 3/4 cu. yd. (0.57 cu. m) or more in volume that when tested by an independent geotechnical testing agency, according to ASTM D 1586, exceeds a standard penetration resistance of 100 blows/2 inches (97 blows/50 mm).

I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

J. Subbase Course: Layer placed between the subgrade and base course for asphalt paving, or layer placed between the subgrade and a concrete pavement or walk.

K. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.

L. Utilities include on-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Each type of plastic warning tape.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:

1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each on-site or borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698 for each on-site or borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
3. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 1557 for each on-site or borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Preexcavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.

B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

B. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM, or a combination of these group symbols; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches (75 mm) in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

C. Unsatisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 soil classification groups GC, SC, ML, MH, CL, CH, OL, OH, and PT, or a combination of these group symbols.

1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.

D. Backfill and Fill: Satisfactory soil materials.

E. Subbase: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2- inch (38-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.

F. Base: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.

G. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.

H. Bedding: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.

I. Drainage Fill: Washed, narrowly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2- inch (38-mm) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.

J. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:

B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, minimum 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

C. Drainage Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile, specifically manufactured as a drainage geotextile; made from polyolefins, polyesters, or polyamides; and with the following minimum properties determined according to ASTM D 4759 and referenced standard test methods:

1. Grab Tensile Strength: 110 lbf (490 N); ASTM D 4632.
2. Tear Strength: 40 lbf (178 N); ASTM D 4533.
3. Puncture Resistance: 50 lbf (222 N); ASTM D 4833.
4. Water Flow Rate: 150 gpm per sq. ft. (100 L/s per sq. m); ASTM D 4491.
5. Apparent Opening Size: No. 50 (0.3 mm); ASTM D 4751.

D. Separation Fabric: Woven geotextile, specifically manufactured for use as a separation geotextile; made from polyolefins, polyesters, or polyamides; and with the following minimum properties determined according to ASTM D 4759 and referenced standard test methods:

1. Grab Tensile Strength: 200 lbf (890 N); ASTM D 4632.
2. Tear Strength: 75 lbf (333 N); ASTM D 4533.
3. Puncture Resistance: 90 lbf (400 N); ASTM D 4833.
4. Water Flow Rate: 4 gpm per sq. ft. (2.7 L/s per sq. m); ASTM D 4491.
5. Apparent Opening Size: No. 30 (0.6 mm); ASTM D 4751.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.

B. Protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost. Provide protective insulating materials as necessary.

C. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

### 3.2 DEWATERING

A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.

1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

## 3.3 EXPLOSIVES

A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

## 3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavation to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered, including rock, soil materials, and obstructions.

1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

B. Classified Excavation: Excavation to subgrade elevations classified as earth and rock. Rock excavation will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.

1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.

a. Intermittent drilling; blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.

2. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock.

a. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross-sectioned by Architect.

## 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm). Extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.

1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

## 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated cross sections, elevations, and grades.

## 3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.

1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide a working clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches (300 mm) higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Clearance: 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of pipe or conduit.

C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.

1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches (150 mm) or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
3. Excavate trenches 6 inches (150 mm) deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

D. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 4 inches (100 mm) deeper than bottom of pipe elevation to allow for bedding course. Hand excavate for bell of pipe.

1. Excavate trenches 6 inches (150 mm) deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

2. See detail for pipe section at trenches

## 3.8 APPROVAL OF SUBGRADE

A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.

B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.

1. Additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

C. Proof roll subgrade with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof roll wet or saturated subgrades.

D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect.

## 3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation.

1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Architect.

## 3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

A. Stockpile borrow materials and satisfactory excavated soil materials. Stockpile soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

## 3.11 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:

1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for record documents.
3. Inspecting and testing underground utilities.
4. Removing concrete formwork.
5. Removing trash and debris.
6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.

## 3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

B. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches (450 mm) of bottom of footings; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings.

C. Provide 4-inch- (100-mm-) thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches (750 mm) below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.

D. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch (25 mm), to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the utility pipe or conduit.

1. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.

E. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

F. Fill voids with approved backfill materials while shoring and bracing, and as sheeting is removed.

G. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.

H. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

## 3.13 FILL

A. Preparation: Remove vegetation, topsoil, debris, unsatisfactory soil materials, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface before placing fills.

B. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

C. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:

1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

## 3.14 MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air-dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

## 3.15 COMPACTION OF BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches (100 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches (300 mm) of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material at 95 percent.
2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 92 percent.
3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill material at 85 percent.

## 3.16 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:

1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (25 mm).
2. Walks: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (25 mm).
3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).

C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) when tested with a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge.

## 3.17 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES

A. Install separation fabric on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.

B. Under pavements and walks, place subbase course on separation fabric according to fabric manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

C. Under pavements and walks, place subbase course on prepared subgrade and as follows:

1. Place base course material over subbase.
2. Compact subbase and base courses at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 1557.
3. Shape subbase and base to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
4. When thickness of compacted subbase or base course is 6 inches (150 mm) or less, place materials in a single layer.
5. When thickness of compacted subbase or base course exceeds 6 inches (150 mm), place materials in equal layers, with no layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick when compacted.

D. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches (300 mm) wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 1557.

## 3.18 DRAINAGE COURSE

A. Under slabs-on-grade, install drainage fabric on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends. Place drainage course on drainage fabric and as follows:

B. Under slabs-on-grade, place drainage course on prepared subgrade and as follows:

1. Compact drainage course to required cross sections and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

2. When compacted thickness of drainage course is 6 inches (150 mm) or less, place materials in a single layer.
3. When compacted thickness of drainage course exceeds 6 inches (150 mm), place materials in equal layers, with no layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick when compacted.

## 3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.

B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

C. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

## 3.20 PROTECTION

A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.

C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to the greatest extent possible.

## 3.21 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

1. Remove waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 02300

# SECTION 02510 - WATER DISTRIBUTION

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Comply with requirements of utility supplying water.

B. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for water-service piping.

C. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for potable water.

D. Provide listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking on piping and specialties made to specified standards.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipes and Tubes: Applications of the following pipe and tube materials are indicated in "Piping Applications" Paragraph.
   1. PE Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2239, of PE compound and with SIDR required for 160-psig (1100-kPa) minimum pressure rating. Include marking "NSF-pw" according to NSF 14.

B. Pipe and Tube Fittings: Applications of the following pipe and tube fitting materials are indicated in "Piping Applications" Paragraph.
   1. Molded, PE Plastic Fittings: ASTM D 3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
   2. Fittings for PE Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2609, insert type. Include corrosion-resistant bands or crimp rings.

C. Rising-Stem Gate Valves, 3-Inch NPS (DN80) and Larger: AWWA C509, resilient seated; cast-iron or ductile-iron body and bonnet, OS&Y, bronze stem, 200-psig (1380-kPa) working pressure, and flanged ends.

D. Valve Boxes: Cast-iron box with top section and cover with lettering "WATER," bottom section with base of size to fit over valve and barrel approximately 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter, and adjustable cast-iron extension of length required for depth of bury of valve. Include steel tee-handle wrench with each valve box.

E. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FM-approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of bury of valve.

F. Ball Valves: AWWA C507, Class 250. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550.

G. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for underground warning tape materials. Arrange for warning tapes made of solid blue film with continuously printed black-letter caption "CAUTION--WATER LINE BURIED BELOW."

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavation, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Piping Applications: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications:

1. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Potable Water-Service Piping: Use the following:
   a. 2-1/2- and 3-Inch NPS (DN65 and DN80): PE plastic pipe; molded PE plastic fittings; and heat-fusion joints.

C. Valve Applications: Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Underground Valves, 3-Inch NPS (DN80) and Larger: AWWA, gate valves, nonrising stem, with valve box.

D. Joint Construction: Refer to Division 2 Section "Utility Materials" for basic piping joint construction.
1. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: According to ASTM D 2657.
2. PE Piping Insert-Fitting Joints: Use plastic insert fittings and fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Piping Systems - Common Requirements: Drawings indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

1. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
2. Piping Connections: Unless otherwise indicated, make piping connections as specified below:
   a. Install flanges, in piping 2-1/2-inch NPS (DN65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment with flanged pipe connection.
   b. Install dielectric fittings to connect piping of dissimilar metals.

F. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building water piping systems.

G. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.

H. Anchor service-entry piping to building wall.

I. Piping Installation: Install piping according to the following:
1. Install PE plastic pipe according to ASTM D 2774, ASTM F 645, and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches (750 mm), with top at least 12 inches (300 mm) below level of maximum frost penetration.

J. Valve Installation: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for 3-inch NPS (DN80) and larger underground installation. Use threaded- and flanged-end valves for installation in pits. Use nonrising-stem UL/FM gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use bronze corporation stops and valves, with ends compatible with piping, for 2-inch NPS (DN50) and smaller installation.

1. AWWA-Type Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600. Install underground valves with stem pointing up and with cast-iron valve box.
2. Bronze Corporation Stops and Curb Stops: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install underground curb stops with head pointed up and with cast-iron curb box.

K. Water Meter: To be provided

L. Install precast concrete pits according to ASTM C 891.

M. Install continuous plastic underground warning tape during back-filling of trench for underground water-service piping. Locate 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade, directly over piping.

N. Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system.

O. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at 1-1/2 times working pressure for 2 hours. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts (1.89 L) per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within above limits.

P. Clean and disinfect water distribution piping according to authorities having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION 02510

# SECTION 02511 - HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
2. Pavement-marking paint.
3. Wheel stops.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for aggregate subbase and base courses and aggregate pavement shoulders.
2. Division 7 Section "Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at paving terminations.

### 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Provide hot-mix asphalt pavement according to the materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of the standard specifications of the state or of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Standard Specification: As indicated.
2. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each product specified. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

B. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work. Job mix shall meet standards of those having jurisdiction of roadways at perimeter of site where patching needs to occur.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate dedicated handicapped spaces with international graphics symbol.

D. Samples: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) minimum, of paving fabric.

E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

F. Material Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance of materials with requirements indicated.

G. Material Certificates: Certificates signed by manufacturers certifying that each material complies with requirements.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed hot-mix asphalt paving similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Engage a firm experienced in manufacturing hot-mix asphalt similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Firm shall be a registered and approved paving mix manufacturer with authorities having jurisdiction or with the DOT of the state in which Project is located.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on Architect's evaluation of criteria conforming to ASTM D 3666, that the independent testing agency has the experience and capability to satisfactorily conduct the testing indicated without delaying the Work.

D. Regulatory Requirements: Conform to applicable standards of authorities having jurisdiction for asphalt paving work on public property.

E. Asphalt-Paving Publication: Comply with AI's "The Asphalt Handbook," except where more stringent requirements are indicated.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.

B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if substrate is wet or excessively damp or if the following conditions are not met:

1. Prime and Tack Coats: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.5 deg C).
2. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F (4 deg C) and rising at time of placement.
3. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.5 deg C) at time of placement.

B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F (4 deg C) for oil-based materials, 50 deg F (10 deg C) for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AGGREGATES

A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.

B. Coarse Aggregate: Sound; angular crushed stone; crushed gravel; or properly cured, crushed blast-furnace slag; complying with ASTM D 692.

C. Fine Aggregate: Sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone; gravel, properly cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof; complying with ASTM D 1073.

1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.

D. Mineral Filler: Rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material complying with ASTM D 242.

### 2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

A. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381 for viscosity-graded material.

B. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141, pumping consistency.

C. Prime Coat: ASTM D 977, emulsified asphalt or ASTM D 2397, cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

D. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977, emulsified asphalt or ASTM D 2397, cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

E. Water: Potable.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Provide granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.

B. Sand: ASTM D 1073, Grade Nos. 2 or 3.

C. Paving Geotextile: Nonwoven polypropylene, specifically designed for paving applications, resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew.

D. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, ready-mixed, complying with FS TT-P-115, Type I, or AASHTO M-248, Type N.

E. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, water-base emulsion, ready-mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952.
1. Color: White.

F. Glass Beads: AASHTO M-247.

G. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi (17.2-MPa) minimum compressive strength, approximately 6 inches (150 mm) high, 9 inches (225 mm) wide, and 84 inches (2130 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside, and provide holes for anchoring to substrate.

1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, diameter 3/4 inch (19 mm), minimum length 10 inches (254 mm).

## 2.4 MIXES

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Provide dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction; designed according to procedures in AI's "Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types"; and complying with the following requirements:

1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
2. Base and Finish Course Thickness: match standards for patching roadway surfaces in accordance with requirements of local transportation jurisdiction. Contractor is required to meet all standards imposed for cut-ins and patches without exception and with no additional responsibility on the part of the Owner.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to support paving and imposed loads.

B. Proof-roll subbase using heavy, pneumatic-tired rollers to locate areas that are unstable or that require further compaction.

C. Notify Architect in writing of any unsatisfactory conditions. Do not begin paving installation until these conditions have been satisfactorily corrected.

## 3.2 PATCHING AND REPAIRS

A. Patching: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Recompact new subgrade. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches (300 mm) into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically.

1. Tack coat faces of excavation and allow to cure before paving.
2. Fill excavation with dense-graded, hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.
3. Partially fill excavation with dense-graded, hot-mix asphalt base mix and compact while still hot. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

B. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of dense-graded, hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch (25 mm) in existing pavements.

1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches (75 mm) thick.

C. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm). Refill with asphalt joint-filling material to restore watertight condition. Remove excess filler that has accumulated near cracks or joints.

D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to existing surfaces of previously constructed asphalt or portland cement concrete paving and to surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt pavement. Apply at a uniform rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.2 to 0.7 L/sq. m) of surface.

1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before paving.
2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

## 3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.

1. Sweep loose granular particles from surface of unbound-aggregate base course. Do not dislodge or disturb aggregate embedded in compacted surface of base course.

B. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.

1. Mix herbicide with prime coat when formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.

C. Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted-aggregate base at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd. (0.7 to 2.3 L/sq. m). Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure for 72 hours minimum.

1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use just enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

## 3.4 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt mix on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness, when compacted.

1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
3. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F (121 deg C).
4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet (3 m) wide, except where infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.

1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete asphalt base course for a section before placing asphalt surface course.

C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

## 3.5 JOINTS

A. Construct joints to ensure continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.

1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat.
2. Offset longitudinal joints in successive courses a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
3. Offset transverse joints in successive courses a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
4. Construct transverse joints by bulkhead method or sawed vertical face method as described in AI's "The Asphalt Handbook."
5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

## 3.6 COMPACTION

A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.

1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F (85 deg C).

B. Breakdown Rolling: Accomplish breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Repair surfaces by loosening displaced material, filling with hot-mix asphalt, and rerolling to required elevations.

C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling, while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:

1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 1559, but not less than 94 percent nor greater than 100 percent.
2. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.

D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.

E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while still hot, with back of rake or smooth iron. Compact thoroughly using tamper or other satisfactory method.

F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials. Remove paving course over area affected and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.

G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.

H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:

1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.

B. Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:

1. Base Course: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch (6 mm).

## 3.8 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Allow paving to cure for 30 days before starting pavement marking.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm).

## 3.9 WHEEL STOPS

A. Securely attach wheel stops into pavement with not less than 2 galvanized steel dowels embedded in precast concrete at one-third points. Firmly bond each dowel to wheel stop and to pavement.

1. Extend upper portion of dowel 5 inches (125 mm) into wheel stop and lower portion a minimum of 5 inches (125 mm) into pavement.

## 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field inspections and tests and to prepare test reports.

1. Testing agency will conduct and interpret tests and state in each report whether tested Work complies with or deviates from specified requirements.

B. Additional testing, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

C. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.

D. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.

E. In-Place Density: Samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement will be secured by testing agency according to ASTM D 979.

1. Reference laboratory density will be determined by averaging results from 4 samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 1559, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
2. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from 4 samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
3. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.

a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. (836 sq. m) or less of installed pavement, but in no case will fewer than 3 cores be taken.
b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.

F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 02511

# SECTION 02751 - CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Submittals: In addition to Product Data, submit design mixes for each concrete pavement mix.

1. Submit material certificates signed by manufacturers certifying that each concrete material complies with requirements.

B. Quality Assurance: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed pavement work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.

B. Steel Reinforcement Materials: As follows:

1. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, flat sheets.
2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
3. Plain Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.
4. Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening steel reinforcement; manufactured according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice"

C. Concrete Materials: As follows:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.

   a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.
   b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

2. Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, from a single source.
3. Water: ASTM C 94.
4. Synthetic Fiber: Fibrillated or monofilament polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete pavement, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, 1/2 to 1 inch (13 to 25 mm) long.

D. Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cement and to be compatible with other admixtures, as follows:

1. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
2. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
3. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
4. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E.

5. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.

E. Curing Materials: As follows:

1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) dry.
2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
3. Water: Potable.
4. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
5. Clear Solvent-Borne Liquid-Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
6. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
7. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.

F. Related Materials: As follows:

1. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
2. Coloring Agent: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

G. Concrete Mixes: Prepare design mixes, proportioned according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301, with the following properties:

1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi (24.1 MPa).
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm).
4. Air Content: 5 to 8 percent.

H. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Comply with requirements and with ASTM C 94.

I. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Comply with requirements and with ASTM C 94 and ASTM C 1116.

J. Project-Site Mixing: Comply with requirements and measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Surface Preparation: Proof-roll prepared subbase, and remove loose material from surface.

B. Forms: Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations.

C. Reinforcement: Accurately position and support reinforcement, and secure against displacement. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete.

1. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable; lap at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire.

D. Joints: Locate and install construction, isolation, contraction, and expansion joints as indicated.

E. Concrete Placement: Comply with recommendations in ACI 304R for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. Place concrete in a continuous operation within planned joints or sections.

1. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed.
2. Consolidate concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding, or tamping according to recommendations in ACI 309R.
3. Screed and initial-float concrete surfaces with darby or bull float before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface.
4. Protect concrete from cold or hot weather during mixing, placing, and curing.

F. Evaporation Retarder: Apply to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

G. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and the concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surfaces to true planes with gaps below 10-foot- (3-m-) long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm). Cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

H. Curing: Begin curing after finishing concrete, but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface. Cure concrete by one or a combination of the following methods:

1. Moisture cure concrete by water, continuous fog spray, continuously wet absorptive cover, or by moisture-retaining-cover curing. Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days.
2. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

I. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective, or does not meet requirements in this Section.

J. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement.

K. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 02751

# SECTION 02764 - PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Expansion and contraction joints within portland cement concrete pavement.
2. Joints between portland cement concrete and asphalt pavement.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
2. Division 2 Section "Portland Cement Concrete Paving" for constructing joints in concrete paving.
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing nontraffic and traffic joints in locations not specified in this Section.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.

B. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required. Install joint-sealant samples in 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two 6-inch- (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

C. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of joint sealants certifying that products furnished comply with requirements and are suitable for the use indicated.

D. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

E. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From joint sealant manufacturer indicating the following:

1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backer materials have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

F. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating joint sealants comply with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current product formulations.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has specialized in installing joint sealants similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in joint-sealant installations with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency, based on testing current sealant formulations within a 36-month period.

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
2. Test joint sealants for compliance with requirements indicated by referencing standard specifications and test methods.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.

B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer.
2. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).
3. When joint substrates are wet.

B. Joint-Width Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants where joint widths are less than that allowed by joint sealant manufacturer for application indicated.

C. Joint-Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until contaminants capable of interfering with their adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range for this characteristic.

## 2.2 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

A. Single-Component Jet-Fuel-Resistant Urethane Sealant for Concrete: Single-component, pourable, coal-tar-modified, urethane formulation complying with ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

B. Multicomponent Low-Modulus Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Proprietary formulation consisting of reactive petropolymer and activator components producing a pourable, self-leveling sealant.

C. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, cold-applied joint sealants that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Single-Component Jet-Fuel-Resistant Urethane Sealant for Concrete:

   a. Vulkem 200; Mameco International.
   b. Sonomeric 1; Sonneborn Building Products Div., ChemRex, Inc.

2. Multicomponent Low-Modulus Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt:

   a. SOF-SEAL; W.R. Meadows, Inc.

## 2.3 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

B. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control sealant depths and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

## 2.4 PRIMERS

A. Primers: Product recommended by joint sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint- sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations of ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.
2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install sealants by proven techniques to comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.
3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.

F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Provide recessed joint configuration for silicone sealants of recess depth and at locations indicated.

## 3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 02764

# SECTION 03300 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mix design, placement procedures, and finishes.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.
2. Division 2 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for concrete pavement and walks.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.

B. Design Mixes: For each concrete mix. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1. Indicate amounts of mix water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Details of fabrication, bending, and placement, prepared according to ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Include material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, arrangement, and supports of concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcement required for openings through concrete structures.

D. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork. Design and engineering of formwork are Contractor's responsibility.

1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and installing and removing reshoring.

E. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

F. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:

G. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following items complies with requirements:

1. Cementitious materials and aggregates.
2. Form materials and form-release agents.
3. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
4. Fiber reinforcement.
5. Admixtures.
6. Waterstops.
7. Curing materials.
8. Floor and slab treatments.
9. Bonding agents.
10. Adhesives.
11. Vapor retarders.
12. Epoxy joint filler.
13. Joint-filler strips.
14. Repair materials.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed concrete Work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer must be certified according to the National Ready Mixed Concrete Association's Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities.

2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency (Hired by Owner)

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, each aggregate from one source, and each admixture from the same manufacturer.

D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."

E. ACI Publications: Comply with the following, unless more stringent provisions are indicated:

1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete."
2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

F. Mockups: Cast concrete slabs-on-grade mockup to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, and standard of workmanship.

1. Build mockups approximately 200 sq. ft. (18.6 sq. m) in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
3. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting construction.

4. If Architect determines that mockups do not meet requirements, demolish and remove them from the site and cast another until the mockup is approved.
5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
7. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

1. Before submitting design mixes, review concrete mix design and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

a. Contractor's superintendent.
b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixes.
c. Ready-mix concrete producer.
d. Concrete subcontractor.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

1. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.
2. Repair damaged epoxy coatings on steel reinforcement according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.

1. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:

a. High-density overlay, Class 1, or better at Fin wall location North side of buildng.

B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit. (This may be used only where not exposed to interior or exterior view.)

C. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.

D. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum.

E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to the plane of the exposed concrete surface.
2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes not larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter in concrete surface. (cone type only) Ties in exposed exterior concrete shall be approved by architect.
3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

## 2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.

B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed for dba's (deformed bar anchors).

C. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, galvanized.

D. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

## 2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete or fiber-reinforced concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:

1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

B. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars.

C. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775/A 755M.

## 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II.

1. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, and as follows:

1. Class: Moderate weathering region, but not less than 3M.
2. Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch (19 mm).

C. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330.

1. Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 3/8 inch (10 mm).

D. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94.

## 2.5 ADMIXTURES

A. General: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material and to be compatible with other admixtures and cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.

B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

C. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.

D. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.

E. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E.

F. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.

G. Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Catexol 1000CL; Axim Concrete Technologies.
b. MCI 2000 or MCI 2005; Cortec Corporation.
c. DCI or DCI-S; W. R. Grace & Co., Construction Products Div.
d. Rheocrete 222+; Master Builders, Inc.
e. FerroGard-901; Sika Corporation.

## 2.6 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class C, of one of the following materials; or polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm) thick:

1. Nonwoven, polyester-reinforced, polyethylene coated sheet; 10 mils (0.25 mm) thick.

B. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Clean mixture of crushed stone, crushed gravel, and manufactured or natural sand; ASTM D 448, Size 10, with 100 percent passing a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve; meeting deleterious substance limits of ASTM C 33 for fine aggregates.

## 2.7 FLOOR AND SLAB TREATMENTS

A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment:

a. Titan Hard; Burke Group, LLC (The).
b. Chemisil Plus; ChemMasters.
c. Intraseal; Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.
d. Ashford Formula; Curecrete Chemical Co., Inc.
e. Day-Chem Sure Hard; Dayton Superior Corporation.
f. Euco Diamond Hard; Euclid Chemical Co.
g. Seal Hard; L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
h. Vexcon Starseal PS; Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.

## 2.8 CURING MATERIALS

A. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

B. Water: Potable.

C. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

D. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

E. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound:

a. Klear-Kote Cure-Sealer-Hardener, 30 percent solids; Burke Group, LLC (The).
b. Polyseal WB; ChemMasters.
c. UV Safe Seal; Lambert Corporation.
d. Lumiseal WB Plus; L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
e. Vocomp-30; W. R. Meadows, Inc.
f. Metcure 30; Metalcrete Industries.
g. Vexcon Starseal 1315; Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.

## 2.9 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

C. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch (0.85 mm) thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

## 2.10 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.

1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi (29 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

B. Repair Topping: Traffic-bearing, cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch (6 mm).

1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5700 psi (39 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

## 2.11 CONCRETE MIXES

A. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete determined by either laboratory trial mix or field test data bases, as follows:

1. Proportion normal-weight concrete according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301.
2. Proportion lightweight structural concrete according to ACI 211.2 and ACI 301.

B. Footings and Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mix as follows:
1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi (27.6 MPa).
2. Maximum Slump: 4 inches (100 mm).
3. Maximum Slump for Concrete Containing High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture: 8 inches (200 mm) after admixture is added to concrete with 2- to 4-inch (50- to 100-mm) slump.

C. Slab-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mix as follows:
1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi (27.6 MPa).
2. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 611 lb/cu. yd..
3. Maximum Slump: 4 inches (100 mm).

D. Cementitious Materials: For concrete exposed to deicers, limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements.

E. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45 for concrete unless noted otherwise.

F. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.40 for corrosion protection of steel reinforcement in concrete exposed to chlorides from deicing chemicals, salt, saltwater, brackish water, seawater, or spray from these sources. (Parking structure application)

G. Air Content: Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content of 2 to 4 percent, unless otherwise indicated. Use 6% for exposed concrete.

H. Do not air entrain concrete to trowel-finished interior floors and suspended slabs. Do not allow entrapped air content to exceed 3 percent.

I. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

J. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use water-reducing admixture or high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer) in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixes where indicated. (parking structure and exterior suspended slab at cooling tower)

## 2.12 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## 2.13 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94 and ASTM C 1116, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 FORMWORK

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until concrete structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.

C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:

1. Class B, 1/4 inch (3 mm) for all exposed concrete..

D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.

1. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.

F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.

J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

## 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use Setting Drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

1. Install anchor bolts, accurately located, to elevations required.
2. Install reglets to receive top edge of foundation sheet waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

## 3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

A. General: Formwork, for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work, that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete provided concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and provided curing and protection operations are maintained.

B. Leave formwork, for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements, that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved the following:
   1. At least 70 percent of 28-day design compressive strength.
   2. Determine compressive strength of in-place concrete by testing representative field- or laboratory-cured test specimens according to ACI 301.
   3. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.

C. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

D. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

## 3.4 SHORES AND RESHORES

A. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M), ACI 301, and recommendations in ACI 347R for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.

## 3.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Vapor Retarder: Place, protect, and repair vapor-retarder sheets according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Cover vapor retarder with fine-graded granular material, moisten, and compact with mechanical equipment to elevation tolerances of plus 0 inch (0 mm) or minus 3/4 inch (19 mm).

## 3.6 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.

   1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials.

C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

   1. Shop- or field-weld reinforcement according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.

D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

E. Install welded wire fabric in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

F. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.

## 3.7 JOINTS

A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.

1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
2. Form from preformed galvanized steel, plastic keyway-section forms, or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness, as follows:

1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3 mm). Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch (12 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Dowel Joints: Install dowel sleeves and dowels or dowel bar and support assemblies at joints where indicated.

1. Use dowel sleeves or lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

## 3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.

B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement, unless approved by Architect.

C. Before placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mix.

D. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as specified. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.

E. Deposit concrete in forms in horizontal layers no deeper than 24 inches (600 mm) and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints. Place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic, to avoid cold joints.

1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment. Use equipment and procedures for consolidating concrete recommended by ACI 309R.
2. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations no farther than the visible effectiveness of the vibrator. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mix constituents to segregate.

F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.

1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, free of humps or hollows, before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

G. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.

3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators, unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.

H. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete according to recommendations in ACI 305R and as follows, when hot-weather conditions exist:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## 3.9 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections exceeding ACI 347R limits for class of surface specified.

B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defective areas. Remove fins and other projections exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm) in height.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, dampproofing, veneer plaster, or painting.
2. Do not apply rubbed finish to smooth-formed finish – no exceptions.

C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. General: Comply with recommendations in ACI 302.1R for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes.

1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to surfaces to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for ceramic or quarry tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded cementitious floor finishes.

C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.

1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated, to surfaces to receive trowel finish, and to floor and slab surfaces to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.

D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first trowel finish and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.

1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated and to floor and slab surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin film-finish coating system
2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, measured within 24 hours according to ASTM E 1155/E 1155M for a randomly trafficked floor surface:

3. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled free-standing 10-foot- (3.05-m-) long straightedge, resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface, does not exceed the following:
   a. 3/16 inch (4.8 mm).

E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a partial trowel finish, stopping after second troweling, to surfaces indicated and to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. Immediately after second troweling, and when concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.

## 3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates of manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

## 3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with recommendations in ACI 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing by one or a combination of the following methods:

D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces, by one or a combination of the following methods:

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials: **(required for all exposed concrete)**

   a. Water.
   b. Continuous water-fog spray.
   c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

   a. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer recommends for use with floor coverings.

3. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

## 3.13 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than seven days old.
3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.

B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.14 JOINT FILLING

A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least six months. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.

C. Install semirigid epoxy joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches (50 mm) deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

## 3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.2-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension in solid concrete but not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.

D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts

and expose steel reinforcement with at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mix as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.

7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.

F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

## 3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during concrete placement. Sampling and testing for quality control may include those specified in this Article.

B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mix exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m), but less than 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.

2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of four standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

    a. Cast and field cure one set of four standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; test two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and two at 28 days.

    a. Test two field-cured specimens at 7 days and two at 28 days.
    b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

C. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.

D. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).

E. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7-and 28-day tests.

F. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

G. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42 or by other methods as directed by Architect.

END OF SECTION 03300

# SECTION 03490 - GLASS-FIBER-REINFORCED PRECAST CONCRETE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes plant-precast glass-fiber-reinforced concrete panels, including embedded hardware, loose connection hardware, and integrated panel framing.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for anchor placement in concrete.
2. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for anchor attachment to steel framing.
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing joints between panels.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GFRC: Glass-fiber-reinforced concrete.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide GFRC panels and panel frames capable of withstanding gravity, wind, seismic, and erection design loads as well as the effects of thermal- and moisture-induced volume changes, according to load factors and combinations established in PCI MNL 128, "Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panel."

1. Design Loads: As indicated on structural drawings.
2. Design framing systems to withstand design loads with lateral deflections no greater than **1/360** of the wall height.

B. Design panel framing to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 100 deg F (56 deg C).

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include GFRC design mixes.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication and installation of GFRC panels, including the following:

1. Comprehensive engineering analysis certified by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.
2. Panel elevations, sections, and dimensions.
3. Thickness of facing, GFRC backing, and bonding pads.
4. Finishes.
5. Joint and connection details.
6. Lifting and erection details.
7. Cold-formed metal framing layout and details.
8. Location and details of connection hardware attached to structure.
9. Size, location, and details of flex, gravity, and seismic anchors.
10. Other items sprayed into panels.
11. Sequence of erection for special conditions.
12. Relationship to adjacent materials.
13. Description of loose, cast-in, and field hardware.

C. Samples: Representative of finished exposed face of GFRC showing the full range of colors and textures expected, 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) and of appropriate thickness.

D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed GFRC panels similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm that complies with the following requirements and is experienced in manufacturing GFRC panels similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Assumes responsibility for engineering GFRC panels to comply with performance requirements. This responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

    a. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of GFRC panels that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

2. Participates in PCI's Plant Certification Program and is designated a PCI-Certified Plant for Group G, Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete.
3. Has sufficient production capacity to produce required units without delaying the Work.

C. Mill certificates signed by manufacturers of steel sheet or test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including uncoated steel thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and galvanized-coating thickness.

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where GFRC panels are part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly, provide panels identical to those used in assemblies tested per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Requirements: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory," from ITS's "Directory of Listed Products," or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency.

G. PCI Manuals: Comply with requirements and recommendations in the following PCI manuals, unless more stringent requirements are indicated:

1. PCI MNL 128, "Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panel."
2. PCI MNL 130, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Products."

H. AISI Specifications: Comply with AISI's "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" or "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" for calculating structural characteristics of cold-formed metal framing.

I. Mockups: Before installing GFRC, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:

1. Build mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

   a. Include window complying with requirements in Division 8 Section "Aluminum Windows."
   b. Include sealant-filled GFRC joints and seal perimeter of window complying with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
4. In presence of Architect, damage part of an exposed-face surface and demonstrate materials and methods proposed for repair of surface blemishes.
5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting installation.
6. Maintain mockups during installation in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
8. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

J. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handle and transport units to avoid excessive stresses or damage.

1. Lift or support units only at points indicated on Shop Drawings.
2. Place nonstaining resilient spacers of even thickness between units.
3. Support units during shipment on nonstaining shock-absorbing material.
4. Protect units from dirt and damage during handling and transport.

B. Store units to protect from contact with soil, staining, and physical damage.

1. Store units with nonstaining resilient supports in same positions as when transported.
2. Store units on firm, level, and smooth surfaces.
3. Place stored units so identification marks are clearly visible.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: (Others shall be pre-approved (2) days prior to bid by architect).

1. Eagle Pre-cast
2. Basic Pre-cast
3. Others as Pre-Approved.

### 2.2 MOLD MATERIALS

A. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, nonabsorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true GFRC surfaces; nonreactive with GFRC and capable of producing required finish surfaces.

1. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect GFRC surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface treatments of GFRC.

B. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated to match GFRC design reference sample. Provide solid backing and form supports to ensure that form liners remain in place during concreting. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface treatments of GFRC.

C. Form Retarder: Chemical liquid set retarder capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed GFRC face mix to depth of reveal specified.

### 2.3 GFRC MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.

1. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, use color of same type, brand, and source throughout GFRC production.
2. Metakaolin: ASTM C 618, Class N.

B. Glass Fibers: Alkali resistant, with a minimum zirconia content of 16 percent, 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) long, specifically produced for use in GFRC, and complying with PCI MNL 130.

C. Sand: Washed and dried silica, successfully used in GFRC production, complying with composition requirements of ASTM C 144; passing No. 20 (0.85-mm) sieve with a maximum of 2 percent retained on No. 140 (0.10-mm) sieve.

D. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, nonfading, and alkali resistant. (not to exceed 10 percent of cement weight.)

1. Match color sample on file with Architect – "As selected by architect"

E. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of GFRC and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 130.

## 2.4 ANCHORS AND SUBSYSTEMS

A. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Carbon-Steel Rods: ASTM A 108, AISI 1018, cold drawn.

C. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A 283/A 283M.

D. Malleable-Steel Castings: ASTM A 47 (ASTM A 47M).

E. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205).

F. Bolts: ASTM A 307 or ASTM A 325 (ASTM F 568M or ASTM A 325M).

G. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, and ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable.

H. Finish: Shop primed with lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer complying with performance requirements in FS TT-P-664.

I. Reglets: Stainless steel.

## 2.5 PANEL FRAME MATERIALS

A. Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, complying with ASTM C 955, minimum uncoated steel thickness of 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm) of web depth indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, U-shaped steel track, and of the following steel sheet:

1. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural-steel sheet, G90 (Z275) zinc coating, of grade required by structural performance of framing but not less than **Grade** 33 (230).
2. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 570/A 570M hot rolled or ASTM A 611 cold rolled; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's baked-on, lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer complying with performance requirements in FS TT-P-664; of grade required by structural performance of framing, but not less than **Grade** 33 (230) **or Grade C**.

B. Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B, or ASTM A 513, finished as follows:

1. Hot-Dip Galvanized: ASTM A 123/A 123M.
2. Primer: Lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer complying with performance requirements in FS TT-P-664.

C. Steel Channels and Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M, finished as follows:

1. Hot-Dip Galvanized: ASTM A 123/A 123M.
2. Primer: Lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer complying with performance requirements in FS TT-P-664.

## 2.6 GFRC MIXES

A. Backing Mix: Proportion backing mix of portland cement, glass fibers, sand, and selected admixtures to comply with design requirements, and as follows. Provide nominal glass-fiber content of not less than 5 percent.

1. Flexural Properties: Average yield strength of 900 psi, and average ultimate strength of 2500 psi at 28 days; ASTM C 947.
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Ratio: 0.35.
3. Curing Admixture: 4 to 5 percent of total mix volume.

B. Face Mix: Proportion face mix of portland cement, fine and coarse aggregates, and selected admixtures to comply with design requirements, and as follows:

1. Moisture Absorption: 6 percent maximum; ASTM C 948.
2. Air Content: 3 to 10 percent; ASTM C 231.

C. Coloring Admixture: Not to exceed 10 percent of cement weight.

## 2.7 PANEL FRAME FABRICATION

A. Fabricate panel framing and accessories plumb, square, true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to Shop Drawings and requirements in this Section.

1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
2. Install framing members in one-piece lengths.
3. Cut cold-formed metal framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
4. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
5. Fasten structural-steel framing members by welding. Comply with AWS D1.1 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
6. Weld flex, gravity, and seismic anchors to panel framing.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

C. Repair Painting: Touch up accessible damaged galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.

D. Repair Painting: Touch up accessible damaged painted surfaces using rust-inhibitive prime-paint material compatible with shop coat.

## 2.8 MOLD FABRICATION

A. Construct molds that will result in finished GFRC complying with profiles, dimensions, and tolerances indicated, without restraining shrinkage or damaging GFRC during stripping. Construct molds to prevent water leakage and loss of cement paste.

1. Coat contact surfaces of molds with form-release agent.

B. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during GFRC application. Coat form liner with form-release agent.

C. Steel stud frame system: Prefabricate welded steel stud frame assemblies according to shop erection drawings. Touch up welds following fabrication.

## 2.9 GFRC FABRICATION

A. Proportioning and Mixing: For backing mix, meter sand/cement slurry and glass fibers to spray head at rates to achieve desired mix proportion and glass content according to PCI MNL 130 procedures.

B. Spray Application: Comply with general procedures as follows:

1. Spray mist coat of matrix without glass fibers over molds to a thickness not exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm).
2. Spray face mix in thickness indicated on Shop Drawings.
3. Proceed with spraying up backing mix skin before face mix has set, using procedures that produce a uniform thickness and even distribution of glass fibers and matrix.
4. Consolidate backing mix by rolling or use another technique to achieve complete encapsulation of glass fibers and compaction.
5. Measure thickness with a pin gage or another acceptable method at least once for each 5 sq. ft. (0.5 sq. m) of panel surface. Take not less than six measurements per panel.

C. Hand form intricate details, incorporate formers or infill materials, and over spray before material reaches initial set to ensure complete bonding.

D. Attach panel frame to GFRC before initial set of GFRC backing, maintaining a minimum clearance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) from GFRC backing, and without anchors protruding into GFRC backing.

E. Build up homogeneous GFRC bonding pads over anchor legs, maintaining a minimum thickness of 1/2 inch (13 mm) over top of anchor foot, before initial set of GFRC backing.

F. Inserts and Embedments: Build up homogeneous GFRC bosses or bonding pads over inserts and embedments to provide sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements.

G. Curing: Employ initial curing method that will ensure sufficient strength for removing units from mold.

1. After initial curing, remove panel from mold and place in a controlled curing environment.
2. Keep panels continuously moist for a minimum of seven days. Maintain temperature between 60 and 120 deg F (16 and 49 deg C) during this period.
3. An acrylic thermoplastic copolymer dispersion may be used as a curing compound in lieu of moist curing. Use only copolymers shown, in published independent laboratory test data, to eliminate the need for moist curing of GFRC.

H. Panel Identification: Mark each GFRC panel to correspond with identification mark on Shop Drawings. Mark each panel with its casting date.

## 2.10 FABRICATION TOLERANCES

A. Manufacturing Tolerances: Manufacture GFRC units so each finished panel complies with PCI MNL 130 for dimension, position, and stud frame tolerances.

B. Manufacturing Tolerances: Manufacture GFRC units so each finished panel complies with the following dimensional tolerances. For dimensional tolerances not listed below, comply with PCI MNL 130.

1. Overall Height and Width of Units, Measured at the Face Adjacent to Mold: As follows:

   a. 10 feet (3 m) or under, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).

2. Edge Return Thickness: Plus 1/2 inch (13 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
3. Architectural Facing Thickness: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
4. Backing Thickness: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
5. Panel Depth from Face of Skin to Back of Panel Frame or Integral Rib: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
6. Angular Variation of Plane of Side Mold: Plus or minus 1/32 inch per 3 inches (0.8 mm per 75 mm) of depth or plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) total, whichever is greater.
7. Variation from Square or Designated Skew (Difference in Length of Two Diagonal Measurements): Plus or minus 1/8 inch per 72 inches (3 mm per 1800 mm) or plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) total, whichever is greater.
8. Local Smoothness: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
9. Bowing: Not to exceed L/240 unless unit meets erection tolerances using connection adjustments.
10. Length and Width of Block Outs and Openings within One Unit: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
11. Location of Window Opening within Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
12. Maximum Permissible Warpage of One Corner out of the Plane of the Other Three: 1/16 inch per 12 inches (1.5 mm per 300 mm) of distance from nearest adjacent corner.

C. Position Tolerances: Measured from datum line locations, as indicated on Shop Drawings.

1. Panel Frame and Track: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
2. Flashing Reglets at Edge of Panel: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. Inserts: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
4. Special Handling Devices: Plus or minus 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Location of Bearing Devices: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
6. Block Outs: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).

D. Panel Frame Tolerances: As follows:

1. Vertical and Horizontal Alignment: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
2. Spacing of Framing Member: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. Squareness of Frame: Difference in length of diagonals of plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
4. Overall Size of Frame: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).

## 2.11 FINISHES

A. Finish exposed-face surfaces of GFRC units as follows to match Architect's design reference sample. Panel faces shall be free of joint marks, grain, or other obvious defects.

1. Smooth-Surface Finish: Provide free of pockets, sand streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Quality-Control Testing: Establish and maintain a quality-control program for manufacturing GFRC panels according to PCI MNL 130.

1. Test and inspect GFRC production. Include material acceptance testing, preproduction testing, aggregate production testing, wet production testing, and production testing after curing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, true and level bearing surfaces, and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ERECTION

A. Install clips, hangers, and other accessories required for connecting GFRC units to supporting members and backup materials.

B. Lift GFRC units at lifting points established by manufacturer and install without damaging units.

C. Install GFRC units level, plumb, square, and in alignment. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of units until permanent connections are completed.

1. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width.
2. Remove projecting hoisting devices.

D. Anchor GFRC units in position by bolting or welding, or both, as indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as possible after anchoring is completed.

E. Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Protect GFRC units from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.

F. At bolted connections, use lock washers or other acceptable means to prevent loosening of nuts.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erect GFRC units to comply with the following noncumulative tolerances:

1. Plan Location from Building Grid Datum: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
2. Top Elevation from Nominal Top Elevation: As follows:

    a. Exposed Individual Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    b. Nonexposed Individual Panel: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
    c. Exposed Panel relative to Adjacent Panel: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    d. Nonexposed Panel relative to Adjacent Panel: 1/2 inch (13 mm).

3. Support Elevation from Nominal Elevation: As follows:

    a. Maximum Low: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
    b. Maximum High: 1/4 inch (6 mm).

4. Maximum Plumb Variation over the Lesser of Height of Structure or 100 Feet (30 m): 1 inch (25 mm).
5. Plumb in Any 10 Feet (3 m) of Element Height: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
6. Maximum Jog in Alignment of Matching Edges: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
7. Maximum Jog in Alignment of Matching Faces: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
8. Face Width of Joint: As follows (governs over joint taper):

    a. Panel Dimension 20 Feet (6 m) or Less: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    b. Panel Dimension More Than 20 Feet (6 m): Plus or minus 5/16 inch (8 mm).

9. Maximum Joint Taper: 3/8 inch (10 mm).
10. Joint Taper in 10 Feet (3 m): 1/4 inch (6 mm).
11. Differential Bowing, as Erected, between Adjacent Members of Same Design: 1/4 inch (6 mm).

## 3.4 REPAIRS

A. Repairs will be permitted provided structural adequacy of GFRC unit and appearance are not impaired, as approved by Architect.

B. Blend and mix patching materials and repair GFRC so cured patches match color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces.

C. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on metal framing, anchors, and subsystems with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.

D. Wire brush, clean, and paint accessible scarred areas, welds, and rust spots on prime-painted metal framing, anchors, and subsystems. Paint with same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces.

E. Remove and replace damaged GFRC units when repairs do not comply with requirements.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Perform cleaning procedures according to GFRC manufacturer's written instructions. Clean soiled GFRC surfaces with detergent and water, using soft fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Prevent damage to GFRC surfaces and to adjacent materials.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure GFRC is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 03490

# SECTION 04810 - UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Submittals: In addition to Product Data, submit the following:

1. Samples showing the full range of colors and textures available for exposed masonry units and colored mortar.
2. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, for each type of masonry unit required; mortar complying with property requirements, and grout complying with compressive strength requirements.
3. Material Certificates: For each type of masonry unit required.

B. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602

C. Hot-Weather Requirements: When ambient temperature exceeds 100 deg F (38 deg C), or 90 deg F (32 deg C) with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph (13 km/h), do not spread mortar beds more than 48 inches (1200 mm) ahead of masonry. Set masonry units within one minute of spreading mortar.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

B. Brick, General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:

1. Provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished for ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces.
2. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.

C. Face Brick: ASTM C 216 Grade MW or SW and as follows:

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa)
2. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 20 g/30 sq. in. (20 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
3. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not efflo-resced."
4. Surface Coloring: Brick with surface coloring, other than flashed or sand-finished brick, shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
5. Size: Manufactured to the following actual dimensions:
   a. Modular: 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm) wide by 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.

D. Mortar and Grout Materials: As follows:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction.
2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207 Type S.
3. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
4. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
5. For pigmented mortar, use a colored cement or cement-lime formulation as required to produce the color indicated.
6. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144; except for joints less than 1/4 inch (6.5 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.

    a. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural-colored sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone; of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

7. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
8. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
9. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494, Type C, and recommended by the manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
10. Water: Potable.

E. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: ASTM A 951mill galvanized, carbon-steel wire for interior walls and hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel wire for exterior walls.

1. Wire Size for Side Rods: W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm) diameter.
2. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm) diameter.
3. For single-wythe masonry, provide either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods and cross rods spaced not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
4. For multiwythe masonry, provide ladder type with perpendicular cross rods spaced not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c. and 1 side rod for each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches (100 mm) in width, plus 1 side rod for each wythe of masonry 4 inches (100 mm) or less in width] [tab type with single pair of side rods spaced for embedment within each face shell of backup wythe and rectangular box-type cross ties spaced not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.] [adjustable (2-piece) type with single pair of side rods and cross ties spaced not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c. and with separate adjustable veneer ties engaging the cross ties].

F. Ties and Anchors, General: Provide ties and anchors, specified in subsequent paragraphs, made from materials that comply with this paragraph, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Galvanized Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 coating for exterior walls.
2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 366/A 366M cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153, at exterior walls; and ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), commercial-quality, steel sheet zinc coated by hot-dip process on continuous lines before fabrication at interior walls.

G. Bent Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) wide, made from 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) diameter, galvanized steel wire.

H. Anchors for Connecting to Concrete: Provide two-piece assemblies that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to wall.

1. Anchor Section: Dovetail anchor section formed from 0.0528-inch- (1.35-mm-) thick, galvanized steel sheet.

2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face, made from 0.1875-inch- (4.8-mm-) diameter, galvanized steel wire.

I. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Provide two-piece assemblies that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and that are capable of withstanding a 100-lbf (445-N) load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).

1. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a triangular wire tie and a rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes top and bottom; with raised rib-stiffened strap stamped into center to provide a slot for connection of wire tie.
2. Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes top and bottom; with raised rib-stiffened strap stamped into center to provide a slot for a connector section designed to engage a continuous wire embedded in the veneer mortar joint.

J. Embedded Flashing Materials: As follows:

1. Metal Flashing: Fabricate from the following metal complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and below:

   a. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch (0.4 mm) thick.

2. Fabricate metal drip edges from sheet metal indicated above. Extend at least 3 inches (75 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with a hemmed outer edge bent down 30 degrees.

K. Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories: As follows:

1. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
2. Round Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, 3/8-inch (9-mm) OD by 4 inches (100 mm) long.
3. Cavity Drainage Material: 1-1/2"-inch- (50-mm-)] thick, free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands.

L. Masonry Cleaners: As follows:

1. Job-Mixed Detergent Solution: Solution of 1/2-cup (0.14-L) dry measure tetrasodium polyphosphate and 1/2-cup (0.14-L) dry measure laundry detergent dissolved in 1 gal. (4 L) of water.
2. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

M. Mortar and Grout Mixes: Do not use admixtures, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
1. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 AND BIA M1, Property Specification.

   a. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.
   b. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.

2. Pigmented Mortar: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Limit pigments to the following percentages of cement content by weight:

   a. For portland cement-lime mortar, not more than 10 percent.
   b. For mortar cement, not more than 5 percent.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Cut masonry units with motor-driven saws. Allow units cut with water-cooled saws to dry before placing, unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

B. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.

C. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if the initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at the time of laying.

D. Comply with tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and the following:

   1. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), nor 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
   2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as exposed lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), nor 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.

E. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

F. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Lay exposed masonry in bond pattern indicated; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

G. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified under this and other Sections of the Specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

H. Lay solid brick-size masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.

   1. At cavity walls, bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity.

I. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than the joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.

J. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction.

   1. Use wood strips temporarily placed in cavity to collect mortar droppings. As work progresses, remove strips, clean off mortar droppings, and replace in cavity.

K. Provide continuous masonry joint reinforcement as indicated. Install with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

1. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by using prefabricated "L" and "T" sections.

L. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:

1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Anchor masonry to structural members with flexible anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.

M. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing and concrete with seismic masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:

1. Fasten each anchor section through sheathing to wall framing and concrete backup with two metal fasteners of type indicated.
2. Embed tie sections or connector sections and continuous wire in masonry joints. Provide not less than 2 inches (50 mm) of air space between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically and 24 inches (610) o.c. horizontally with not less than 1 anchor for each 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m) of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches (914 mm), around perimeter.

N. Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.

1. Extend flashing 4 inches (100 mm) at ends and turn flashing up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form a pan.
2. Install metal drip edges beneath flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flashing to top of metal drip edge.
3. Install metal flashing termination beneath flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flashing to top of metal flashing termination.

O. Install weep holes in the head joints in exterior wythes of the first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing. Install vents in vertical head joints at the top of each continuous cavity at spacing indicated.

1. Use round plastic tubing form weep holes.
2. Space weep holes 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
3. Trim wicking material used in weep holes flush with outside face of wall after mortar has set.

P. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.

1. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.

Q. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and the IBC

R. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient strength to resist grout pressure.

1. Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and the IBCs and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.

S. Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as follows:

1. By dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints, as work progresses.
2. After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

    a. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes.
    b. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner.
    c. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing the surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
    d. Clean brick by the bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes No. 20, using job-mixed detergent solution.
    e. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    f. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2 applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

T. Masonry Waste Disposal: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including broken masonry units, waste mortar, and excess or soil-contaminated sand, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.

1. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (450 mm) of finished grade.
2. Remove excess, clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04810

# SECTION 05210 - STEEL JOISTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. K-series open-web steel joists.
2. Joist girders.
3. Joist accessories.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 1 Section "Quality Control" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
2. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchors set in concrete.
3. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for field quality-control procedures and tests.
4. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for loose, steel bearing plates and miscellaneous steel framing.
5. Division 9 Section "Special Coatings" for surface preparation and prime painting.
6. Division 9 Section "Painting" for surface preparation and prime painting.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Engineer, fabricate, and erect joists and connections to withstand design loads within limits and under conditions required.
1. Design joists to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:

a. Floor Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
b. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.

B. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a joist manufacturer who utilizes a qualified professional engineer to prepare design calculations, shop drawings, and other structural data for steel joists.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each type of joist, accessory, and product specified.

C. Shop Drawings showing layout, mark, number, type, location, and spacings of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, accessories, splice and connection details, and attachments to other units of Work.

1. Indicate locations and details of anchorage devices and bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.
2. For joists indicated to comply with certain design loadings, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

D. Material certificates signed by joist manufacturer certifying that joists comply with SJI's "Specifications."

E. Mill certificates signed by manufacturers of bolts certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.

F. Welder certificates signed by Contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements specified under the "Quality Assurance" Article.

G. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

H. Research reports or evaluation reports of the model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that evidence joists' compliance with building code in effect for Project.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Engage a firm experienced in manufacturing joists similar to those indicated for this Project and that have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Manufacturer must be certified by SJI to manufacture joists conforming to SJI standard specifications and load tables.

B. SJI Design Standard: Comply with recommendations of SJI's "Standard Specifications Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders," applicable to types of joists indicated.

C. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code--Steel" and AWS D1.3 "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

1. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.

D. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally authorized to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of joists that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."

B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

1.7 SEQUENCING

A. Deliver steel bearing plates and other devices to be built into concrete and masonry construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Steel: Comply with requirements of SJI's "Specifications" for chord and web section material.

B. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36 (ASTM A 36M).

C. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568, Property Class 4.6), carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.

1. Finish: Plain, noncoated.

D. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts, heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish: Plain, noncoated.

E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

2.2 PRIMERS

A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, Type I, red oxide; Federal Specification TT-P-636, red oxide; or manufacturer's standard shop primer meeting the performance requirements of either of these red-oxide primers.

B. Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, VOC-compliant, universal modified-alkyd primer with good resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, complying with performance requirements of FS TT-P-664.

C. VOC compliance certificate signed by manufacturers certifying compliance of their products with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction over volatile organic compounds (VOCs).

2.3 STEEL JOISTS

A. Manufacture joists according to SJI's "Specifications," with steel angle top and bottom chord members, of joist types, end arrangements, and top chord arrangements indicated.

B. Manufacture joists according to SJI's "Specifications," with steel angle top and bottom chord members, and as follows:

1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists.
2. Joist Type: Joist girders.
3. End Arrangement: Underslung.

4. End Arrangement: Underslung with bottom chord extensions.
5. Top Chord Arrangement: Parallel.

C. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

D. Provide holes in chord members where shown for securing other work to steel joists.

E. Extend top chords of joists with SJI Type S top chord extensions where required, complying with SJI's "Specifications" and load tables.

F. Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI Type R extended ends where required, complying with SJI's "Specifications" and load tables.

G. Camber K-series steel joists according to SJI's "Specifications."

H. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes when joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch in 12 inches (1:48).

## 2.4 JOIST ACCESSORIES

A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span.

B. Fabricate steel bearing plates with integral anchorages as indicated and finish as follows:

1. Finish: Shop prime paint.

C. Steel bearing plates with integral anchorages are specified in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications."

D. Supply ceiling extensions, either extended bottom chord elements or a separate extension unit of sufficient strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch (13 mm) of finished wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by the joist manufacturer to complete the joist installation.

## 2.5 SHOP PAINTING

A. Do not shop paint joists to receive fireproofing.

B. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories to be primed as follows:

1. Surface Preparation: Either hand tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.

C. Apply one shop coat of primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film thickness of not less than 1 mil (0.025 mm).

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of joists. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.

B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's recommendations, and the requirements of this Section.

1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
3. Install temporary bracing and bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure joists are stabilized during construction.

C. Field weld joists to supporting steel framework and steel bearing plates. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placing of joists.

1. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with the Research Council on Structural Connections' (RCSC) "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.

E. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords where terminating at walls or beams.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: A qualified independent testing agency employed and paid by Owner will perform field quality-control testing.

B. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

C. Testing and verification procedures will be required of high-strength bolted connections and field welds.

1. Bolted connections will be visually inspected.
2. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
3. Field welds will be visually inspected.

D. Correct deficiencies in Work that inspections and test reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.

E. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

## 3.4 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on exposed surfaces with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and the manufacturer's instructions.

B. Touch Up Painting: Following installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
2. Apply a compatible primer of the same type as the shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.

C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of shop-painted joists, accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel are included in Division 9 Section "Painting."

D. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05210

# SECTION 05310 - STEEL DECK

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Roof deck.
2. Acoustical roof deck.
3. Composite floor deck.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill and reinforcing steel.
2. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop-welded shear connectors.
3. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
4. Division 9 Section "Painting" for repair of painted deck.
5. Division 9 Section "Special Coatings" for repair of deck special coatings.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

C. Product Certificates: Signed by steel deck manufacturers certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

E. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products:

1. Mechanical fasteners.
2. Acoustical roof deck.

F. Research/Evaluation Reports: Evidence of steel deck's compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed steel deck similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

C. Source Limitations for Cellular Deck Floor Systems with Electrical Distribution: Obtain cellular floor deck units and compatible electrical components, such as preset inserts, activation kits, afterset inserts, service fittings, header ducts, and trench header ducts, from the same manufacturer. Electrical components are specified in Division 16 Section "Underfloor Raceway."

D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those steel deck units tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency.
2. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

F. AISI Specifications: Calculate structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

G. Electrical-Raceway Units: Provide UL-labeled cellular floor deck units complying with UL 209 and listed in UL's "Electrical Construction Equipment Directory" for use with standard header ducts and outlets for electrical distribution systems.

H. FM Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM and listed in FM's "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in topside ribs of acoustical deck with roofing installation specified in Division 7 Section - Adhered Single Ply Roofing to ensure protection of insulation strips against damage from effects of weather and other causes.

B. Coordinate layout and installation of trench headers, preset inserts, duct fittings, and other components specified in Division 16 Section "Underfloor Raceway" with installation of cellular metal floor deck.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Steel Deck:

a. BHP Steel Building Products USA Inc.
b. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
c. Epic Metals Corp.
d. Marlyn Steel Products, Inc.
e. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Div.
f. Roof Deck, Inc.
g. United Steel Deck, Inc.
h. Verco Manufacturing Co.
i. Wheeling Corrugating Co.; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corp.

2.2 ROOF DECK

A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 29, and the following:
1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), [G60 (Z180)] [G90 (Z275)] zinc coating.
2. Deck Profile: 1.5B20.
3. Span Condition: As indicated.
4. Side Laps: Overlapped.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL ROOF DECK

A. Acoustical Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 29, and the following:
1. Span Condition: As indicated.
2. Side Laps: Interlocking seam.
3. Acoustical Perforations: Deck units with manufacturer's standard perforated vertical webs.
4. Sound-Absorbing Insulation: Not required.

2.4 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

A. Composite Steel Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 29, the minimum section properties indicated, and the following:
1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G90 (Z275) zinc coating.
2. Profile Depth: As indicated.
3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 20 Gauge.

4. Span Condition: As indicated.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 (4.8 mm) minimum diameter.

D. Rib Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.

E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than 0.0359-inch (0.91-mm) design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

F. Steel Sheet Accessories: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile as recommended by SDI Publication No. 29 for overhang and slab depth. Unless noted otherwise.

H. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.

J. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) minimum diameter.

K. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- (76-mm-) wide flanges and sloped recessed pans of 1-1/2- inch (38-mm) minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.

L. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

M. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1010 through 1020 headed stud type, cold-finished carbon steel, AWS D1.1, Type B, with arc shields.

N. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

O. Repair Paint: Lead- and chromate-free rust-inhibitive primer complying with performance requirements of FS TT-P-664.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 29, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.

C. Locate decking bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.

1. Align cellular deck panels for entire length of cell runs and align cells at ends of abutting panels.

E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to decking.

G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of decking, and support of other work.

H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten roof deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter, but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) long, and as follows:

1. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch (19 mm), nominal.
2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 12 inches (305 mm) apart in the field of the roof and 6 inches (150 mm) apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions of FM Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28.
3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 12 inches and as follows:

1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger carbon-steel screws.
2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.

3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) long welds.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:

1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches (51 mm) minimum.

D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof decking and weld flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than 12 inches (305 mm) apart with at least 1 weld at each corner.

E. Miscellaneous Roof Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, cover plates, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.

F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

## 3.4 FLOOR DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten floor deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:

1. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch (19 mm), nominal.
2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 12 inches (305 mm) apart, but not more than 18 inches (457 mm) apart.
3. Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated.
4. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 36 inches (910 mm), and as follows:

1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger carbon-steel screws.
2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) long welds.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)], with end joints as follows:

1. End Joints: **Lapped**.

D. Shear Connectors: Weld shear connectors through deck to supporting frame according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions. Butt end joints of deck panels; do not overlap. Remove and discard arc shields after welding shear connectors.

E. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Floor Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of decking. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of floor deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Install piercing hanger tabs not more than 14 inches (355 mm) apart in both directions, within 9 inches (228 mm) of walls at ends, and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from walls at sides, unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.

B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

C. Shear connector stud welds will be inspected and tested according to AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:

1. Shear connector stud welds will be visually inspected.
2. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal less than a full 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector stud.
3. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connector studs if weld fracture occurs on shear connector studs already tested according to AWS D1.1.

D. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

E. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

F. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

## 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05310

# SECTION 05400 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Exterior load-bearing wall framing.
2. Interior load-bearing wall framing.
3. Exterior non-load-bearing curtain-wall framing.
4. Gypsum sheathing and air-infiltration barriers.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
2. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for subflooring, wall sheathing, or roof sheathing using wood-based structural-use panels, particleboard, fibrous-felted board, and foam-plastic sheathing.
3. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.
4. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Uncoated Steel Thickness: Minimum uncoated thickness of cold-formed framing delivered to the Project site shall be not less than 95 percent of the thickness used in the cold-formed framing design. Lesser thicknesses shall be permitted at bends due to cold forming.

B. Producer: Entity that produces steel sheet coil fabricated into cold-formed members.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Design Loads: As indicated.

2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:

a. Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of **1/360** of the wall height.
b. Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of **1/360** of the wall height.

c. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Curtain-Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of **1/360** of the wall height.
d. Floor Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of **1/360** of the span.
e. Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of **1/240** of the span.
f. Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of **1/240** of the span.

3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:

a. Upward and downward movement of 3/4 inch or l/360, whichever is greater.

B. Design exterior non-load-bearing curtain-wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

C. Design roof trusses according to AISI's "Design Guide for Cold-Formed Steel Trusses."

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining Work.

1. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Mill certificates signed by steel sheet producer or test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements.

D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

F. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products:

1. Expansion anchors.
2. Power-actuated anchors.
3. Mechanical fasteners.
4. Vertical deflection clips.
5. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.

G. Research/Evaluation Reports: Evidence of cold-formed metal framing's compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed cold-formed metal framing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a qualified professional engineer to prepare design calculations, Shop Drawings, and other structural data.

C. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

D. Mill certificates signed by steel sheet producer or test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including uncoated steel thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and galvanized-coating thickness.

E. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

F. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

G. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where metal framing is part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly, provide framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by GA File Numbers in GA-600, "Fire Resistance Design Manual," or by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency.

H. AISI Specifications: Comply with AISI's "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" or "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and the following for calculating structural characteristics of cold-formed metal framing.

1. CCFSS Technical Bulletin: "AISI Specification Provisions for Screw Connections."

I. Comply with HUD's "Prescriptive Method for Residential Cold-Formed Steel Framing."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Allied American Studco, Inc.
2. Angeles Metal Systems.
3. California Expanded Metal Products Co.
4. California Metal Systems, Inc.
5. Clark Steel Framing Industries.
6. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.
7. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
8. Dale Industries, Inc.
9. Design Shapes in Steel.
10. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
11. Knorr Steel Framing Systems.
12. MarinoWare; Div. of Ware Industries, Inc.
13. Scafco Corp.
14. Steel Construction Systems.
15. Steel Developers, LLC.
16. Steeler, Inc.
17. Studco of Hawaii, Inc.
18. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
19. Unimast, Inc.
20. United Metal Products, Inc.
21. Western Metal Lath.
22. **Pre-Approved Equal**

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
2. Coating: G90 (Z275).

B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 570/A 570M, hot rolled or ASTM A 611, cold rolled; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's baked-on, lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer complying with performance requirements in FS TT-P-664, of grade as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.

C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, structural steel, 55 percent aluminum-zinc-alloy coated, of grade and coating as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
2. Coating: AZ60 (AZ180).

2.3 NON-LOAD-BEARING CURTAIN-WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, complying with ASTM C 955, and as follows:

1. Minimum Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 14 Gauge.
2. Flange Width: 1-1/2 inches.

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, complying with ASTM C 955, and as follows:

1. Minimum Uncoated-Steel Thickness: Matching steel studs.
2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.

C. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads, and as follows:.

1. Minimum Uncoated-Steel Thickness: Match steel studs.
2. Flange Width: 2"

D. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure.

## 2.4 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories of the same material and finish used for framing members, with a minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa).

B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:

1. Supplementary framing.
2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
3. Web stiffeners.
4. End clips.
5. Foundation clips.
6. Gusset plates.
7. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
8. Joist hangers and end closures.
9. Hole reinforcing plates.
10. Backer plates.

## 2.5 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123.

B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

E. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-threading steel drill screws.

1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, ASTM A 780.

B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to manufacturer's written recommendations and requirements in this Section.

1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
4. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding or screw fastening, as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

    a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.

5. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

C. Grout bearing surfaces uniform and level to ensure full contact of bearing flanges or track webs on supporting concrete or masonry construction.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to ASTM C 1007, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.

1. Bolt or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to manufacturer's written recommendations and requirements in this Section.

1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding or screw fastening, as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

    a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.

E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths, unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.

F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.

H. Install insulation in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.

I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.

J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

## 3.4 NON-LOAD-BEARING CURTAIN-WALL INSTALLATION

A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.

B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches or as indicated.

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.

1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
3. Connect vertical deflection clips to infill studs and anchor to primary building structure.

E. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable curtain-wall-framing system.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.

B. Field and shop welds will be subject to inspection and testing.

C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

D. Remove and replace Work that does not comply with specified requirements.

E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

## 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Touchup Painting: Wire brush, clean, and paint scarred areas, welds, and rust spots on fabricated and installed prime-painted, cold-formed metal framing. Paint framing surfaces with same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces.

C. Protect paper-surfaced gypsum sheathing that will be exposed to weather for more than 30 days by covering exposed exterior surface of sheathing with a securely fastened air-infiltration barrier. Apply covering immediately after sheathing is installed.

D. Protect cutouts, corners, and joints in sheathing by filling with a flexible sealant or by applying tape recommended by sheathing manufacturer at time sheathing is applied.

E. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05400

# SECTION 05500 - METAL FABRICATIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Steel ladders.
2. Loose bearing and leveling plates.
3. Loose steel lintels.
4. Shelf angles.
5. Support angles for elevator door sills.
6. Elevator machine beams.
7. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
8. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
9. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
10. Miscellaneous metal trim.
11. Structural-steel door frames.
12. Metal floor plate and supports.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for structural-steel framing system components.
2. Division 5 Section "Metal Stairs" for metal-framed stairs with metal pan, metal plate, or grating treads.
3. Division 5 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings" for metal pipe and tube handrails and railings.
4. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for metal framing anchors and other rough hardware.
5. Division 14 Section "Elevators" for elevator pit ladders.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Paint products.
2. Grout.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication and erection of each metal fabrication indicated. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

1. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.

C. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel sheet certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing metal fabrications similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
4. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.

## 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Where metal fabrications are indicated to fit walls and other construction, verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal fabrications without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions. Allow for trimming and fitting.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.

D. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.

E. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.

F. Steel Tubing: Cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500.

G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.

H. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47, Grade 32510 (ASTM A 47M, Grade 22010).

I. Gray-Iron Castings: ASTM A 48, Class 30 (ASTM A 48M, Class 200), unless another class is indicated or required by structural loads.

J. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type indicated below, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials capable of sustaining, without failure, the load imposed within a safety factor of 4, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47 (ASTM A 47M) malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153/A 153M.

K. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

2.3 ALUMINUM

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy 6063-T6.

B. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, alloy 6061-T6.

2.4 PAINT

A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 9 Section "Painting."

B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.

C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt mastic complying with SSPC-Paint 12, except containing no asbestos fibers, or cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.5 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide Type 304 or 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.

C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.

D. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).

E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).

F. Wood Screws: Flat head, carbon steel, ASME B18.6.1.

G. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).

H. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, carbon steel, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).

I. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
2. Material: Alloy Group 1 or 2 stainless-steel bolts complying with ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M) and nuts complying with ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

J. Toggle Bolts: FS FF-B-588, tumble-wing type, class and style as needed.

## 2.6 GROUT

A. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.

B. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

## 2.7 CONCRETE FILL

A. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4000 psi (20 MPa), unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.8 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs.

C. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm), unless otherwise indicated. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

D. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

E. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Fabricate and space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

G. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water, or provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

H. Allow for thermal movement resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening up of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

I. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges.

J. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed traffic surfaces.

K. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Use exposed fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

## 2.9 STEEL LADDERS

A. General: Fabricate ladders for locations shown, with dimensions, spacings, details, and anchorages as indicated.

1. Comply with ANSI A14.3, unless otherwise indicated.
2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1.

B. Siderails: Continuous, as show on drawings

C. Bar Rungs: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter steel bars, spaced 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.

D. Fit rungs in centerline of side rails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.

E. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets. Size brackets to support design loads specified in ANSI A14.3.

F. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.

## 2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

B. Galvanize plates after fabrication.

## 2.11 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

A. Fabricate loose structural-steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated.

B. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.

C. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to one-twelfth of clear span, but not less than 8 inches (200 mm), unless otherwise indicated.

D. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

## 2.12 SHELF ANGLES

A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from ends and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete. Align expansion joints in angles with indicated control and expansion joints in cavity-wall exterior wythe.

C. Galvanize shelf angles to be installed in exterior walls.

D. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

## 2.13 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports indicated and as necessary to complete the Work.

B. Fabricate units from structural-steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction retained by framing and supports. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware, hangers, and similar items.

1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.

2. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 8 inches (200 mm) long at 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
3. Furnish inserts if units must be installed after concrete is placed.

C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

## 2.14 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from structural-steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints, and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.

B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work. Provide anchors, welded to trim, for embedding in concrete or masonry construction, spaced not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from each end, 6 inches (150 mm) from corners, and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

C. Galvanize miscellaneous steel trim at all exterior locations.

## 2.15 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

## 2.16 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:

1. ASTM A 123, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface-preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications:

1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
2. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## 2.17 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

A. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.

B. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.

C. Bright, Directional Polish: No. 4 finish.

D. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

2.18 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

B. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).

C. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 607.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal fabrications to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through-bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors.

B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

C. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

E. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

## 3.2 SETTING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.

B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.

1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

## 3.3 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings, if any.

B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.

C. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.

1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated at girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified above for setting and grouting bearing and leveling plates.

D. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified above for setting and grouting bearing and leveling plates.

1. Do not grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders until girders are installed and leveled.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05500

# SECTION 05511 - METAL STAIRS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings" for pipe and tube handrails and railings.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide metal stairs capable of withstanding the following structural loads without exceeding the allowable design working stress of the materials involved, including anchors and connections. Apply each load to produce the maximum stress in each component of metal stairs.

1. Treads and Platforms of Metal Stairs: Capable of withstanding a uniform load of 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m) or a concentrated load of 300 lbf (1.33 kN) on an area of 4 sq. in. (25.8 sq. cm), whichever produces the greater stress.
2. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from loads specified above in addition to stresses resulting from railing system loads.
3. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/360 or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), whichever is less.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For metal stairs and the following:

1. Prefilled metal-pan stair treads.
2. Grout.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal stairs. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal stairs and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.

1. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

D. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Arrange for metal stairs specified in this Section to be fabricated and installed by the same firm.

B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of metal stairs (including handrails and railing systems) that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing metal stairs similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

## 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Preassembled Stairs:

a. Alfab, Inc.
b. American Metal Works, Inc.
c. American Stair Corp., Inc.
d. Florida Stairs & Rails, Inc.
e. National Stair & Rail, Inc.
f. Sharon Companies, Ltd. (The).

2.2 FERROUS METALS

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide metal free from pitting, seam marks, roller marks, and other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units. Do not use steel sheet with variations in flatness exceeding those permitted by referenced standards for stretcher-leveled sheet.

B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

C. Steel Tubing: Cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500.

D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.

E. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.

F. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: Commercial quality, complying with ASTM A 366/A 366M; or structural quality, complying with ASTM A 611, Grade A, unless another grade is required by design loads.

G. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.

C. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).

D. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).

E. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, carbon steel, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).

F. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
2. Material: Alloy Group 1 or 2 stainless-steel bolts complying with ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M) and nuts complying with ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

2.4 PAINT

A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 9 Section "Painting."

2.5 GROUT

A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

## 2.6 CONCRETE FILL AND REINFORCING MATERIALS

A. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, ready-mixed concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa), unless higher strengths are indicated.

B. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm)--W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, handrails, railings, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.

B. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.

1. Join components by welding, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

C. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for class of stair designated, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

1. Architectural class, where indicated.
2. Commercial class, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Service class, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Industrial class, where indicated.

D. Shop Assembly: Preassemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

E. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges. Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

F. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm), unless otherwise indicated. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

G. Weld connections to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously, unless otherwise indicated.
5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

## 2.8 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

A. Stair Framing: Fabricate stringers of structural-steel channels, plates, or a combination of both, as indicated. Provide closures for exposed ends of stringers. Construct platforms of structural-steel framing members as indicated. Weld headers to stringers; weld framing members to stringers and headers. If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.

B. Formed-Metal Risers, Treads: Form to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness necessary to support indicated loads, but not less than 0.0966 inch (2.5 mm).

1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated hot-rolled steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Directly weld risers and treads to stringers; locate welds on underside of stairs.
3. Provide platforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as treads. Weld platforms to platform framing.
4. Finish tread and platform surfaces with manufacturer's standard epoxy-bonded abrasive finish. Provide material with coefficient of friction of 0.6 or higher when tested according to ASTM C 1028.

## 2.9 FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM'S "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Finish metal stairs after assembly.

C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface-preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed products:
1. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.

B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free from rack.

C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

E. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

## 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."

END OF SECTION 05511

# SECTION 05521 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Steel pipe and tube handrails and railings.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Metal Stairs" for steel pipe handrails and railings included with metal stairs.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: In engineering handrails and railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of handrail and railing materials based on the following:

1. Structural Steel: AISC S335, "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design with Commentary."
2. Cold-Formed Structural Steel: AISI SG-673, Part I, "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

B. Structural Performance of Handrails and Railings: Provide handrails and railings capable of withstanding structural loads required by ASCE 7 without exceeding allowable design working stresses of materials for handrails, railings, anchors, and connections.

C. Structural Performance of Handrails and Railings: Provide handrails and railings capable of withstanding the following structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stresses of materials for handrails, railings, anchors, and connections:

1. Top Rail of Guards: Capable of withstanding the following loads applied as indicated:

a. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (890 N) applied at any point and in any direction.

2. Handrails Not Serving As Top Rails: Capable of withstanding the following loads applied as indicated:

a. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (890 N) applied at any point and in any direction.

3. Infill Area of Guards: Capable of withstanding a horizontal concentrated load of 200 lbf (890 N) applied to 1 sq. ft. (0.09 sq. m) at any point in system, including panels, intermediate rails, balusters, or other elements composing infill area.

a. Load above need not be assumed to act concurrently with loads on top rails in determining stress on guard.

D. Thermal Movements: Provide handrails and railings that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected handrails and railings.
2. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation of handrails and railings. Include plans, elevations, sections, component details, and attachments to other Work.

1. For installed handrails and railings indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of handrails and railings that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of handrail and railing through one source from a single manufacturer.

## 1.6 STORAGE

A. Store handrails and railings in a dry, well-ventilated, weathertight place.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify handrail and railing dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating handrails and railings without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for handrails and railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.9 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule installation so handrails and railings are mounted only on completed walls. Do not support temporarily by any means that does not satisfy structural performance requirements.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Steel Pipe and Tube Railings:

a. Humane Equipment Co.
b. Wagner: R & B Wagner, Inc.

## 2.2 METALS

A. General: Provide metal free from pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units.

B. Steel and Iron: Provide steel and iron in the form indicated, complying with the following requirements:

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53; finish, type, and weight class as follows:

a. Black finish, unless otherwise indicated.
b. Galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
c. Type F, or Type S, Grade A, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.

2. Steel Tubing: Cold-formed steel tubing, ASTM A 500, Grade A, unless another grade is required by structural loads.
3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
4. Iron Castings: Malleable iron complying with ASTM A 47, Grade 32510 (ASTM A 47M, Grade 22010).

C. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 WELDING MATERIALS, FASTENERS, AND ANCHORS

A. Welding Electrodes and Filler Metal: Provide type and alloy of filler metal and electrodes as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.

## 2.4 PAINT

A. Shop Primers: Provide primers to comply with applicable requirements in Division 9 Section "Painting."

## 2.5 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

B. Interior Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Use for interior applications only.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate handrails and railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.

B. Assemble handrails and railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

C. Form changes in direction of railing members as follows:

1. By radius bends of radius indicated.
2. By mitering at elbow bends.

D. Form simple and compound curves by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required; maintain cylindrical cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of handrail and railing components.

E. Welded Connections: Fabricate handrails and railings for connecting members by welding. Cope components at perpendicular and skew connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld connections continuously to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.

F. For railing posts set in concrete, provide preset sleeves of steel not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch (12 mm) greater than outside dimensions of post, and steel plate forming bottom closure.

G. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm), unless otherwise indicated. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the Work.

H. Close exposed ends of handrail and railing members with prefabricated end fittings.

I. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails, unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns, unless clearance between end of railing and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.

## 2.7 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.8 STEEL FINISHES

A. For nongalvanized steel handrails and railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean handrails and railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic-phosphate process.

C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface-preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed handrails and railings:

1. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 7, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."

D. Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of handrail and railing components, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

1. Stripe paint edges, corners, crevices, bolts, and welds.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.

B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install handrails and railings. Set handrails and railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free from rack.

1. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/32 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
2. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/8 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).

C. Adjust handrails and railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at interval indicated, but not less than that required by structural loads.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing handrails and railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

A. Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with the following anchoring material, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions:

B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches (125 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with the following anchoring material, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.

C. Leave anchorage joint exposed; wipe off surplus anchoring material;

3.5 CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes of handrails and railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at the time of Substantial Completion.

B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05521

# SECTION 06105 - MISCELLANEOUS CARPENTRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
   2. Wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
   3. Sheathing.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

   1. Division 6 Section "Finish Carpentry" for nonstructural carpentry items exposed to view and not specified in another Section.
   2. Division 6 Section "Exterior Architectural Woodwork" for exterior woodwork.
   3. Division 6 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for interior woodwork not specified in this Section.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Wood treatment data as follows, including chemical treatment manufacturer's instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated materials:

   1. For each type of preservative-treated wood product, include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standards.
   2. For waterborne-treated products, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels indicated before shipment to Project site.

C. Material test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance of fire-retardant-treated wood products with performance requirements indicated.

D. Warranty of chemical treatment manufacturer for each type of treatment.

### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Keep materials under cover and dry. Protect from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

1. For lumber and plywood pressure treated with waterborne chemicals, place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMBER, GENERAL

A. Lumber Standards: Comply with DOC PS 20, "American Softwood Lumber Standard," and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by American Lumber Standards Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review.

B. Inspection Agencies: Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:

1. NELMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
2. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority (Canadian).
3. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service.
4. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
5. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
6. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

C. Grade Stamps: Provide lumber with each piece factory marked with grade stamp of inspection agency evidencing compliance with grading rule requirements and identifying grading agency, grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.

1. For exposed lumber, furnish pieces with grade stamps applied to ends or back of each piece.

D. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.

1. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where lumber or plywood is indicated as preservative treated or is specified to be treated, comply with applicable requirements of AWPA C2 (lumber) and AWPA C9 (plywood). Mark each treated item with the Quality Mark Requirements of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.

1. Do not use chemicals containing chromium or arsenic.

B. Pressure treat aboveground items with waterborne preservatives to a minimum retention of 0.25 lb/cu. ft. (4.0 kg/cu. m). After treatment, kiln-dry lumber and plywood to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent, respectively. Treat indicated items and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood framing members less than 18 inches (460 mm) above grade.

4. Wood floor plates installed over concrete slabs directly in contact with earth.

C. Pressure treat wood members in contact with ground or freshwater with waterborne preservatives to a minimum retention of 0.40 lb/cu. ft. (6.4 kg/cu. m).

2.3 DIMENSION LUMBER

A. General: Provide dimension lumber of grades indicated according to the ALSC National Grading Rule (NGR) provisions of the inspection agency indicated.

B. Other Framing: Provide the following grades and species:
1. Grade: Construction or No. 2.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including rooftop equipment curbs and support bases, cant strips, bucks, nailers, blocking, furring, grounds, stripping, and similar members.

B. Fabricate miscellaneous lumber from dimension lumber of sizes indicated and into shapes shown.

C. Moisture Content: 19 percent maximum for lumber items are not specified to receive wood preservative treatment.

D. Grade: For dimension lumber sizes, provide No. 3 or Standard grade lumber per ALSC's NGRs of any species. For board-size lumber, provide No. 3 Common grade per NELMA, NLGA, or WWPA; No. 2 grade per SPIB; or Standard grade per NLGA, WCLIB or WWPA of any species.

2.5 WOOD-BASED STRUCTURAL-USE PANELS

A. Structural-Use Panel Standards: Provide either all-veneer, mat-formed, or composite panels complying with DOC PS 2, "Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels," unless otherwise indicated. Provide plywood panels complying with DOC PS 1, "U.S. Product Standard for Construction and Industrial Plywood," where plywood is indicated.

B. Trademark: Factory mark structural-use panels with APA trademark evidencing compliance with grade requirements.

1. Span Ratings: Provide panels with span ratings required to meet "Code Plus" provisions of APA Form No. E30, "APA Design/Construction Guide: Residential & Commercial."

C. Miscellaneous Concealed Plywood: C-C Plugged Exterior, thickness as indicated but not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

D. Miscellaneous Concealed Panels: APA-rated sheathing, Exposure 1, span rating to suit framing in each location.

E. Plywood Backing Panels: For mounting electrical or telephone equipment, provide fire-retardant-treated plywood panels with grade, C-D Plugged Exposure 1, in thickness indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, not less than 15/32 inch (11.9 mm) thick.

2.6 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.

1. Where miscellaneous carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with a hot-dip zinc coating per ASTM A 153 or of Type 304 stainless steel.

B. Power-Driven Fasteners: CABO NER-272.

2.7 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

A. General: Provide galvanized steel framing anchors of structural capacity, type, and size indicated and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Discard units of material with defects that impair quality of carpentry and that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

B. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted.

C. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as required for accurate fit. Correlate location of furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to allow attachment of other construction.

D. Apply field treatment complying with AWPA M4 to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber and plywood.

E. Securely attach carpentry work as indicated and according to applicable codes and recognized standards.

F. Use fasteners of appropriate type and length. Predrill members when necessary to avoid splitting wood.

3.2 WOOD GROUNDS, NAILERS, BLOCKING, AND SLEEPERS

A. Install where shown and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Cut and shape to required size. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 WOOD FURRING

A. Install plumb and level with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

B. Furring to Receive Plywood Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63-mm actual-) size furring at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c., horizontally and vertically. Select furring with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

C. Furring to Receive Plywood Paneling: Install 19-by-63-mm actual-size furring at 600 mm o.c., horizontally and vertically. Select furring with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

D. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal- (19-by-38-mm actual-) size furring at 16 inches (406 mm) o.c., vertically.

## 3.4 PARTICLEBOARD UNDERLAYMENT

A. Install to comply with the written instructions of the National Particleboard Association (NPA) for type of subfloor indicated. Fill and sand gouges, gaps, and chipped edges. Sand uneven joints flush.

## 3.5 HARDBOARD UNDERLAYMENT

A. Comply with AHA's "Application Instructions for Basic Hardboard Products" and hardboard manufacturer's written instructions for preparing and applying hardboard underlayment.

END OF SECTION 06105

# SECTION 06200 - FINISH CARPENTRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Railings.
2. Plywood paneling.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view.
2. Division 6 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for interior woodwork not specified in this Section.
3. Division 9 Section "Painting" for priming and back priming of finish carpentry.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each type of factory-fabricated product and process specified, including details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, textures, and colors.

C. Wood treatment data as follows, including chemical treatment manufacturer's instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material:

1. For each type of preservative-treated wood product include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standards.
2. For water-borne-treated products include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels indicated before shipment to Project site.

D. Samples for initial selection of the following in the form of manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of material indicated.

1. Each type of paneling specified.
2. Each type of siding specified.

E. Samples for verification of the following:

1. Lumber and panel products with nonfactory-applied finish, 50 sq. in. (300 sq. cm) for lumber and 8 by 10 inches (203 by 250 mm) for panels for each species and cut, with one-half of exposed surface finished.

F. Material test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance of fire-retardant-treated wood products with requirements indicated.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed finish carpentry similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Delivery and Storage: Keep materials under cover and dry. Protect against exposure to weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

B. Do not deliver interior finish carpentry until environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas. If finish carpentry must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels through the remainder of construction period.

B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installing exterior finish carpentry only when existing and forecasted weather conditions will permit work to be performed according to manufacturer's recommendations and warranty requirements and at least one coat of specified finish to be applied without exposure to rain, snow, or dampness.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hardwood Veneer Plywood Paneling:

   a. Abitibi-Price Corp.; Building Products Division.
   b. Champion International Corp.
   c. Chesapeake Hardwood Products, Inc.
   d. Georgia-Pacific Corp.
   e. Ply-Gem Manufacturing.
   f. Weyerhaeuser Co.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Lumber Standards: Comply with DOC PS 20, "American Softwood Lumber Standard," for lumber and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.

B. Inspection Agencies: Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:

1. NELMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
2. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association.
3. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
4. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
5. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

C. Grade Stamps: Provide lumber with each piece factory marked with grade stamp of inspection agency evidencing compliance with grading rule requirements and identifying grading agency, grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.

1. For exposed lumber, furnish pieces with grade stamps applied to ends or back of each piece, or omit grade stamps entirely and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by inspection agency.

D. Softwood Plywood: Comply with DOC PS 1, "U.S. Product Standard for Construction and Industrial Plywood."

E. Medium-Density Fiberboard: Product made without formaldehyde and complying with ANSI A208.2, Product Class MD.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Medite II" by Medite Corp.

F. Particleboard: No formaldehyde used for formulation of particle board products.

2.3 STAIRS AND RAILINGS

A. Interior Railings: Clear, kiln-dried railing stock of pattern indicated, either solid or laminated.

1. Species: White Birch

2.4 PANELING

A. Hardwood Veneer Plywood Paneling: Manufacturer's stock hardwood plywood panels complying with applicable requirements of HPVA HP-1.

1. Face Veneer Species: White Birch
2. Backing Veneer Species: Any hardwood compatible with face species.
3. Construction: Veneer core.
4. Thickness: As detailed
5. Panel Size: 48 by 96 inches (1219 by 2438 mm).
6. Glue Bond: Type II (interior).
7. Finish: Match Architect's samples.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.

1. Where finish carpentry materials are exposed in areas of high humidity, provide fasteners and anchorages with hot-dip galvanized coating complying with ASTM A 153.

B. Paneling Adhesives: Comply with paneling manufacturer's recommendations for adhesives.

C. Glue: Aliphatic- or phenolic-resin wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of specified inspection agencies and manufacturer's recommendations for moisture content of finish carpentry on relative humidity conditions existing during time of fabrication and in installation areas.

B. Fabricate finish carpentry to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.

1. Back out or kerf backs of the following members, except members with ends exposed in finished work:
   a. Wood board paneling.

2. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch (25 mm) in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch (1.5-mm) radius.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting installation and performance of finish carpentry. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

B. Condition finish carpentry to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas before installation, for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use finish carpentry materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.

1. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.

B. Install finish carpentry plumb, level, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where required for alignment.

1. Scribe and cut finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Countersink nails, fill surface flush, and sand where face nailing is unavoidable.
3. Install to tolerance of 1/16 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm) for plumb and level. Install adjoining finish carpentry with 1/32-inch (0.8-mm) maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch (1.5-mm) maximum offset for reveal installation.
4. Coordinate finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to standing and running trim and rails. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate exposed surfaces of trim and rails.

C. Finish according to specified requirements.

D. Refer to Division 9 Sections for final finishing of finish carpentry.

## 3.4 PANELING INSTALLATION

A. Plywood Paneling: Select and arrange panels on each wall for best match of adjacent panels where grain character or color variations are noticeable. Install with uniform tight joints between panels.

1. Attach panels to supports with manufacturer's recommended panel adhesive and fasteners. Space fasteners as recommended by panel manufacturer.
2. Conceal fasteners to greatest practical extent.
3. Arrange panels with grooves and joints over supports, and fasten to supports with nails of type and at spacing recommended by panel manufacturer. Use fasteners with prefinished heads matching groove color.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Repair damaged or defective finish carpentry where possible to eliminate functional or visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace finish carpentry. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

## 3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure finish carpentry is without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 06200

# SECTION 06402 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Wood cabinets with plastic laminate.
   2. Plastic-laminate countertops.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 8 Section "Flush Wood Doors."

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items, unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For medium-density fiberboard, plywood, high-pressure decorative laminate, adhesive for bonding plastic laminate, solid-surfacing material, cabinet hardware and accessories, handrail brackets, and finishing materials and processes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

   1. Show details full size.
   2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
   3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for computer cord access, telephone and other cord access points and other items installed in architectural woodwork. Coordinate with Owner prior to completion of work.
   4. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of material indicated.

   1. Shop-applied finishes.
   2. Plastic laminates.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following:

1. Plastic-laminate-clad panel products, 6 by 6 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish.
2. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type and finish.

E. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of woodwork certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

F. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed architectural woodwork similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing architectural woodwork similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

C. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production and installation of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers including wood doors where veneer matching includes door faces.

D. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork, construction, finishes, and other requirements.

1. Provide AWI certification labels or compliance certificate indicating that woodwork complies with requirements of grades specified.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 17 and 50 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

C. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

B. Hardware Coordination: Distribute copies of approved hardware schedule specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)" to fabricator of architectural woodwork; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 WOODWORK FABRICATORS

A. Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide interior architectural woodwork by a firm that has completed business activities within the local area for a period of not less than five years. Firm must have completed work to match type and scope of this project. At time of product submissions submit past work experience for consideration of Architect and Owner.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of the AWI quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Wood Products: Comply with the following:

1. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
2. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD
3. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
4. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Medium Density Overlay.
5. Hardwood Plywood and Face Veneers: HPVA HP-1.

C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated, or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
1. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide high-pressure decorative laminates by one of the following:

a. Formica Corporation.
b. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.

c. Pionite

D. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Contact cement. Use only water based cement varieties to limit VOC.

## 2.3 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets, except for items specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)."

B. Hardware Standard: Comply with BHMA A156.9 for items indicated by referencing BHMA numbers or items referenced to this standard.

C. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing where noted as such.

D. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, 5 inches (100 mm) long, 5/16 inches (8 mm) in diameter.

E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04102; with shelf brackets, B04112.

F. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.

G. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.

H. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013.

I. Drawer Slides: Side-mounted, full-extension, zinc-plated steel drawer slides with steel ball bearings, BHMA A156.9, B05091, and rated for the following loads:

1. Box Drawer Slides: 100 lbf. Indicate on submission that the submitted slides will meet this requirement.

J. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.

K. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

## 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:

1. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick or Less: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
2. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members and Rails: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).

B. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible, before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
1. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

C. Shop cut openings, to maximum extent possible, to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.

## 2.6 PLASTIC-LAMINATE CABINETS

A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 400 requirements for laminate cabinets.

B. Grade: Custom.

C. WIC Construction Style: Style A, Frameless.

D. WIC Construction Type: Type I, multiple self-supporting units rigidly joined together.

E. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Reveal overlay.

F. Reveal Dimension: 1/8 inch.

G. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following requirements:

1. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: **HGS**.
2. Postformed Surfaces: **HGP**.
3. Vertical Surfaces: **HGS**

H. Edges: Plastic Laminate, match drawer faces

I. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces: Provide surface materials indicated below:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Thermoset decorative overlay or as indicated on drawings.
2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermoset decorative overlay or as indicated on drawings.
3. Drawer Bottoms: Thermoset decorative overlay or as indicated on drawings.

J. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:

a. Plastic Laminate at cabinets:

K. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

## 2.7 PLASTIC-LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS

A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 400 requirements for high-pressure decorative laminate countertops.

B. Grade: Custom.

C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate Grade: HGP.

D. Edge Treatment: As indicated.

E. Core Material: Medium-density fiberboard – No urea-formaldahydes permitted. Provide submission information for this material and plywood.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas before installation.

B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Quality Standard: Install woodwork to comply with AWI Section 1700 for the same grade specified in Part 2 of this Section for type of woodwork involved.

B. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

C. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, and refinish cut surfaces and repair damaged finish at cuts.

D. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.

E. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.

1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
2. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch (25-mm) penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips. No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

F. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.

1. Align adjacent solid-surfacing-material countertops and form seams to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations using adhesive in color to match countertop. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
2. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
3. Calk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

G. Complete the finishing work specified in this Section to extent not completed at shop or before installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats were applied in shop.

H. Refer to Division 9 Sections for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.

C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 06402

# SECTION 07210 - BUILDING INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Foundation wall insulation (supporting backfill).
   2. Cavity wall insulation.
   3. Concealed building insulation.
   4. Loose-fill building insulation.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
   1. Division 7 Section "Firestopping" for safing insulation.
   2. Division 7 Section "Single-Ply Membrane Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
   3. Division 9 Section indicated below for insulation installed as part of metal-framed wall and partition assemblies:
      a. "Gypsum Board Assemblies."
      b. "Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assemblies."

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each type of insulation product specified.

C. Samples for verification in full-size units of each type of exposed insulation indicated for each color specified.

D. Product test reports from and based on tests performed by a qualified independent testing agency evidencing compliance of insulation products with specified requirements including those for thermal resistance, fire-test-response characteristics, water-vapor transmission, water absorption, and other properties, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

E. Research or evaluation reports of the model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that evidence compliance of foam-plastic insulations with building code in effect for Project.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single-Source Responsibility for Insulation Products: Obtain each type of building insulation from a single source with resources to provide products complying with requirements indicated without delaying the Work.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated on Drawings or specified elsewhere in this Section as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

B. Protect plastic insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide insulation products by one of the following:

1. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation:

a. Amoco Foam Products Company.
b. DiversiFoam Products.
c. Dow Chemical Co.
d. UC Industries, Inc.; Owens-Corning Co.

2. Glass-Fiber Insulation:

a. CertainTeed Corporation.
b. Knauf Fiber Glass GmbH.
c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corporation.
d. Schuller International, Inc.

## 2.2 INSULATING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide insulating materials that comply with requirements and with referenced standards.

1. Preformed Units: Sizes to fit applications indicated; selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths.

B. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: Rigid, cellular polystyrene thermal insulation formed from polystyrene base resin by an extrusion process using hydrochlorofluorocarbons as blowing agent to comply with ASTM C 578 for type and with other requirements indicated below:

1. Type IV, 1.60-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) minimum density, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 75 and 450, respectively.
3. **Recycled Content: Not less than 50 percent blend of postconsumer and recovered polystyrene resins. Indicate this specifically within submissions to architect.**
4. Note clips to be installed at curtain wall to prevent contact with exterior panel surface.

C. Unfaced, Flexible Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: Thermal insulation combining glass fibers with thermosetting resin binders to comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA; or with ASTM C 553, Types I, II, and III; and with other requirements indicated below:

1. Nominal Density: Not less than 1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m) nor more than 1.65 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m).
2. Thermal Resistivity: 4.13 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (28.6 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively.

D. Faced Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Thermal insulation combining mineral fibers of type described below with thermosetting resins to comply with ASTM C 665, Type III, Class A (blankets with reflective vapor-retarder membrane facing and flame spread of 25 or less); with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face.

1. Mineral-Fiber Type: Fibers manufactured from glass.

## 2.3 SAFING INSULATION AND ACCESSORIES

A. Slag-Wool-Fiber Board Safing Insulation: Semirigid boards designed for use as fire stop at openings between edge of slab and exterior wall panels, produced by combining slag-wool fibers with thermosetting resin binders to comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA and IB; nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m); passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).

B. Calking Compound: Material approved by manufacturer of safing insulation for sealing joint between foil backing of safing insulation and edge of concrete floor slab against penetration of smoke.

C. Safing Clips: Galvanized steel safing clips approved by manufacturer of safing insulation for holding safing insulation in place.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

A. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

B. Protection Board: Premolded, semirigid asphalt/fiber composition board, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, formed under heat and pressure, standard sizes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and to determine if other conditions affecting performance of insulation are satisfactory. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulations or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or that interfere with insulation attachment.

B. Close off openings in cavities receiving poured-in-place insulation to prevent escape of insulation. Provide bronze or stainless-steel screens (inside) where openings must be maintained for drainage or ventilation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.

B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, unsoiled, and has not been exposed at any time to ice and snow.

C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

D. Apply single layer of insulation to produce thickness indicated.

E. Apply single layer of insulation to produce thickness indicated, unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF PERIMETER AND UNDER-SLAB INSULATION

A. On vertical surfaces, set units in adhesive applied according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesive recommended by insulation manufacturer.

B. Protect below-grade insulation on vertical surfaces from damage during backfilling by applying protection board. Set in adhesive according to written instructions of insulation manufacturer.

C. Protect top surface of horizontal insulation from damage during concrete work by applying protection board.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

B. Seal joints between closed-cell (nonbreathing) insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.

C. Install mineral-fiber blankets in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:

1. Use blanket widths and lengths that fill cavities formed by framing members. Where more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
2. Place blankets in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.

D. Apply self-supported, spray-applied, cellulosic insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make it even with studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

E. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m).

## 3.6 INSTALLATION OF SAFING INSULATION

A. Install safing insulation to fill gap between edge of concrete floor slab and back of exterior spandrel panels on safing clips spaced as needed to support insulation, but not further apart than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. Cut safing insulation wider than gap to be filled to ensure compression fit and seal joint between insulation and edge of slab with calking approved by safing insulation manufacturer for this purpose. Leave no voids in completed installation.

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. General: Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07210

# SECTION 07430 - COMPOSITE PANELS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes: Composite panels, including:

1. High Performance Rout and Return Dry System with PE Core Alucobond®

B. Related Sections: Section(s) related to this section include but are not limited to:

1. Structural Framing: Division 5 Metals Section
2. Wood Blocking: Division 6 Carpentry Section
3. Flashing and Sheet Metal: Division 7 Flashing Section
4. Sealants (not specified in this section): Division 7 Sealant Section
5. Windows: Division 8 Window Section

### 1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Provide a watertight Rout and Return Dry panel system, as detailed on the drawings. The panel system must consist of a dry gasket interlocking system. Any panel system utilizing a continuous field applied joint sealant is unacceptable.

B. The panel system as detailed, shall consist of concealed dry gasketed perimeter extrusions, extruded stiffeners, gaskets, fasteners and may consist of related flashings (where architectural drawings indicate they are to be furnished under this specification section), sealants between jamb panels and previously installed adjacent construction, and other miscellaneous accessories required for a complete watertight installation. Assembly shall be water and airtight without reliance on a secondary backup membrane.

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-bid submittals:

1. Project Listings: Submit five (5) listings of projects of similar scope and character, photographs of existing installations. Include the contact names and phone numbers for the representatives of the Owner, Architect and Contractor for each of the projects.
2. Documents: Demonstrating product compliance with the local building code shall be submitted prior to the bid. The architect prior to the bid date must approve alternate materials and wall systems.
3. Substitutions: Any proposed system must comply with the *Substitution Section 1.04 B* and submit the following:
    a. **Prior to bid approval**, submit the following five (5) days prior to the bid date:

(1) Panel system specifications and 24" x 24" sample fabricated showing the typical 4-way intersection, with perimeter extrusions and stiffeners. Samples must be accessible from the backside.

(2) Installation instructions and details showing typical edge conditions, corners joints, terminations and 4-way intersections.

(3) Independent laboratory test results certifying that the proposed panel system meets or exceeds **all** the tests required in this specification.

b. Submit the following with the bid after the substitution has been approved:

(1) All costs resulting from modifications to the structure, substrates and/or other components as required by the proposed substitution. Each and every cost shall be clearly delineated in the submittal.

B. Post-bid submittals:

1. Shop Drawings: Submit CAD generated shop drawings showing profiles of panel units, details of forming, joint supports, anchorages, trim, flashings, sealants and accessories. Show details of weatherproofing at edge terminations, show elevations, and layout of entire work.

a. Shop drawings should indicate project layout from control gird lines and elevations referring to the required details for each unique condition.

b. The details should show the preferred profiles and performance requirements. Provide a watertight and structurally sound, self-draining wall panel system that meets or exceeds the performance criteria set in the *Testing Section 1.05*.

2. Samples: Submit an 8" x 8" sample of panel system in the specified finish complete with factory applied edge treatment, fabricated into units representative of the actual system.

3. Tests Reports: Submit certified test reports which meet or exceed the requirements as described in the *Testing Section 1.05*. The test report shall include the following,

a. Name and location of the certified independent testing laboratory with the contact phone numbers.

b. Date the test was performed. (Any test over 10 years old will not acceptable.)

c. Unit description and system name of the panel system tested. Include the test drawings with elevations with details showing the tested panel joinery.

4. Report of Approval: ICBO Evaluation Report No. PFC 4545.

5. Affidavit: Certifying material meets requirements specified.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Installer qualifications: Installer experienced in performing work of this section who has experience in wall applications similar to that required for this project.

a. Installation History: Installer shall be a firm that has at least five (5) years of experience with exterior wall applications and has successfully completed installations of similar scope and size to this project.

2. Fabricator Qualifications: Fabricator capable of providing field service representation during construction, approving acceptable installer and application method.

a. Fabrication History: Panel fabricator shall assume undivided responsibility for all components of the panel work, and shall demonstrate no less than ten (10) years successful experience of metal panel work similar in scope and size to this project.

3. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer experienced in performing work of this section that has experience with the specified materials.

a. Manufacturer of the composite material must have at least ten (10) years experience in the production of the specified composite material.

b. ICBO Report: Composite panel manufacturer shall have an ICBO Research Report.

c. Certification: Composite panel manufacturer shall have established a Certification Program acceptable to the local Code Authorities.

d. Manufacturers of the accessories and perimeter framing extrusions must have at least five (5) years experience in the production of their respective products.

B. Substitutions: Any proposed system shall be approved and compatible with adjacent materials and components such that the assembly as a whole will conform to this specification, and shall include an extruded aluminum perimeter to provide the designed architectural reveal and guttering system without the use of external field applied sealants. Any substitution must also comply with the *System Description Section 1.02* and meet or exceed the performance requirements as described in the *Testing Section 1.05* without the reliance of a secondary backup membrane.

C. Code Performance Requirements: Work of the section shall conform to all applicable codes and regulations.

1. Thermal Design Criteria:

a. Make allowances for free and noiseless vertical and horizontal thermal movement due to the contraction and expansion of component parts, for an ambient temperature range from -20 degrees F to +180 degrees F. Buckling of panels, separation/opening of joints, undue stress on fasteners, failure of sealants or any other detrimental effects due to thermal movement of component parts will not be permitted. Fabrication, assembly and erection procedure shall take into account the ambient temperature range at the time of the respective operation.

2. Wind Loads:

a. Assemblies herein specified shall be designed for flexural, shear and torsional stresses for the following positive and negative wind pressures acting normal to the plane of the assemblies. Loading design shall; be based on latest Building Code but in no case less than 20 pounds per square foot with 25 pounds per square foot corner pressure.

3. Material Stress and Deflection:

a. Normal to the plane of the wall between structural supports, deflection of the attached perimeter-framing members shall not exceed L/175 of span length or 3/4", whichever is less.

b. At connection points of framing members to anchors, anchor deflection in any direction shall not exceed 1/16". Where connection points are not clearly defined, maximum anchor deflection shall not exceed 1/16".

c. Stresses must take into account interaction and in no case shall allowable values exceed the yield stress.

d. At 1.5 times design pressure, permanent deflections of framing members must not exceed L/1000 of the span length, and components must not experience failure or gross permanent distortion. At connection points of framing members to anchors, permanent set shall not exceed 1/16".

1.05 TESTING

A. Wall System Performance: Walls furnished under this section shall have been tested. If comparable tests are not available, mockups shall be constructed and tests performed. In either case, an independent laboratory approved by the architect shall conduct the tests. Test results shall meet or exceed the following without reliance on a secondary backup membrane:

1. Air Infiltration:

a. When tested in accordance with ASTM E283, the air infiltration at 6.24 psf must not exceed 0.06 cfm per square foot of wall area.

2. Static Water Infiltration:

a. When tested at a differential static pressure of 15.0 psf for 15 minutes, in accordance with ASTM E331, any uncontrolled water passing into the room-side beyond the interior barrier of the wall system shall not be permitted. The panel system shall be designed to provide controlled drainage to the exterior face of the wall for any leakage of water occurring at joints and/or condensation taking place within the wall system.

3. Dynamic Water Infiltration:

a. Shall be tested in accordance with AAMA 501 with a slipstream velocity, creating a pressure on the wall equivalent to 15.0 psf with a water spray rate of 5 gallons per hour per square foot for 15 minutes with no uncontrolled water leakage to the room-side.

4. Structural Performance:

a. Shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E330 at design pressure. Deflection limitations are listed previously. After initial test, test at 150% of design pressure; no permanent deformation exceeding L/1000 or failure to structural members allowed.

5. Seismic Racking:

a. There shall be no failure or deterioration of the system when the unit is laterally racked to 3/4" in both directions and repeated for three (3) cycles. System must

pass the static water requirements as described in the *Static Water Infiltration Section 1.05 A 2*, following the seismic racking.

B. Bond Integrity Test: In accordance with ASTM D 1781-76 for bond integrity, simulating resistance to delamination (No other test procedure is acceptable):

1. Peel strength: 22.5 in lb/in (min)

C. Fire Performance:

1. ASTM E84-79 - Maximum value flame spread 0, smoke developed 0

2. UBC 17-5 - No flame spread along interior face or penetration through the wall assembly

3. ASTM 162 - No surface flaming

1.06 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. After acceptance of panels on a given elevation, protection shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 COMPOSITE PANEL SYSTEM

A. Fabricator: ESC Alucobond® Architectural Wall System manufactured by Elward Systems Corporation of Lakewood, Colorado. (800) 933-5339 or (303) 239-8138.

B. **Prior Approval by others.**

C. Panel System: The panel system shall consist of Alucobond® manufactured by Alusuisse Composites, Inc., Benton, Kentucky, and a system of custom aluminum extrusions of size and shape indicated on drawings and as specified herein. The panel shall conform to all of the following,

1. Perimeter Extrusions: Extruded aluminum with integral weather-stripping as detailed on drawings, so as to provide the following essential features,

a. Rout and return the Alucobond® on all perimeters. "Continuous Edge Grip" (CEG) is not acceptable.

b. Exposed edge of the Alucobond® shall be protected inside an extruded aluminum pocket.

c. Maximum overall panel thickness, including the attachment shim space, shall not exceed 2".

d. The Alucobond® shall be mechanically attached to all perimeter extrusions.

e. Do not substitute sealants for dry gasketing shown at the metal panel joinery.

2. Stiffeners: Extruded aluminum sections secured to edge trim and bonded to rear face of Alucobond® with silicone, and of sufficient size and strength to maintain flatness of the panel within the specified tolerances.

3. Reveals at Panel: Joint size between the faces of the perimeter extrusions shall be 1/2", nominal.

4. Flatness Criteria: Maximum 1/8" in 15'-0" on panel in any direction for assembled units. (Non-accumulative)

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Alucobond® Composite Material:

1. Composite: Two sheets of aluminum sandwiching a core of extruded thermoplastic, formed in a continuous process with no glues or adhesives between dissimilar materials. Total composite thickness is 4mm.

2. Face Sheets: 0.020" thick aluminum (alloy to be 3003 for coil-coated sheet or 5005 for anodized).

3. Color and Coating: To be selected by the architect from the Series A, B or C, Alucobond® color chart with the appropriate recommended coating, (2 coat or 3 coat).

4. Finish: The selected coating must meet the weathering performance criteria of AAMA 2605. Exterior surfaces shall be coil coated Kynar 500® or Hylar 5000® based polyvinylidence fluoride (PVDF) resin. Other resin-based coatings are not acceptable. In particular, the coating must have successfully passed the following tests:

a. Humidity Resistance

(1) Test Method: ASTM D-2247

(a) No formation of blisters when subjected to condensing water fog at 100% relative humidity and 100 degree Fahrenheit for 4,000 hours.

b. Salt Spray Resistance

(1) Test Method: ASTM B-117; expose coating system to 4,000 hours, using 5% NaCl solution.

(a) Minimum rating of 7 on scribe or cut edges.

(b) Minimum blister rating of 8 within the test specimen field

c. Weather Exposure

(1) Outdoor

(a) Ten (10) year exposure at 45 degree angle facing south Florida exposure

(b) Maximum color change of 5 Delta E units as calculated in accordance with ASTM D-2244

(c) Maximum chalk rating of 8 in accordance with ASTM D-659

(d) No checking, crazing, adhesion loss

5. Core: Thermoplastics

B. Aluminum Extrusions:

1. Perimeter Extrusions

a. Alloy: AA-6063-T5

b. Color: Extrusion color shall be black painted silicone modified polyester.

2. Stiffeners

a. Alloy: AA-6063-T5

b. Color: Stiffeners shall have a mill finish.

C. System Sealants:

1. Sealants and gaskets within the panel system shall be per manufacturer's standards.

2. Sealant color shall be black.

D. Gaskets:

1. Gaskets shall be Santoprene or EPDM.

E. Flashings:

1. Fabricate flashing from .062"minumum thickness aluminum sheet. Where exposed to view, finish to match adjacent panels. Provide lap strip under flashing at abutted conditions; with lapped surfaces sealed with a full-bed of non-hardening sealant.

F. Fasteners:

1. Attachment of the panel system to the primary panel structural supports shall be made using a Drill-Flex® Fastener by ELCO Textron Inc.

2. Typical joinery shall be attached with concealed fasteners. When exposed fasteners are required in isolated conditions, the fastener shall be obscured in the panel joinery.

## 2.03 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate panel units to dimensions indicated on the drawings based on an assumed design temperature of +70 degrees F. Allow for ambient temperature range at time of fabrication and erection.

B. Fabricate panels in sizes shown using composite aluminum panel material and perimeter extrusion so that the panel thickness at the joinery is no more than 1.75". Completed panel shall be properly fabricated and designed so that no restraints are placed on the panel, which might result in excessive compressive skin stresses. The installation detailing shall be such that the installed panels shall remain flat due to temperature changes and at all times remain water and air-tight. Oil canning of panel surface is not acceptable.

C. Where practical, shop fabricate units ready for erection. If not shop assembled, pre-fabricate components at the shop as required for proper and expeditious field assembly.

D. Design, fabricate, assemble, and erect wall panel units, to insure a weather tight system, as required in this specification section.

E. Where drawings indicate, factory curve panels to required radii. Extrusions shall be factory stretched formed to conform to panel curve.

F. Provide stiffeners secured to rear face of panels mechanically fastened to edge trim members, with spacing as required by ICBO Report No. PFC 4545, or by specific job wind loading.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Delivery: Deliver fabricated units and component parts identified per erection drawings.

B. Protection of Surfaces: Protect surfaces from damage during shipping and erection. Inspect work for damage upon delivery - no damaged work permitted on job site.

C. Storage: Coordinate with General Contractor for storage space.

D. Panel Penetrations: Penetrations including those shown on the Architectural Drawings that are required by other trades shall be done by the trade involved, unless noted otherwise.

3.02 INSPECTION

A. Examine supporting structure and conditions under which the work is to be erected, and notify the Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with erection until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install in compliance with manufacturer's product data, including shop drawings, installation instructions, technical bulletins, and special custom pertaining to the any specific condition.

B. Erect panel work in a square, plumb, strait, and true, accurately fitted manner.

C. Do not install component parts, which are observed to be defective, including warped, bowed, dented, abraded and/or broken members.

D. Do not cut, trim, weld, or braze component parts during erection, in a manner which would damage finish, decrease strength, or result in a visual imperfection or a failure in system performance. Return component parts that require alteration to shop for re-fabrication, if possible, or for replacement by new parts.

E. Apply a coat of bituminous paint, concealed, on one or both surfaces wherever dissimilar metals would otherwise be in contact. Use gasketed or approved coated fasteners where needed to eliminate the possibility of corrosive or electrolytic action between metals.

F. Anchor panels securely in accordance with the approved shop drawings to allow for the necessary thermal movement and structural support as specified above.

3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After installation of panels on a given elevation, any additional protection shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor.

B. Deposit all trash from panel shipping crates in General Contractor's furnished debris boxes.

C. Make sure weep holes and drainage channels are unobstructed and free of dirt and sealants.

D. Remove protective film at time of panel installation.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 07531 - EPDM SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE ROOFING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Adhered sheet roofing.
2. Mechanically fastened sheet roofing.
3. Vapor retarder.
4. Roof insulation.
5. Walkway pads.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking; and wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
2. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof penetration flashings, flashings, and counterflashings.
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
4. Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for roof drains.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 1079 for definition of terms related to roofing work not otherwise defined in this Section.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Install sheet membrane roofing and base flashing that are watertight; will not permit the passage of liquid water; and will withstand wind loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure.

B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

C. FM Listing: Provide sheet membrane, base flashings, and component materials that meet requirements of FM 4450 and FM 4470 as part of a roofing system and that are listed in FM's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM markings.

1. Roofing system shall comply with the following:
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-120.

D. Roofing System Design: Provide a roofing system that complies with roofing system manufacturer's written design instructions and with the following:

1. SPRI's "Wind Design Guide for Adhered Roofing Systems."
2. SPRI's "Wind Design Guide for Mechanically Fastened Roofing Systems."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of roofing product specified. Include data substantiating that materials comply with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, and details of the following:

1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.

C. Samples for Verification: Of the following products:

1. 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) square of sheet roofing, of color specified, including T-shaped side and end lap seam.
2. 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) square of roof insulation.
3. 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) square of walkway pads or rolls.
4. 12-inch (300-mm) length of metal termination bars.
5. 12-inch (300-mm) length of battens.
6. 6 insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
7. 6 roof cover fasteners of each type, length, and finish.

D. Installer Certificates: Signed by roofing system manufacturer certifying that Installer is approved, authorized, or licensed by manufacturer to install specified roofing system.

E. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that the roofing system complies with requirements specified in the "Performance Requirements" Article. Upon request, submit evidence of meeting requirements.

F. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified independent testing agency, indicate compliance of components of roofing system with requirements based on comprehensive testing of current product compositions.

H. Research/Evaluation Reports: Evidence of roofing system's compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

I. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in the maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

J. Warranty: Sample copy of standard roofing system manufacturer's warranty stating obligations, remedies, limitations, and exclusions of warranty.

K. Inspection Report: Copy of roofing system manufacturer's inspection report of completed roofing installation.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer to perform work of this Section who has specialized in installing roofing similar to that required for this Project and who is approved, authorized, or licensed by the roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide roofing materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL, FM, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A; ASTM E 108, for application and slopes indicated.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Before installing roofing system, conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 1 Section "Project Meetings." Notify participants at least 5 working days before conference.

1. Meet with Owner; Architect; Owner's insurer, if applicable; testing and inspecting agency representative; roofing Installer; roofing system manufacturer's representative; deck Installer; and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
4. Review loading limitations of deck during and after roofing.
5. Review flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing.
6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and inspection and testing, if applicable.
7. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
8. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.
9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures or actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.

1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with roofing work only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing to be installed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: As per the DFCM's Warrenty

B. Standard Roofing Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit a written warranty, without monetary limitation, signed by roofing system manufacturer agreeing to promptly repair leaks resulting from defects in materials or workmanship for the following warranty period:

1. Warranty Period: 20 years.

C. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, including membrane roofing, sheet flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, and vapor retarders, if any, for the following warranty period:

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EPDM Sheet:
   a. Carlisle Syntec Systems; Carlisle Corp.
   b. Firestone Building Products Co.
   c. GenFlex Roofing Systems; GenCorp Polymer Products.
   d. HPG Roofing Systems.
   e. Roofing Products International, Inc.
   f. Schuller Roofing Systems.
   g. Versico, Inc.

2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation:

   a. Amoco Foam Products Co.
   b. DiversiFoam Products.
   c. Dow Chemical Co.
   d. UC Industries, Inc.; Owens-Corning Co.

3. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation:

   a. Apache Products Co.
   b. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
   c. Celotex Corp. (The).

d. GAF Materials Corp.
e. NRG Barriers, Inc.

## 2.2 EPDM SHEET

A. EPDM Sheet: Uniform, flexible sheet formed from a terpolymer of ethylene-propylene-diene, complying with ASTM D 4637, Type 1, of the following grade, class, thickness, backing, and exposed face color:

1. Grade and Class: Grade 1 and Class U, unreinforced for fully adheared areas.
2. Grade and Class: Grade 1 or 2 and Class SR, scrim or fabric internal reinforced mechanically fastened areas.
3. Thickness: 60 mils ACTUAL THICKNESS.
4. Backing: Unbacked.
5. Backing: Nonwoven polyester fabric.
6. Exposed Face Color: Black.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with EPDM membrane roofing.

1. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that meet VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil- ACTUAL THICKNESS thick EPDM, uncured or cured, according to application.

C. Epichlorohydrin Sheet: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, unreinforced flexible sheet with the following properties as determined per ASTM test method indicated:

1. Tensile Strength: 1500 psi (10.3 MPa); ASTM D 412.
2. Ultimate Elongation: 200 percent; ASTM D 412.
3. Tear Resistance: 150 lbf/in. (26.3 kN/m); ASTM D 412.
4. Brittleness Temperature: Minus 20 deg F (Minus 29 deg C); ASTM D 746.
5. Resistance to Ozone Aging: No cracks after 168 hours' exposure of 50 percent elongated sample at 104 deg F (40 deg C) and 100-pphm (100-MPa) ozone; ASTM D 1149.
6. Resistance to Oil Aging: 15 percent maximum mass change after 168 hours' immersion in diesel fuel No. 2 at 158 deg F (70 deg C); ASTM D 471.

D. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard bonding adhesive.

E. Splice Adhesive and Cleaner: Single-component butyl splicing adhesive and solvent-based splice cleaner.

F. Splice Primer and Tape: Manufacturer's standard synthetic rubber polymer primer and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film.

G. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard single-component sealant.

H. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.

I. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard aluminum bars, approximately 1 inch (25 mm) wide, roll formed and prepunched.

J. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch (25 mm) wide by 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) thick, prepunched.

K. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions of FM 4470, designed for fastening sheet to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

L. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use.

## 2.4 THERMAL BARRIER

A. Thermal Barrier: Glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board, ASTM C 1177, of type and thickness indicated below:
   1. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
   2. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Dens-Deck Prime" manufactured by Georgia-Pacific Corp.

B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions of FM 4470, designed for fastening thermal barrier to substrate.

## 2.5 VAPOR RETARDER

A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).

   1. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
   2. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard roofing adhesive, FM approved for vapor-retarder application.

B. Laminated-Sheet Vapor Retarder: Kraft paper, 2 layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and manufacturer's standard roofing adhesive.

## 2.6 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. General: Provide preformed roof insulation boards that comply with requirements, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes and of thicknesses indicated.

   1. Provide preformed, tapered insulation boards where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate with the following taper:
      a. As indicated on Drawings.

   2. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

B. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: Rigid, cellular polystyrene thermal insulation formed from polystyrene base resin by an extrusion process using HCFCs as blowing agents to comply with ASTM C 578 for type and with other requirements indicated below:
   1. Type VI, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m) minimum density.

C. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: Rigid, cellular polyisocyanurate thermal insulation with core formed by using HCFCs as blowing agents to comply with ASTM C 1289, classified by facer type as follows:

1. Facer Type: Type II, felt or glass-fiber mat on both major surfaces.

## 2.7 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

A. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet roofing material.

B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions of FM 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

C. Metal Securement System: L-shaped securement flashing and other required insulation strapping fabricated from stainless steel, a minimum of 0.031 inch (0.8 mm) thick. Provide fasteners as recommended by insulation manufacturer.

## 2.8 ASPHALT MATERIALS

A. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or IV.

B. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.

## 2.9 WALKWAYS

A. Walkway Pads: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions under which roofing will be applied, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements.

B. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and set and braced and that roof drains are properly clamped into position.

C. Verify that wood nailers are in place and secured and match thicknesses of insulation required.

D. Do not proceed with installation until after the minimum concrete curing period recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

E. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of the roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

## 3.3 THERMAL BARRIER

A. Install thermal barrier with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt thermal-barrier boards together.

1. Secure thermal barrier to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations of FM's "Approval Guide" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
2. Secure thermal barrier to top flanges of steel deck using at least 1 fastener for each 4 sq. ft. (0.38 sq. m) and at least 2 fasteners per board.

## 3.4 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

A. Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
1. Seal laps with roofing membrane manufacturer's standard adhesive.

## 3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.

B. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.

C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated and to Shop Drawings.

D. Install one or more layers of insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2 inches (50 mm) or greater, install required thickness in 2 or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.

E. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.

F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.

1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.

G. Attached Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type indicated.

## 3.6 ADHERED SHEET INSTALLATION

A. Install EPDM sheet over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll sheet and allow to relax for a minimum of 30 minutes.

B. Start installation of sheet in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.

C. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.

D. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of sheet.

E. Apply a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt to substrate at rate required by manufacturer and install fabric-backed sheet. Do not apply roofing asphalt to splice area of sheet.

F. Mechanically or adhesively fasten sheet securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.

G. Apply roofing sheet with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.

H. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal roofing sheet in place with clamping ring.

I. Install adhered EPDM sheet and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing.

J. Apply epichlorohydrin sheet over EPDM sheet at locations indicated according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.7 MECHANICALLY FASTENED SHEET INSTALLATION

A. Install EPDM sheet over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll sheet and allow to relax for a minimum of 30 minutes.

B. Start installation of sheet in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.

C. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.

D. Mechanically or adhesively fasten sheet securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.

E. Apply roofing sheet with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.

F. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal roofing sheet in place with clamping ring.

G. In-Splice Attachment: Secure one edge of the sheet using fastening plates or battens centered within the membrane splice and mechanically fasten sheet to roof deck. Field-splice seam according to "Seam Installation" Article.

H. Through-Membrane Attachment: Secure the sheet with battens or plates and mechanically fasten sheet to roof deck. Cover battens and fasteners with a continuous strip of sheet adhesive tape.

I. Under-Membrane Attachment: Place continuous-strip sheet adhesive tape, release-paper side up, over substrate. Centrally place battens over tape and mechanically fasten to roof deck.

1. Apply primer to underside of sheet in strips corresponding to tape location. Remove release paper and firmly adhere sheet to the tape.

J. Install sheet and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing.

K. Apply epichlorohydrin sheet over EPDM sheet at locations indicated according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.8 SEAM INSTALLATION

A. Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet terminations.

1. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by roofing system manufacturer.

B. Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet terminations.

C. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not meet requirements.

## 3.9 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of flashing sheet at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply bonding adhesive to seam area of flashing.

C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.

E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings.

F. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

## 3.10 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

A. Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion and submit report to Architect.

1. Notify Architect or Owner 48 hours in advance of the date and time of inspection.

3.12 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect sheet membrane roofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.

B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, reinstall roofing, and repair sheet flashings to a condition free of damage and deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07531

# SECTION 07620 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes sheet metal flashing and trim in the following categories:

1. Exposed trim and fasciae.
2. Copings.
3. Metal flashing.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for elastomeric sealants.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failing.

B. Fabricate and install flashings at roof edges to comply with recommendations of FM Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for the following wind zone:

1. Wind Zone 3: Wind pressures of 46 to 104 psf (2.20 to 4.98 kPa).

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data including manufacturer's material and finish data, installation instructions, and general recommendations for each specified flashing material and fabricated product.

C. Shop Drawings of each item specified showing layout, profiles, methods of joining, and anchorage details.

D. Samples of sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessory items, in the specified finish. Where finish involves normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets composed of 2 or more units showing the full range of variations expected.

1. 8-inch- (200-mm-) square Samples of specified sheet materials to be exposed as finished surfaces.

2. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples of factory-fabricated products exposed as finished Work. Provide complete with specified factory finish.

E. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experience Installer who has completed sheet metal flashing and trim work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Coordinate Work of this Section with interfacing and adjoining Work for proper sequencing of each installation. Ensure best possible weather resistance, durability of Work, and protection of materials and finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated and with not less than the strength and durability of alloy and temper designated below:

1. Anodized Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 5005-H14, with a minimum thickness of 0.050 inch (1.2 mm).

B. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 526, G 90 (ASTM A 526M, Z 275), commercial quality, or ASTM A 527, G 90 (ASTM A 527M, Z 275), lock-forming quality, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet with 0.20 percent copper, mill phosphatized where indicated for painting; not less than 0.0396 inch (1.0 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792, Class AZ-50 coating, Grade 40 (ASTM A 792M, Class AZ-150 coating, Grade 275) or to suit project conditions, with 55 percent aluminum, not less than 0.0396 inch (1.0 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated, commercial-quality steel sheet conforming to ASTM A 755, G 90 (ASTM A 755M, Z 275) coating designation, coil coated with high-performance fluoropolymer coating as specified in "Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel Sheet Finish" Article; not less than 0.0336 inch (0.85 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper-bearing lead sheet, with a minimum thickness of 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm) except not less than 0.0937 inch (2.4 mm) thick for applications where burning (welding) is involved.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Solder: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, used with rosin flux.

B. Fasteners: Same metal as sheet metal flashing or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer. Match finish of exposed heads with material being fastened.

C. Asphalt Mastic: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type asphalt mastic, nominally free of sulfur and containing no asbestos fibers, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat.

D. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; nonhardening, nonskinning, nondrying, nonmigrating sealant.

E. Elastomeric Sealant: Generic type recommended by sheet metal manufacturer and fabricator of components being sealed and complying with requirements for joint sealants as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: 2-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior and interior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.

G. Adhesives: Type recommended by flashing sheet metal manufacturer for waterproof and weather-resistant seaming and adhesive application of flashing sheet metal.

H. Paper Slip Sheet: 5-lb/square (0.244 kg/sq. m) red rosin, sized building paper conforming to FS UU-B-790, Type I, Style 1b.

I. Polyethylene Underlayment: ASTM D 4397, minimum 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick black polyethylene film, resistant to decay when tested according to ASTM E 154.

J. Metal Accessories: Provide sheet metal clips, straps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units as required for installation of Work, matching or compatible with material being installed; noncorrosive; size and thickness required for performance.

K. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type I, asbestos free, asphalt based.

## 2.3 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Sheet Metal Fabrication Standard: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations of SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item indicated.

B. Comply with details shown to fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that fit substrates and result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance once installed. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.

C. Form exposed sheet metal Work that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

D. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in sheet metal with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.

E. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in aluminum with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.

F. Expansion Provisions: Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions

in Work cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weatherproof and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

G. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.

H. Separate metal from noncompatible metal or corrosive substrates by coating concealed surfaces at locations of contact with asphalt mastic or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

I. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of sheet metal exposed to public view.

J. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as sheet metal component being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by sheet metal manufacturer.

1. Size: As recommended by SMACNA manual or sheet metal manufacturer for application but never less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.4 SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. General: Fabricate sheet metal items in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than that listed below for each application and metal.

B. Exposed Trim and Fasciae: Fabricate from the following material:

1. PVC Laminated Galvanized Steel: 24 ga. thick.

C. Copings: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel: 24 ga. thick.

D. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel: 24 ga thick.

E. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Galvanized Steel: 20 ga. thick.

F. Drip Edges: Fabricate from the following material:

1. PVC Laminated Galvanized Steel: 24. gathick.

G. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel: 20 ga. thick.

H. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Galvanized Steel: 20 ga. thick.

2.5 COIL-COATED GALVANIZED STEEL SHEET FINISH

A. High-Performance Organic Coating Finish: Apply the following system by coil-coating process on galvanized steel sheet as recommended by coating manufacturers and applicator.

1. Fluoropolymer 2-Coat Coating System: Manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured system composed of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 605.2.

a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of choices for color and gloss.
b. Resin Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide fluoropolymer coating systems containing resins produced by one of the following manufacturers:

1) Ausimont USA, Inc. (Hylar 5000)
2) Elf Atochem North America, Inc. (Kynar 500)

B. Shop Finish, Rain Drainage: Provide manufacturer's standard baked-on, white-acrylic shop finish on sheet metal rain-drainage units (gutters, downspouts, and similar exposed units); 1.0-mil (0.025-mm) dry film thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions under which sheet metal flashing and trim are to be installed and verify that Work may properly commence. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Anchor units of Work securely in place by methods indicated, providing for thermal expansion of metal units; conceal fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install Work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weatherproof.

B. Install exposed sheet metal Work that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.

C. Roof-Edge Flashings: Secure metal flashings at roof edges according to FM Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone.

D. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed sheet metal Work. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in Work cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weatherproof and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

E. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pretin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), except where pretinned surface would show in finished Work.

1. Do not solder the following metals:

a. Aluminum.
b. Coil-coated galvanized steel sheet.

2. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

F. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards. Fill joint with sealant and form metal to completely conceal sealant.

1. Use joint adhesive for nonmoving joints specified not to be soldered.

G. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in sheet metal with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.

H. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in aluminum with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.

I. Separations: Separate metal from noncompatible metal or corrosive substrates by coating concealed surfaces, at locations of contact, with asphalt mastic or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

1. Underlayment: Where installing aluminum directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a slip sheet of red-rosin paper and a course of polyethylene underlayment.
2. Bed flanges of Work in a thick coat of roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.

J. Counterflashings: Coordinate installation of counterflashings with installation of assemblies to be protected by counterflashing. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and bed with sealant.

K. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate equipment support flashing installation with roofing and equipment installation. Weld or seal flashing to equipment support member.

L. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-sloped roofs, unless otherwise shown. Set in roof cement or sealant compatible with roofing membrane.

## 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces, removing substances that might cause corrosion of metal or deterioration of finishes.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure sheet metal flashing and trim Work during construction is without damage or deterioration other than natural weathering at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 07620

# SECTION 07620 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes sheet metal flashing and trim in the following categories:

1. Exposed trim and fasciae.
2. Copings.
3. Metal flashing.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for elastomeric sealants.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failing.

B. Fabricate and install flashings at roof edges to comply with recommendations of FM Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for the following wind zone:

1. Wind Zone 3: Wind pressures of 46 to 104 psf (2.20 to 4.98 kPa).

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data including manufacturer's material and finish data, installation instructions, and general recommendations for each specified flashing material and fabricated product.

C. Shop Drawings of each item specified showing layout, profiles, methods of joining, and anchorage details.

D. Samples of sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessory items, in the specified finish. Where finish involves normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets composed of 2 or more units showing the full range of variations expected.

1. 8-inch- (200-mm-) square Samples of specified sheet materials to be exposed as finished surfaces.

2. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples of factory-fabricated products exposed as finished Work. Provide complete with specified factory finish.

E. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experience Installer who has completed sheet metal flashing and trim work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Coordinate Work of this Section with interfacing and adjoining Work for proper sequencing of each installation. Ensure best possible weather resistance, durability of Work, and protection of materials and finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated and with not less than the strength and durability of alloy and temper designated below:

1. Anodized Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 5005-H14, with a minimum thickness of 0.050 inch (1.2 mm).

B. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 526, G 90 (ASTM A 526M, Z 275), commercial quality, or ASTM A 527, G 90 (ASTM A 527M, Z 275), lock-forming quality, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet with 0.20 percent copper, mill phosphatized where indicated for painting; not less than 0.0396 inch (1.0 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792, Class AZ-50 coating, Grade 40 (ASTM A 792M, Class AZ-150 coating, Grade 275) or to suit project conditions, with 55 percent aluminum, not less than 0.0396 inch (1.0 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated, commercial-quality steel sheet conforming to ASTM A 755, G 90 (ASTM A 755M, Z 275) coating designation, coil coated with high-performance fluoropolymer coating as specified in "Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel Sheet Finish" Article; not less than 0.0336 inch (0.85 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper-bearing lead sheet, with a minimum thickness of 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm) except not less than 0.0937 inch (2.4 mm) thick for applications where burning (welding) is involved.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Solder: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, used with rosin flux.

B. Fasteners: Same metal as sheet metal flashing or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer. Match finish of exposed heads with material being fastened.

C. Asphalt Mastic: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type asphalt mastic, nominally free of sulfur and containing no asbestos fibers, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat.

D. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; nonhardening, nonskinning, nondrying, nonmigrating sealant.

E. Elastomeric Sealant: Generic type recommended by sheet metal manufacturer and fabricator of components being sealed and complying with requirements for joint sealants as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: 2-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior and interior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.

G. Adhesives: Type recommended by flashing sheet metal manufacturer for waterproof and weather-resistant seaming and adhesive application of flashing sheet metal.

H. Paper Slip Sheet: 5-lb/square (0.244 kg/sq. m) red rosin, sized building paper conforming to FS UU-B-790, Type I, Style 1b.

I. Polyethylene Underlayment: ASTM D 4397, minimum 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick black polyethylene film, resistant to decay when tested according to ASTM E 154.

J. Metal Accessories: Provide sheet metal clips, straps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units as required for installation of Work, matching or compatible with material being installed; noncorrosive; size and thickness required for performance.

K. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type I, asbestos free, asphalt based.

## 2.3 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Sheet Metal Fabrication Standard: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations of SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item indicated.

B. Comply with details shown to fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that fit substrates and result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance once installed. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.

C. Form exposed sheet metal Work that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

D. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in sheet metal with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.

E. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in aluminum with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.

F. Expansion Provisions: Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions

in Work cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weatherproof and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

G. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.

H. Separate metal from noncompatible metal or corrosive substrates by coating concealed surfaces at locations of contact with asphalt mastic or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

I. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of sheet metal exposed to public view.

J. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as sheet metal component being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by sheet metal manufacturer.

1. Size: As recommended by SMACNA manual or sheet metal manufacturer for application but never less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.4 SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. General: Fabricate sheet metal items in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than that listed below for each application and metal.

B. Exposed Trim and Fasciae: Fabricate from the following material:

1. PVC Laminated Galvanized Steel: 24 ga. thick.

C. Copings: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel: 24 ga. thick.

D. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel: 24 ga thick.

E. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Galvanized Steel: 20 ga. thick.

F. Drip Edges: Fabricate from the following material:

1. PVC Laminated Galvanized Steel: 24. gathick.

G. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Coil-Coated Galvanized Steel: 20 ga. thick.

H. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Galvanized Steel: 20 ga. thick.

2.5 COIL-COATED GALVANIZED STEEL SHEET FINISH

A. High-Performance Organic Coating Finish: Apply the following system by coil-coating process on galvanized steel sheet as recommended by coating manufacturers and applicator.

1. Fluoropolymer 2-Coat Coating System: Manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured system composed of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 605.2.

a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of choices for color and gloss.
b. Resin Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide fluoropolymer coating systems containing resins produced by one of the following manufacturers:

1) Ausimont USA, Inc. (Hylar 5000)
2) Elf Atochem North America, Inc. (Kynar 500)

B. Shop Finish, Rain Drainage: Provide manufacturer's standard baked-on, white-acrylic shop finish on sheet metal rain-drainage units (gutters, downspouts, and similar exposed units); 1.0-mil (0.025-mm) dry film thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions under which sheet metal flashing and trim are to be installed and verify that Work may properly commence. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Anchor units of Work securely in place by methods indicated, providing for thermal expansion of metal units; conceal fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install Work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weatherproof.

B. Install exposed sheet metal Work that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.

C. Roof-Edge Flashings: Secure metal flashings at roof edges according to FM Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone.

D. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed sheet metal Work. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in Work cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weatherproof and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

E. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pretin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), except where pretinned surface would show in finished Work.

1. Do not solder the following metals:

a. Aluminum.
b. Coil-coated galvanized steel sheet.

2. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

F. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards. Fill joint with sealant and form metal to completely conceal sealant.

1. Use joint adhesive for nonmoving joints specified not to be soldered.

G. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in sheet metal with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.

H. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in aluminum with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.

I. Separations: Separate metal from noncompatible metal or corrosive substrates by coating concealed surfaces, at locations of contact, with asphalt mastic or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

1. Underlayment: Where installing aluminum directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a slip sheet of red-rosin paper and a course of polyethylene underlayment.
2. Bed flanges of Work in a thick coat of roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.

J. Counterflashings: Coordinate installation of counterflashings with installation of assemblies to be protected by counterflashing. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and bed with sealant.

K. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate equipment support flashing installation with roofing and equipment installation. Weld or seal flashing to equipment support member.

L. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-sloped roofs, unless otherwise shown. Set in roof cement or sealant compatible with roofing membrane.

## 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces, removing substances that might cause corrosion of metal or deterioration of finishes.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure sheet metal flashing and trim Work during construction is without damage or deterioration other than natural weathering at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 07620

# SECTION 07720 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Equipment supports.
   2. Roof hatches.

B. Related Sections include the following:

   1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for ladders and miscellaneous metal framing and supports.
   2. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for counterflashing, scuppers, gutters and downspouts and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, materials, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Indicate dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, and components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.

C. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:

   1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
   2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
   3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for roof accessories with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples in manufacturer's standard sizes, and of same thickness and material indicated for the Work. If finishes involve normal color or shade variations, include sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Standards: Comply with the following:

1. SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" details for fabrication of units, including flanges and cap flashing to coordinate with type of roofing indicated.
2. NRCA's "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" details for installing units.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Roof Curbs and Equipment Supports:

a. AES Industries, Inc.
b. Colony Custom Curbs.
c. Commodity Products Company, Inc.
d. Conn-Fab Sales, Inc.
e. Curbs Plus, Inc.
f. Custom Curb, Inc.
g. Gieske Custom Metal Fabricators.
h. Roof Products & Systems Corp.
i. ThyCurb, Inc.
j. Uni-Curb, Inc.
k. Vent Products Co., Inc.

2. Roof Hatches:

a. Babcock-Davis Hatchways, Inc.
b. Bilco Company.
c. Hi Pro International, Inc.
d. J. L. Industries, Inc.
e. Wasco Products, Inc.

### 2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) for alclad alloy 3005H25 or alloy and temper required to suit forming operations, with mill finish, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M) alloy 6063-T52 or alloy and temper required to suit structural and finish requirements, with mill finish, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M with G90 (Z275) coating designation; commercial quality, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Structural Quality: Grade 40 (Grade 275), where indicated or as required for strength.

D. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M with Class AZ-50 (AZ-150) coating, structural quality, Grade 40 (Grade 275), or as required for strength.

E. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard rigid or semirigid glass-fiber board of thickness indicated.

F. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

G. Fasteners: Same metal as metals being fastened, or nonmagnetic stainless steel or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by manufacturer. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened.

1. Where removing exterior exposed fasteners affords access to building, provide nonremovable fastener heads.

H. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC; or flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.

I. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type bituminous mastic, nominally free of sulfur and containing no asbestos fibers, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coating.

J. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; nonhardening, nonskinning, nondrying, nonmigrating sealant.

K. Elastomeric Sealant: Generic type recommended by unit manufacturer that is compatible with joint surfaces; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, and Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

L. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, nonasbestos, fibrated asphalt cement designed for trowel application or other adhesive compatible with roofing system.

## 2.3 ROOF CURBS

A. General: Provide roof curbs capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported on roof curbs. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

B. Fabrication: Unless otherwise indicated or required for strength, fabricate units from minimum 0.0747-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick, structural-quality, hot-dip galvanized or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet; factory primed and prepared for painting with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints.

C. Fabrication: Unless otherwise indicated or required for strength, fabricate units from minimum 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, sheet aluminum with welded corner joints.

1. Provide preservative-treated wood nailers at tops of curbs and formed flange at perimeter bottom for mounting to roof.
2. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
3. Provide manufacturer's standard rigid or semirigid insulation where indicated.
4. Provide formed cants and base profile coordinated with roof insulation thickness.
5. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1/4 inch per foot (1:48), fabricate curb units with water diverter or cricket and with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

## 2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide equipment supports capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

B. Fabrication: Unless otherwise indicated or required for strength, fabricate units from minimum 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, sheet aluminum with welded corner joints.

1. Provide preservative-treated wood nailers at tops of curbs and formed flange at perimeter bottom for mounting to roof.
2. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
3. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1/4 inch per foot (1:48), fabricate support units with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

## 2.5 ROOF HATCHES

A. General: Fabricate units to withstand 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.9- kPa) external and 20-lbf/sq. ft. (0.95-kPa) internal loading pressure. Frame with minimum 9-inch- (225-mm-) high, integral-curb, double-wall construction with 1-1/2-inch (38- mm) insulation, formed cants and cap flashing (roofing counterflashing), with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints. Provide double-wall cover (lid) construction with 1- inch- (25-mm-) thick insulation core. Provide gasketing and equip with corrosion-resistant or hot-dip galvanized hardware including pintle hinges, hold-open devices, interior padlock hasps, and both interior and exterior latch handles.

B. Type: Single-leaf personnel access.

1. For Ladder Access: 36 by 36 inches (750 by 900 mm).

C. Material: Aluminum, sheets and extrusions.

D. Material: Galvanized steel sheets.

E. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1/4 inch per foot (1:48), fabricate hatch curbs with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

## 2.6 GALVANIZED STEEL SHEET FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing repair paint specified below to comply with ASTM A 780.

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.

B. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply the air-dried primer specified below immediately after cleaning and pretreating.

1. Shop Primer: Exterior galvanized metal primer.

C. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film

thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).

a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof accessories with installation of roof deck, roof insulation, flashing, roofing membranes, penetrations, equipment, and other construction involving roof accessories to ensure that each element of the Work performs properly and that combined elements are waterproof and weathertight. Anchor roof accessories securely to supporting structural substrates so they are capable of withstanding lateral and thermal stresses, and inward and outward loading pressures.

B. Install roof accessory items according to construction details of NRCA's "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual," unless otherwise indicated.

C. Separation: Separate metal from incompatible metal or corrosive substrates, including wood, by coating concealed surfaces, at locations of contact, with bituminous coating or providing other permanent separation.

D. Flange Seals: Unless otherwise indicated, set flanges of accessory units in a thick bed of roofing cement to form a seal.

E. Cap Flashing: Where required as component of accessory, install cap flashing to provide waterproof overlap with roofing or roof flashing (as counterflashing). Seal overlap with thick bead of mastic sealant.

F. Operational Units: Test-operate units with operable components. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware. Adjust for proper operation.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Touch up damaged metal coatings.

END OF SECTION 07720

# SECTION 07841 - THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes through-penetration firestop systems for penetrations through the following fire-resistance-rated assemblies, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items:

1. Floors.
2. Walls and partitions.
3. Smoke barriers.
4. Construction enclosing compartmentalized areas.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for safing insulation and accessories.
2. Division 15 Sections specifying duct and piping penetrations.
3. Division 16 Sections specifying cable and conduit penetrations.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: For the following constructions, provide through-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assembly penetrated.

1. Fire-resistance-rated load-bearing walls, including partitions, with fire-protection-rated openings.
2. Fire-resistance-rated non-load-bearing walls, including partitions, with fire-protection-rated openings.
3. Fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.

B. F-Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with F-ratings indicated, as determined per ASTM E 814, but not less than that equaling or exceeding fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.

C. T-Rated Systems: For the following conditions, provide through-penetration firestop systems with T-ratings indicated, as well as F-ratings, as determined per ASTM E 814, where systems protect penetrating items exposed to potential contact with adjacent materials in occupiable floor areas:

1. Penetrations located outside wall cavities.
2. Penetrations located outside fire-resistive shaft enclosures.
3. Penetrations located in construction containing fire-protection-rated openings.
4. Penetrating items larger than 4-inch- (100-mm-) diameter nominal pipe or 16 sq. in. (100 sq. cm) in overall cross-sectional area.

D. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that after curing do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.

1. For piping penetrations for plumbing, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches (100 mm) in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved either by installing floor plates or by other means.
3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.

E. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread ratings of less than 25 and smoke-developed ratings of less than 450, as determined per ASTM E 84.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of through-penetration firestop system product indicated.

B. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

C. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of through-penetration firestop system products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

D. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating through-penetration firestop system complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is qualified by having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. A manufacturer's willingness to sell its through-penetration firestop system products to Contractor or to an installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain through-penetration firestop systems, for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated, from a single manufacturer.

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in "Performance Requirements" Article:

1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL, ITS, or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per ASTM E 814. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:.

a. Through-penetration firestop system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver through-penetration firestop system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer; date of manufacture; lot number; shelf life, if applicable; qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project; curing time; and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.

B. Store and handle materials for through-penetration firestop systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install through-penetration firestop systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Ventilate through-penetration firestop systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are installed according to specified requirements.

B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate through-penetration firestop systems.

C. Notify Owner's inspecting agency at least seven days in advance of through-penetration firestop system installations; confirm dates and times on days preceding each series of installations.

D. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until Owner's inspecting agency and building inspector, if required by authorities having jurisdiction, have examined each installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the through-penetration firestop systems indicated for each that are produced by one of the following manufacturers:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
2. DAP Inc.
3. Firestop Systems Inc.
4. Hilti Construction Chemicals, Inc.
5. Instant Firestop Mfg. Inc.
6. International Protective Coatings Corp.
7. Isolatek International.
8. Nelson Firestop Products.
9. NUCO Industries.

10. RectorSeal Corporation (The).
11. Specified Technologies Inc.
12. 3M Fire Protection Products.
13. Tremco.
14. United States Gypsum Company.

## 2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that are compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with the items, if any, penetrating through-penetration firestop systems, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Accessories: Provide components for each through-penetration firestop system that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestop systems indicated. Accessories include, but are not limited to, the following items:

1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:

    a. Slag-/rock-wool-fiber insulation.
    b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    c. Fire-rated form board.
    d. Fillers for sealants.

2. Temporary forming materials.
3. Substrate primers.
4. Collars.
5. Steel sleeves.

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

A. General: Provide through-penetration firestop systems containing the types of fill materials indicated in the Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule at the end of Part 3 by reference to the types of materials described in this Article. Fill materials are those referred to in directories of the referenced testing and inspecting agencies as fill, void, or cavity materials.

B. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.

C. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that after cure do not re-emulsify during exposure to moisture.

D. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.

E. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized steel sheet.

F. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.

G. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.

H. Mortars: Prepackaged, dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.

I. Pillows/Bags: Reusable, heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents and fire-retardant additives.

J. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

K. Silicone Sealants: Moisture-curing, single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a nonslumping, gunnable sealant, unless indicated firestop system limits use to nonsag grade for both opening conditions.
2. Grade for Horizontal Surfaces: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces.
3. Grade for Vertical Surfaces: Nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces.

## 2.4 MIXING

A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing through-penetration firestop systems to comply with written recommendations of firestop system manufacturer and the following requirements:

1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of through-penetration firestop systems.
2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with through-penetration firestop systems. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent through-penetration firestop systems from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestop system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestop system's seal with substrates.

## 3.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article and firestop system manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.

B. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.

1. After installing fill materials, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.

C. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:

1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent inspecting agency to inspect through-penetration firestop systems and to prepare test reports.

1. Inspecting agency will state in each report whether inspected through-penetration firestop systems comply with or deviate from requirements.

B. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued.

C. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace through-penetration firestop systems so they comply with requirements.

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify through-penetration firestop systems with pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive, preprinted vinyl labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces of penetrated construction on both sides of each firestop system installation where labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestop systems. Include the following information on labels:

1. The words: "Warning--Through-Penetration Firestop System--Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
3. Through-penetration firestop system designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
4. Date of installation.
5. Through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's name.
6. Installer's name.

## 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure through-penetration firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated through-penetration firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce through-penetration firestop systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07841

# SECTION 07900 - JOINT SEALERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY:

A. Extent of each form and type of joint sealer is indicated on drawings and schedules.

B. This Section includes joint sealers for the following locations:

1. Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces as indicated below:

   a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
   b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
   c. Vertical control joints on exposed surfaces of concrete and concrete composite walls.
   c. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows, and elevator entrances.
   d. Perimeter joints of toilet fixtures.
   e. Other joints as indicated.

2. Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces as indicated below:

   a. Control and expansion joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
   b. Other joints as indicated.

C. Sealing joints related to flashing and sheet metal for roofing is specified in Division-7 Section: "Flashing and Sheet Metal."

D. Sealants for glazing purposes are specified in Division-8 Section "Glass and Glazing."

E. Sealing concealed perimeter joints of gypsum drywall partitions to reduce sound transmission characteristics is specified in Division-9 Section "Gypsum Drywall."

F. Fire stop sealant at all structural, electrical and mechanical penetrations through the fire ceiling rated corridors, typical throughout.

G. Sealants for exterior paved surfaces are specified in Division 2 Section "Exterior Pavement Sealants".

### 1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCES:

A. Provide joint sealers that have been produced and installed to establish and maintain watertight and airtight continuous seals.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. Product Data from manufacturers for each joint sealer product required, including instructions for joint

preparation and joint sealer application.

B. Samples for Initial Selection Purposes: Manufacturer's standard bead samples consisting of strips of actual products showing full range of colors available, for each product exposed to view.

C. Certificates from manufacturers of joint sealers attesting that their products comply with specification requirements and are suitable for the use indicated.

D. Qualification data complying with requirements specified in "Quality Assurance" article. Include list of completed projects with project name, addresses, names of Architects and Owners, plus other information specified.

E. Compatibility and adhesion test reports from elastomeric sealant manufacturer indicating that materials forming joint substrates and joint sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants. Include sealant manufacturer's interpretation of test results relative to sealant performance and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed to obtain adhesion.

F. Product test reports for each type of joint sealers indicated, evidencing compliance with requirements specified.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an Installer who has successfully completed within the last 3 years at least 3 joint sealer applications similar in type and size to that of this Project.

B. Single Source Responsibility for Joint Sealer Materials: Obtain joint sealer materials from a single manufacturer for each different product required.

C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit samples of all materials that will contact or affect joint sealers to joint sealer manufacturers for compatibility and adhesion testing, as indicated below:

1. Use test methods standard with manufacturer to determine if priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealers to joint substrates.
2. Submit not less than 4 pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analysis of results to prevent delay in the progress of the Work.
4. Investigate materials failing compatibility or adhesion tests and obtain joint sealer manufacturer's written recommendations for corrective measures, including use of specially formulated primers.
5. Testing will not be required when joint sealer manufacturer is able to submit joint preparation data required above which is acceptable to Architect and is based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

D. Product Testing: Provide comprehensive test data for each type of joint sealer based on tests conducted by a qualified independent testing laboratory on current product formulations within a 24-month period preceding date of Contractor's submittal of test results to Architect.

1. Test elastomeric sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920. Include test results for hardness, stain resistance, adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement (per ASTM C 719), low-temperature flexibility, modulus of elasticity at 100 percent strain, effects of heat aging, and effects of accelerated weathering.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels informing about manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration period for use, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.

B. Store and handle materials in compliance with manufacturers' recommendations to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Environmental Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealers under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside the limits permitted by joint sealer manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).
2. When joint substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Joint Width Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealers where joint widths are less than allowed by joint sealer manufacturer for application indicated.

C. Joint Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealers until contaminants capable of interfering with their adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING:

A. Sequence installation of joint sealers to occur not less than 21 nor more than 30 days after completion of waterproofing, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL:

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealers, joint fillers and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Colors: Provide color of exposed joint sealers indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS:

A. Elastomeric Sealant Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealant of base polymer indicated which complies with ASTM C 920 requirements, including those referenced for Type, Grade, Class, and Uses.

B. One-Part Nonacid-Curing Silicone Sealant: Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, and complying with the following requirements for Uses and additional joint movement capability:

1. Uses NT, M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
2. Additional capability, when tested for adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C 719, to withstand the following percentage changes in joint width as measured at time of application and remain in compliance with other requirements of ASTM C 920 for Uses indicated:

a. 50 percent movement in both extension and compression for a total of 100 percent movement.

C. One-Part High-Modulus Nonacid-Curing Silicone Sealant: Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

D. One-Part Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to nonporous joint substrates indicated, O; formulated with fungicide; intended for sealing interior joints with nonporous substrates and subject to in-service exposure to conditions of high humidity and temperature extremes.

E. One-Part Nonsag Urethane Sealant for Use T: Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, and complying with the following requirements for Uses:

1. Uses T, NT, M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

2. One-Part Nonacid-Curing Silicone Sealant:

a. "Chem-Calk N-Cure 2000"; Bostik Construction Products Div.
b. "Dow Corning 790"; Dow Corning Corp.
c. "Silglaze N SCS 2501"; General Electric Co.
d. "Silpruf SCS 2000"; General Electric Co.
e. "864"; Pecora Corp.
f. "Rhodorsil 5C"; Rhone-Poulenc Inc.
g. "Spectrum 1"; Tremco, Inc.
h. "Spectrum 2"; Tremco, Inc.
i. "Dow Corning 795"; Dow Corning Corp.
j. "Rhodorsil 6B"; Rhone-Poulenc Inc.
k. "Rhodorsil 70"; Rhone-Poulenc Inc.
l. "Omniseal"; Sonneborn Building Products Div., Rexnord Chemical Products Inc.
m. "Chem-Calk 1000"; Bostik Construction Products Div.
n. "Gesil N SCS 2600"; General Electric Co.

3. One-Part Nonacid-Curing High-Modulus Silicone Sealant:

a. "Dow Corning 784"; Dow Corning Corp.
b. "Dow Corning 799"; Dow Corning Corp.
c. "Ultraglaze SSG 4000"; General Electric Co.

4. One-Part Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant:

a. "Dow Corning 786"; Dow Corning Corp.
b. "SCS 1702 Sanitary"; General Electric Co.
c. "863 #345 White"; Pecora Corp.
d. "Rhodorsil 6B White"; Rhone-Poulenc Inc.
e. "Proglaze White"; Tremco Corp.
f. "OmniPlus"; Sonneborn Building Products Div., Rexnord Chemical Products Inc.

5. Multi-Part Nonsag Urethane Sealant for Use NT:

a. "Isoflex 88 IGB or Isoflex 2000"; Harry S. Peterson Co., Inc.
b. "Dynatrol II"; Pecora Corp.
c. "Sonolastic NP 2"; Sonneborn Building Products Div., Rexnord Chemical Products Inc.
d. "Dymeric"; Tremco Inc.

6. Multi-Part, Pourable, Urethane Sealant for Use T:

   a. "NR-200 Urexpan"; Pecora Corp.
   b. "Isoflex 880 GB"; Harry S. Peterson Co., Inc.
   c. "Sonolastic Paving Joint Sealant"; Sonneborn Building Products Div., Rexnord Chemical Products Inc.
   d. "THC-900"; Tremco Inc.

2.3 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS:

A. Acrylic-Emulsion Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, one part, nonsag, mildew-resistant, acrylic-emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, formulated to be paintable and recommended for exposed applications on interior and on protected exterior locations involving joint movement of not more than plus or minus 5 percent.

B. Silicone Emulsion Sealant: Manufacturer's standard one part, nonsag, mildew-resistant, silicone-emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and ASTM C 920, formulated to be paintable and recommended for exposed applications on interior and on protected exterior locations involving joint movement of not more than plus or minus 12-1/2 percent.

C. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   7. Acrylic-Emulsion Sealant:
      a. "Chem-Calk 600"; Bostik Construction Products Div.
      b. "AC-20"; Pecora Corp.
      c. "Sonolac"; Sonneborn Building Products Div.; Rexnord Chemical Products, Inc.
      d. "Tremco Acrylic Latex 834"; Tremco Inc.
   8. Silicone-Emulsion Sealant:
   9. "Performance Plus Silicone Sealant"; Dow Corning Corp.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS JOINT SEALANTS:

C. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard, nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic rubber sealant recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce transmission of airborne sound.

D. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   10 Acoustical Sealants for Concealed Joints:
      a. "BA-98"; Pecora Corp.
      b. "Tremco Acoustical Sealant"; Tremco Inc.

2.5 JOINT SEALANT BACKING:

A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type which are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

B. Plastic Foam Joint Fillers: Preformed, compressible, resilient, nonwaxing, nonextruding strips of flexible, nongassing plastic foam of material indicated below; nonabsorbent to water and gas; and of size, shape and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
   11. Either open-cell polyurethane foam or closed-cell polyethylene foam, unless otherwise indicated, subject to approval of sealant manufacturer, for cold-applied sealants only.

C. Elastomeric Tubing Joint Fillers: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D 1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to -26 deg F (-15 deg C). Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant

depth, and otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance.

D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape as recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

A. Primer: Provide type recommended by joint sealer manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint sealer-substrate tests and field tests.
B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Provide nonstaining, chemical cleaners of type which are acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, which are not harmful to substrates and adjacent nonporous materials, and which do not leave oily residues or otherwise have a detrimental effect on sealant adhesion or in-service performance.
C. Masking Tape: Provide nonstaining, nonabsorbent type compatible with joint sealants and to surfaces adjacent to joints.
D. Accessory Materials for Fire-Stopping Sealants: Provide forming, joint fillers, packing and other accessory materials required for installation of fire-stopping sealants as applicable to installation conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealers, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances and other conditions affecting joint sealer performance. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealers until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION:

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealers to comply with recommendations of joint sealer manufacturers and the following requirements:
   12. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates which could interfere with adhesion of joint sealer, including dust; paints, except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer; old joint sealers; oil; grease; waterproofing; water repellants; water; surface dirt; and frost.
   13. Clean concrete, masonry, unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile and similar porous joint substrate surfaces, by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealers. Remove loose particles remaining from above cleaning operations by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air.
   14. Remove laitance and form release agents from concrete.
   15. Clean metal, glass, porcelain enamel, glazed surfaces of ceramic tile; and other nonporous surfaces by chemical cleaners or other means which are not harmful to substrates or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealers.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended by joint sealer manufacturer based on preconstruction joint sealer-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint sealer manufacturer's recommendations. Confine primers to areas of joint sealer bond, do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces which otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove

sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALERS:

A. General: Comply with joint sealer manufacturers' printed installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated, except where more stringent requirements apply.

B. Elastomeric Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations of ASTM C 962 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications and conditions indicated.

C. Latex Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with requirements of ASTM C 790 for use of latex sealants.

D. Acoustical Sealant Application Standard: Comply with recommendations of ASTM C 919 for use of joint sealants in acoustical applications as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

E. Installation of Sealant Backings: Install sealant backings to comply with the following requirements:
16. Install joint fillers of type indicated to provide support of sealants during application and at position required to produce the cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths which allow optimum sealant movement capability.

a. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint fillers.
b. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint fillers.
c. Remove absorbent joint fillers which have become wet prior to sealant application and replace with dry material.

17. Install bond breaker tape between sealants and joint fillers, compression seals, or back of joints where adhesion of sealant to surfaces at back of joints would result in sealant failure.

F. Installation of Sealants: Install sealants by proven techniques that result in sealants directly contacting and fully wetting joint substrates, completely filling recesses provided for each joint configuration, and providing uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths which allow optimum sealant movement capability.

G. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and prior to time skinning or curing begins, tool sealants to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated, to eliminate air pockets, and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint. Do not use tooling agents which discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces or are not approved by sealant manufacturer.

18 Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 6A in ASTM C 962, unless otherwise indicated.
a. Use masking tape to protect adjacent surfaces of recessed tooled joints.

3.4 CLEANING:

A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealers and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION:

A. Protect joint sealers during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances or from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so that they are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealers immediately and reseal joints with new materials to produce joint sealer installations with repaired areas indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 07900

# SECTION 08110 - STEEL DOOR FRAMES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes steel doors and frames.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 8 Section "Solid-core wood doors installed in steel frames".
2. Division 8 Section "Door Hardware"
3. Division 9 Section "Painting" for field painting primed doors and frames.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each type of door and frame specified, including details of construction, materials, dimensions, hardware preparation, core, label compliance, sound ratings, profiles, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings showing fabrication and installation of steel doors and frames. Include details of each frame type, elevations of door design types, conditions at openings, details of construction, location and installation requirements of door and frame hardware and reinforcements, and details of joints and connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

D. Door Schedule: Submit schedule of door frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Contract Drawings.

E. Samples for verification of each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples not less than 3 by 5 inches (75 by 125 mm) and of same thickness and material indicated for final unit of Work. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide door frames complying with ANSI/SDI 100 "Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" and as specified.

B. Fire-Rated Door Frame Assemblies: Units that comply with NFPA 80, are identical to door and frame assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics per ASTM E 152, and are labeled and listed by UL, Warnock Hersey, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Temperature-Rise Rating: Where indicated, provide doors that have a temperature-rise rating of 450 deg F (250 deg C) maximum in 30 minutes of fire exposure.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver door frames cardboard-wrapped or crated to provide protection during transit and job storage. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished doors and frames.

B. Inspect door frames on delivery for damage. Minor damages may be repaired provided refinished items match new work and are acceptable to the Project Manager; otherwise, remove and replace damaged items as directed.

C. Store door frames at building site under cover. Place units on minimum 4-inch- (100-mm-) high wood blocking. Avoid using nonvented plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber. If cardboard wrappers on doors become wet, remove cartons immediately. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) spaces between stacked doors to promote air circulation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Steel Door Frames:

a. Amweld Building Products, Inc.
b. Benchmark Commercial Doors.
c. Ceco Door Products.
d. Copco Door Co.
e. Curries Co.
f. Deansteel Manufacturing Co.
g. Fenestra Corp.
h. Kewanee Corp.
i. Mesker Door, Inc.
j. Pioneer Industries.
k. Republic Builders Products.
l. Steelcraft.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheets and Strip: Commercial-quality carbon steel, pickled and oiled, complying with ASTM A 569 (ASTM A 569M).

B. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheets: Carbon steel complying with ASTM A 366 (ASTM A 366M), commercial quality, or ASTM A 620 (ASTM A 620M), drawing quality, special killed.

C. Galvanized Steel Sheets: Zinc-coated carbon steel complying with ASTM A 526 (ASTM A 526M), commercial quality, or ASTM A 642 (ASTM A 642M), drawing quality, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 525, with A 60 or G 60 (ASTM A 525M, with Z 180 or ZF 180) coating designation, mill phosphatized.

D. Supports and Anchors: Fabricated from not less than 0.0478-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick steel sheet; 0.0516-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick galvanized steel where used with galvanized steel frames.

E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard units. Where items are to be built into exterior walls, hot-dip galvanize complying with ASTM A 153, Class C or D as applicable.

## 2.3 FRAMES

A. Provide metal frames for doors, transoms, sidelights, borrowed lights, and other openings, according to ANSI/SDI 100, and of types and styles as shown on Drawings and schedules. Conceal fastenings, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate frames of minimum 0.0478-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick cold-rolled steel sheet.

1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped and continuously welded corners.
2. Fabricate frames for interior openings over 48 inches (1220 mm) wide from 0.0598-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick steel sheet.

B. Door Silencers: Except on weatherstripped frames, drill stops to receive 3 silencers on strike jambs of single-door frames and 2 silencers on heads of double-door frames.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate steel door frame units to be rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects, warp, or buckle. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. Clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment, to assure proper assembly at Project site. Comply with ANSI/SDI 100 requirements.

1. Clearances: Not more than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at jambs and heads, except not more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) between non-fire-rated pairs of doors. Not more than 3/4 inch (19 mm) at bottom.

   a. Fire Doors: Provide clearances according to NFPA 80.

B. Fabricate exposed faces of doors and panels, including stiles and rails of nonflush units, from only cold-rolled steel sheet.

C. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117 "Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, reinforcement, edge channels, louvers, and moldings from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.

E. Galvanized Steel Doors, Panels, and Frames: For the following locations, fabricate doors, panels, and frames from galvanized steel sheet according to SDI 112. Close top and bottom edges of doors flush as an integral part of door construction or by addition of minimum 0.0635-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick galvanized

steel channels, with channel webs placed even with top and bottom edges. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.

F. Thermal-Rated (Insulating) Assemblies: At exterior locations and elsewhere as shown or scheduled, provide doors fabricated as thermal-insulating door and frame assemblies and tested according to ASTM C 236 or ASTM C 976 on fully operable door assemblies.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide thermal-rated assemblies with U-value rating of 0.41 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (2.33 W/sq. m x K) or better.

G. Sound-Rated (Acoustical) Assemblies: (Install at all mechanical room locations.) Provide door and frame assemblies fabricated as sound-reducing type, tested according to ASTM E 1408, and classified according to ASTM E 413.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide acoustical assemblies with STC sound ratings of 33 or better.

H. Hardware Preparation: Prepare doors and frames to receive mortised and concealed hardware according to final door hardware schedule and templates provided by hardware supplier. Comply with applicable requirements of SDI 107 and ANSI A115 Series specifications for door and frame preparation for hardware.

1. For concealed overhead door closers, provide space, cutouts, reinforcing, and provisions for fastening in top rail of doors or head of frames, as applicable.

I. Reinforce doors and frames to receive surface-applied hardware. Drilling and tapping for surface-applied hardware may be done at Project site.

J. Locate hardware as indicated on Shop Drawings or, if not indicated, according to the Door and Hardware Institute's (DHI) "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

## 2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes.

B. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1," for steel sheet finishes.

C. Apply primers and organic finishes to doors and frames after fabrication.

## 2.6 GALVANIZED STEEL SHEET FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so that surfaces are free of oil or other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating of the type suited to the organic coating applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing repair paint specified below to comply with ASTM A 780.

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in galvanized steel, with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035 or SSPC-Paint 20.

B. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply air-dried primer specified below immediately after cleaning and pretreatment.

1. Shop Primer: Zinc-dust, zinc-oxide primer paint complying with performance requirements of FS TT-P-641, Type II.

2.7 STEEL SHEET FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Solvent-clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel to comply with SSPC-SP 5 (White Metal Blast Cleaning) or SSPC-SP 8 (Pickling).

B. Pretreatment: Immediately after surface preparation, apply a conversion coating of type suited to organic coating applied over it.

C. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer that complies with ANSI A224.1 acceptance criteria, is compatible with finish paint systems indicated, and has capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats. Apply primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install steel doors, frames, and accessories according to Shop Drawings, manufacturer's data, and as specified.

B. Placing Frames: Comply with provisions of SDI 105, unless otherwise indicated. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is completed, remove temporary braces and spreaders, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.

1. Except for frames located in existing concrete, masonry, or gypsum board assembly construction, place frames before constructing enclosing walls and ceilings.
2. In masonry construction, install at least 3 wall anchors per jamb adjacent to hinge location on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Acceptable anchors include masonry wire anchors and masonry T-shaped anchors.
3. In metal-stud partitions, install at least 3 wall anchors per jamb at hinge and strike levels. In steel-stud partitions, attach wall anchors to studs with screws. Inst all back grouted frames at all steel-stud locations.
4. Install fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
5. Grout: Grout all hollow metal doorframes. See specification section 09255

C. Door Installation: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified in ANSI/SDI 100.

1. Fire-Rated Doors: Install with clearances specified in NFPA 80.
2. Smoke-Control Doors: Comply with NFPA 105.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Prime Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth any rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer.

B. Protection Removal: Immediately before final inspection, remove protective wrappings from doors and frames.

END OF SECTION 08110

# SECTION 08211 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction, trim for openings, and louvers.

1. Include factory-finishing specifications.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.

1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
4. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
5. Indicate fire ratings for fire doors.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Color charts consisting of actual materials in small sections for the following:

1. Faces of factory-finished doors with opaque finish. Show the full range of colors available.

D. Samples for Verification: As follows:

1. Corner sections of doors approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) with door faces and edgings representing the typical range of color and grain for each species of veneer and solid lumber required. Finish sample with same materials proposed for factory-finished doors.
2. Frames for light openings, 6 inches (150 mm) long, for each material, type, and finish required.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Quality Standard: Comply with the following standard:

1. NWWDA Quality Standard: NWWDA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
2. AWI Quality Standard: AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grade of door, core, construction, finish, and other requirements.
3. WIC Quality Standard: WIC's "Manual of Millwork" for grade of door, core, construction, finish, and other requirements.
   a. Provide WIC Certified Compliance Certificate for installation.

C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.

1. Test Pressure: Test at atmospheric pressure.
2. Temperature-Rise Rating: At stairwell enclosures, provide doors that have a temperature-rise rating of 250 deg F (139 deg C) maximum in 30 minutes of fire exposure.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect doors during transit, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soiling, and deterioration. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Individually package doors in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
2. Comply with WIC's Technical Bulletin 420-R for delivery, storage, and handling of doors.

B. Mark each door with individual opening numbers used on Shop Drawings. Use removable tags or concealed markings.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until conditions for temperature and relative humidity have been stabilized and will be maintained in storage and installation areas during the remainder of the construction period to comply with requirements of the referenced quality standard for Project's geographical location.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Door manufacturer's warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Door Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit written agreement on door manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, agreeing to repair or replace defective doors that have warped (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section or that show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 75-mm) span, or do not comply with tolerances in referenced quality standard.

1. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
2. Warranty shall be in effect during the following period of time after the date of Substantial Completion:

    a. Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flush Wood Doors:

    a. Algoma Hardwoods Inc.
    b. Ampco Products, Inc.
    c. Buell Door Co.
    d. Chappell Door Co.
    e. Eagle Plywood & Door Manufacturing, Inc.
    f. Eggers Industries; Architectural Door Division.
    g. Graham Manufacturing Corp.
    h. Haley Brothers, Inc.
    i. Ideal Wood Products, Inc.
    j. IPIK Door Co., Inc.
    k. Marlite.
    l. Mohawk Flush Doors, Inc.
    m. Oshkosh Architectural Door Co.
    n. Poncraft Door Co.
    o. Vancouver Door Company, Inc.
    p. V-T Industries Inc.
    q. Weyerhaeuser Co.

### 2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

A. Doors for Transparent Finish: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Grade: Premium (Grade A faces).
2. Faces: (Clear White Birch)
3. Stiles: Same species as face.

B. Doors for Opaque Finish: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Grade: Premium.
2. Faces: Medium-density overlay over standard thickness, hardwood face veneers.

2.3 SOLID-CORE DOORS

A. Particleboard Cores: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1.
2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking at particleboard-core doors as follows:

a. 5-inch (125-mm) top-rail blocking, at doors indicated to have closers.
b. 5-inch (125-mm) midrail blocking, at doors indicated to have exit devices.

B. Interior Veneer-Faced Doors: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Core: Particleboard core.
2. Construction: Five or seven plies with stiles and rails bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

C. Fire-Rated Doors: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Construction: Construction and core specified above for type of face indicated or manufacturer's standard mineral-core construction as required to provide fire rating indicated.
2. Blocking: For mineral-core doors, provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire ratings indicated and as follows:

a. 5-inch (125-mm) top-rail blocking.
b. 5-inch (125-mm) bottom-rail blocking, at doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
c. 4-1/2-by-10-inch (114-by-250-mm) lock blocks.
d. 5-inch (125-mm) midrail blocking, at doors indicated to have exit devices.
e. As necessary to eliminate need for through-bolting hardware.

3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide manufacturer's standard laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance and with outer stile matching face veneer.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate flush wood doors in sizes indicated for Project site fitting.

B. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances and bevels, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting. Comply with requirements of NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

C. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
2. Metal Astragals: Premachine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.

D. Transom and Side Panels: Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces, and finish as specified for associated doors.

1. Fixed Transom Panels: Fabricate fixed panels with solid lumber transom bottom rail and door top rail, both rabbeted as indicated. Provide factory-installed spring bolts for concealed attachment into jambs of metal door frames.

E. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kind(s) of door(s) required.

1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.

## 2.5 FACTORY FINISHING

A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard's requirements for factory finishing.

B. Finish wood doors at factory.

C. Finish wood doors at factory that are indicated to receive transparent finish. Field finish wood doors indicated to receive opaque finish.

D. Opaque Finish: Comply with requirements indicated for grade, finish system, color, and sheen.

1. Grade: Premium.
2. Color and Finish: As selected by architect from factory full color range.
3. Sheen: Semigloss.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine installed door frames before hanging doors.

1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with plumb jambs and level heads.
2. Reject doors with defects.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."

B. Manufacturer's Written Instructions: Install wood doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, referenced quality standard, and as indicated.

1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.

C. Job-Fit Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted with fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining.

1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold.

a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) on lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation, if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING AND PROTECTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Finished Doors: Refinish or replace doors damaged during installation.

C. Protect doors as recommended by door manufacturer to ensure that wood doors are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08211

# SECTION 08410 - ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Exterior entrance systems.
2. Exterior storefront systems.

B. Related sections include the following:

1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants installed as part of aluminum entrance and storefront systems.
2. Division 8 Section "Glazing."
3. Division 8 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls."

### 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General: Provide aluminum entrance and storefront systems capable of withstanding loads and thermal and structural movement requirements indicated without failure, based on testing manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project. Failure includes the following:

1. Air infiltration and water penetration exceeding specified limits.
2. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movement, to glazing units.

B. Glazing: Physically and thermally isolate glazing from framing members.

C. Glazing-to-Glazing Joints: Provide glazing-to-glazing joints that accommodate thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and system, prevent glazing-to-glazing contact, and maintain required edge clearances.

D. Structural Silicone-Sealant Joints: Provide systems with structural silicone-sealant joints complying with the following requirements:

1. Tensile or shear stress in joints is less than 20 psi (138 kPa).
2. Structural sealant withstands tensile and shear stresses imposed by storefront systems without failing adhesively or cohesively. When tested for adhesive compatibility with each substrate and condition required, provide sealant that fails cohesively before it fails adhesively. Adhesive and cohesive failure are defined as follows:

a. Adhesive failure occurs when sealant pulls away from a substrate cleanly, leaving no sealant material behind.
b. Cohesive failure occurs when sealant breaks or tears within a joint but does not separate from each substrate because sealant-to-substrate bond strength exceeds sealant's internal strength.

E. Thermally Broken Construction: Provide systems that isolate aluminum exposed to exterior from aluminum exposed to interior with a material of low thermal conductance.

F. Wind Loads: Provide entrance and storefront systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding wind-load design pressures calculated according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction or the American Society of Civil Engineers' ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," 6.4.2, "Analytical Procedure," whichever are more stringent.

1. Deflection of framing members in a direction normal to wall plane is limited to 1/175 of clear span or 3/4 inch (19 mm), whichever is smaller, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Static-Pressure Test Performance: Provide entrance and storefront systems that do not evidence material failures, structural distress, failure of operating components to function normally, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of clear span when tested according to ASTM E 330.

a. Test Pressure: 150 percent of inward and outward wind-load design pressures.
b. Duration: As required by design wind velocity; fastest 1 mile (1.609 km) of wind for relevant exposure category.

G. Seismic Loads: Provide entrance and storefront systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions calculated according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction or ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," Section 9, "Earthquake Loads," whichever are more stringent.

H. Dead Loads: Provide entrance- and storefront-system members that do not deflect an amount which will reduce glazing bite below 75 percent of design dimension when carrying full dead load.

1. Provide a minimum 1/8-inch (3.18-mm) clearance between members and top of glazing or other fixed part immediately below.

I. Live Loads: Provide entrance and storefront systems, including anchorage, that accommodate the supporting structures' deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads indicated without failure of materials or permanent deformation.

J. Air Infiltration: Provide entrance and storefront systems with permanent resistance to air leakage through fixed glazing and frame areas of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s/sq. m) of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75.2 Pa).

K. Water Penetration: Provide entrance and storefront systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and frame areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at minimum differential pressure of 20 percent of inward-acting wind-load design pressure as defined by ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa). Water leakage is defined as follows:

1. Uncontrolled water infiltrating systems or appearing on systems' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.

L. Thermal Movements: Provide entrance and storefront systems, including anchorage, that accommodate thermal movements of systems and supporting elements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures without buckling, damaging stresses on glazing, failure of joint sealants, damaging loads on fasteners, failure of doors or other operating units to function properly, and other detrimental effects.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

M. Structural-Support Movement: Provide entrance and storefront systems that accommodate structural movements including, but not limited to, sway and deflection.

N. Condensation Resistance: Provide storefront systems with condensation resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 45 when tested according to AAMA 1503.1.

O. Average Thermal Conductance: Provide storefront systems with average U-values of not more than 0.63 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (3.57 W/sq. m x K) when tested according to AAMA 1503.1.

P. Dimensional Tolerances: Provide entrance and storefront systems that accommodate dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each product specified. Include details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For entrance and storefront systems. Show details of fabrication and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, provisions for expansion and contraction, and attachments to other work.

1. For entrance systems, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, quantities, and locations.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: Of each type of exposed finish required in manufacturer's standard sizes. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.

E. Cutaway Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal framing intersection of systems, made from minimum 6-inch (150-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:

1. Joinery.
2. Anchorage.
3. Expansion provisions.
4. Glazing.
5. Flashing and drainage.
6. Structural-sealant joints.

F. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements.

G. Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating that materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with sealants; include joint sealant manufacturers' written interpretation of test results relative to sealant performance and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed to obtain adhesion.

H. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with storefront systems' performance requirements.

I. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified independent testing agency, indicate compliance of entrance and storefront systems with requirements based on comprehensive testing of current systems.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer to assume engineering responsibility and perform work of this Section who has specialized in installing entrance and storefront systems similar to those required for this Project and who is acceptable to manufacturer.

1. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for entrance and storefront systems, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on Architect's evaluation of criteria conforming to ASTM E 699, that the independent testing agency has the experience and capability to satisfactorily conduct the testing indicated without delaying the Work.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of entrance and storefront system through one source from a single manufacturer.

D. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of entrance and storefront systems and are based on the specific systems indicated. Other manufacturers' systems with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effect, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval and only to the extent needed to comply with performance requirements. Where modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

E. Preconstruction Sealant Testing: Perform sealant manufacturers' standard tests for compatibility and adhesion of sealants with each material that will come in contact with sealants and each condition required by system.

1. Test a minimum of 8 samples of each metal, glazing, and other material.
2. Prepare samples using techniques and primers required for installed systems.
3. Perform tests under environmental conditions that duplicate those under which systems will be installed.
4. For materials that fail tests, determine corrective measures required to prepare each material to ensure compatibility with and adhesion of sealants, including, but not limited to, specially formulated primers. After performing these corrective measures on the minimum number of samples required for each material, retest materials.

F. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."

G. Mockups: Before installing entrance and storefront systems, construct mockups for each form of construction and finish required to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for completed Work.

1. Locate mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Notify Architect 7 days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before proceeding with installation of systems.
5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
   a. Approved mockups in an undisturbed condition at the time of Substantial Completion may become part of the completed Work.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating systems without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Warranty: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace components of entrance and storefront systems that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
2. Adhesive sealant failures.
3. Cohesive sealant failures.
4. Failure of system to meet performance requirements.
5. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
6. Failure of operating components to function normally.
7. Water leakage through fixed glazing and frame areas.

C. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Arch Amarlite.
2. Butler Manufacturing Company; Vistawall Architectural Products.
3. CMI Architectural Products, Inc.
4. Commercial Architectural Products, Inc.
5. EFCO Corporation.
6. International Aluminum Corporation; U.S. Aluminum.
7. Kawneer Company, Inc.
8. Pittco Architectural Metals, Inc.
9. Tajima Corporation.
10. Tubelite Architectural Systems.
11. WCI Company; Waltek.
12. YKK AP America Inc.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, complying with the requirements of standards indicated below.

1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
4. Bars, Rods, and Wire: ASTM B 211 (ASTM B 211M).
5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10.

B. Steel Reinforcement: Complying with ASTM A 36 (ASTM A 36M) for structural shapes, plates, and bars; ASTM A 611 for cold-rolled sheet and strip; or ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M) for hot-rolled sheet and strip.

C. Glazing as specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

D. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard pressure-glazing system of black, resilient glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers, fabricated from an elastomer of type and in hardness recommended by system and gasket manufacturer to comply with system performance requirements. Provide gasket assemblies that have corners sealed with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

E. Spacers, Setting Blocks, Gaskets, and Bond Breakers: Manufacturer's standard permanent, nonmigrating types in hardness recommended by manufacturer, compatible with sealants, and suitable for system performance requirements.

F. Structural Silicone Sealant: Type recommended by sealant and system manufacturers that complies with ASTM C 1184 requirements, is compatible with system components with which it comes in contact, and is specifically formulated and tested for use as a structural sealant.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
2. Tensile Strength: 100 psi (689.5 kPa) minimum.
3. Provide sealant with modulus of elasticity that will not allow movement of more than 25 percent of joint width, unless less movement is required by structural-sealant-glazed systems' design.
4. Use neutral-cure silicone sealant with insulating-glass units.

G. Secondary Sealant: For use as weatherseal, compatible with structural silicone sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact, and that accommodates a 50 percent increase or decrease in joint width at the time of application when measured according to ASTM C 719.
   1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
   2. Use neutral-cure silicone sealant with insulating-glass units.

H. Framing system gaskets, sealants, and joint fillers as recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

I. Sealants and joint fillers for joints at perimeter of entrance and storefront systems as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

J. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements, except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

## 2.3 COMPONENTS

A. Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard 1-3/4-inch- (44.5-mm-) thick glazed doors with minimum 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, extruded tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deep penetration and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie-rods.

   1. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Provide manufacturer's standard snap-on extruded-aluminum glazing stops and preformed gaskets.
   2. Stile Design: Medium stile; 3-1/2-inch (88.9-mm) nominal width.

B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Provide manufacturer's standard brackets and reinforcements that are compatible with adjacent materials. Provide nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

   1. Reinforce members as required to retain fastener threads.
   2. Do not use exposed fasteners, except for hardware application. For hardware application, use countersunk Phillips flat-head machine screws finished to match framing members or hardware being fastened, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing, compatible with adjacent materials, and of type recommended by manufacturer.

E. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, 0.018-inch- (0.457-mm-) thick stainless steel, complying with ASTM A 666, of type selected by manufacturer for compatibility with system.

F. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable weather stripping as follows:

   1. Compression Weather Stripping: Molded neoprene complying with ASTM D 2000 requirements.

## 2.4 HARDWARE

A. See specification section 08710.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, will have accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.
   1. Fabricate components for shear-block frame construction.

B. Forming: Form shapes with sharp profiles, straight and free of defects or deformations, before finishing.

C. Prepare components to receive concealed fasteners and anchor and connection devices.

D. Fabricate components to drain water passing joints and condensation and moisture occurring or migrating within the system to the exterior.

E. Welding: Weld components to comply with referenced AWS standard. Weld before finishing components to greatest extent possible. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

F. Glazing Channels: Provide minimum clearances for thickness and type of glass indicated according to FGMA's "Glazing Manual."

G. Metal Protection: Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

H. Storefront: Fabricate framing in profiles indicated for flush glazing (without projecting stops). Provide subframes and reinforcing of types indicated or, if not indicated, as required for a complete system. Factory assemble components to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

I. Entrances: Fabricate door framing in profiles indicated. Reinforce as required to support imposed loads. Factory assemble door and frame units and factory install hardware to greatest extent possible. Reinforce door and frame units as required for installing hardware indicated. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed hardware before finishing components.

   1. Exterior Doors: Provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops. At other locations, provide sliding weather stripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge.
   2. Interior Doors: Provide ANSI/BHMA A156.16 silencers at stops to prevent metal to metal contact. Provide 3 silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and 2 silencers on head of double-door frames.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Finish designations prefixed by AA conform to the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

D. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 607.1.
   1. Color: As selected by Architect from the full range of industry colors and color densities.

2.7 STEEL PRIMING

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying primer.

B. Surface Preparation: Perform manufacturer's standard cleaning operations to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel.

C. Priming: Apply manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of entrance and storefront systems. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for protecting, handling, and installing entrance and storefront systems. Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight.

B. Metal Protection: Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Install components to drain water passing joints and condensation and moisture occurring or migrating within the system to the exterior.

D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in a full sealant bed to provide weathertight construction, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

E. Install framing components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades without warp or rack of framing members.

F. Install entrances plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades without warp or rack. Lubricate operating hardware and other moving parts according to hardware manufacturers' written instructions.

1. Install surface-mounted hardware according to manufacturer's written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

G. Install glazing to comply with requirements of Division 8 Section "Glazing," unless otherwise indicated.

1. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
2. Install structural silicone sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Mechanically fasten glazing in place until structural sealant is cured.
4. Remove excess sealant from component surfaces before sealant has cured.

H. Install secondary-sealant weatherseal according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to provide weatherproof joints. Install joint fillers behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

I. Install perimeter sealant to comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," unless otherwise indicated.

J. Erection Tolerances: Install entrance and storefront systems to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Variation from Plane: Limit variation from plane or location shown to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.7 m); 1/4 inch (6 mm) over total length.
2. Alignment: Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm). Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
3. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8 inch (3 mm).

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field quality-control testing indicated.

B. Structural-Silicone-Sealant Adhesion Test: Test installed structural silicone sealant according to field adhesion test method described in AAMA CW #13, "Structural Sealant Glazing Systems (A Design Guide)."

1. Test a minimum of 2 areas.

C. Water Spray Test: After completing the installation of test areas indicated, test storefront system for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 requirements.

D. Repair or remove and replace Work that does not meet requirements or that is damaged by testing; replace to conform to specified requirements.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust doors and hardware to provide tight fit at contact points and weather stripping, smooth operation, and weathertight closure.

B. Remove excess sealant and glazing compounds, and dirt from surfaces.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure entrance and storefront systems are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08410

# SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Commercial door hardware for the following:

   a. Swinging doors.
   b. Fire-rated swinging doors.
   c. Other doors to the extent indicated.

2. Cylinders for doors specified in other Sections.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames"
2. Division 08 Section "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
3. Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors"

C. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following. Coordinating, purchasing, delivering, and scheduling remain requirements of this Section.

1. Thresholds, weather stripping, and cylinders for locks specified in other Sections.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction and installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Samples for Verification: For exposed door hardware of each type, in specified finish, full size. Tag with full description for coordination with the door hardware sets. Submit Samples before, or concurrent with, submission of the final door hardware sets, if requested.

1. Samples will be returned to Contractor. Units that are acceptable and remain undamaged through submittal, review, and field comparison process may, after final check of operation, be incorporated into the Work, within limitations of keying requirements.

C. Qualification Data: For Installer.

D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for locks, latches, and closers as requested.

E. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals. Include final hardware and keying schedule.

F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

G. Door Hardware Sets: Prepared by or under the supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final door hardware sets with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.

1. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in the Contract Documents.
2. Content: Include the following information:

a. Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, and material of each door and frame.
b. Type, style, function, size, quantity, and finish of each door hardware item.
c. Complete designations of every item required for each door or opening including name and manufacturer.
d. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
e. Location of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
f. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
g. Mounting locations for door hardware.
h. Door and frame sizes and materials.
i. Description of each electrified door hardware function, including location, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems.

1) Sequence of Operation: Include description of component functions that occur in the following situations: authorized person wants to enter; authorized person wants to exit; unauthorized person wants to enter; unauthorized person wants to exit.

j. List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.

3. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final door hardware sets at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the door hardware sets must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the door hardware sets.

H. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by lock manufacturer.

1. Installer's responsibilities include supplying and installing door hardware and providing a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
2. Installer shall have warehousing facilities in Project's vicinity.
3. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.

4. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

B. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A person who is currently certified by DHI as an Architectural Hardware Consultant and who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware from a single manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.

D. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 and UBC Standard 7-2.

1. Test Pressure: After 5 minutes into the test, neutral pressure level in furnace shall be established at 40 inches (1016 mm) or less above the sill.

E. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." In addition to Owner, Construction Manager, Contractor, and Architect, conference participants shall also include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant and Owner's Security Consultant. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
2. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
3. Requirements for key control system.
4. Address for delivery of keys.

F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.

B. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final door hardware sets, and include basic installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.

C. Deliver keys to Owner's Representative by registered mail or overnight package service.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of recessed hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Templates: Distribute door hardware templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing door hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

C. Coordinate with aluminum entrance door supplier for door hardware installation.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
b. Faulty operation of operators and door hardware.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.

2. Warranty Period: Three (3) years from date of Substantial Completion, except as follows:

a. Exit Devices: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.
b. Manual Closers: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

B. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six (6) months' full maintenance by skilled employees of door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door hardware operation. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original products.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Products:

a. Finish: Shall be US26D, unless otherwise noted.
b. Manufacture Standard:

1) Butts: Hager, McKinney, Stanley, Ives*
2) Locksets: Best*, Sargent*, Schlage
3) Closers: LCN*, Sargent
4) Exit Devices: Von Duprin, Sargent*

5) Trim: BBW, Rockwood, Hager, Ives*
6) Weatherstrip: Pemko, Hager, National Guard*
7) Continuous Hinges: HagerRoton, Markar, Ives*
8) Magnetic Door Holders: Rixson, LCN*
9) Rem Mullion: Von Duprin, Sargent*

B. Substitution requests will be made in accordance with Division 01 requirements.

## 2.2 SCHEDULED HARDWARE

A. Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of finish hardware are indicated in the "Hardware Schedule" at the end of this Section. Products are identified by using hardware designation numbers of the following:

1. Manufacturer's Product Designations: The product designation and name of one manufacturer are listed for each hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Provide either the product designated or, where more than one manufacturer is specified under the Article "Manufacturers" in Part 2 for each hardware type, the comparable product of one of the other manufacturers that complies with requirements.

2. ANSI/BHMA designations used elsewhere in this Section or in schedules to describe hardware items or to define quality or function are derived from the following standards. Provide products complying with these standards and requirements specified elsewhere in this Section.

a. Butts and Hinges: ANSI A156.1.
b. Bored and Preassembled Locks and Latches: ANSI/BHMA A156.2.
c. Exit Devices: ANSI A156.3.
d. Door Controls - Closers: ANSI A156.4. 180 degree swing only!
e. Auxiliary Locks and Associated Products: ANSI/BHMA A156.5.
f. Architectural Door Trim: ANSI A156.6.
g. Template Hinge Dimensions: ANSI A156.7.
h. Door Controls - Overhead Holders: ANSI A156.8.
i. Mortise Locks and Latches: ANSI A156.13.
j. Closer Holder Release Devices: ANSI A156.15.
k. Auxiliary Hardware: ANSI A156.16.
l. Self-Closing Hinges and Pivots: ANSI A156.17.
m. Materials and Finishes: ANSI A156.18.

## 2.3 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

A. Base Metals: Produce hardware units of basic metal and forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness, but in no case of lesser (commercially recognized) quality than specified for applicable hardware units by applicable ANSI/BHMA A156 series standards for each type of hardware item and with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for finish designations indicated. Do not furnish "optional" materials or forming methods for those indicated, except as otherwise specified.

B. Fasteners: Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation. Do not provide hardware that has been prepared for self-tapping sheet metal screws, except as specifically indicated.

C. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Provide Phillips flat-head screws except as otherwise indicated. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work as closely as possible including "prepared for paint" surfaces to receive painted finish.

D. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units that are exposed when door is closed except to the extent no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless their use is the only means of reinforcing the work adequately to fasten the hardware securely. Where thru-bolts are used as a means of reinforcing the work, provide sleeves for each thru-bolt or use sex screw fasteners.

## 2.4 HINGES, GENERAL

A. Quantity: Provide the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Two Hinges: For doors with heights up to 60 inches.
2. Three Hinges: For doors with heights 61 to 90 inches.

B. Template Requirements: Except for hinges and pivots to be installed entirely (both leaves) into wood doors and frames, provide only template-produced units.

C. Hinge Weight: As indicated in hardware sets.

D. Hinge Base Metal: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:

1. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin.
2. Interior Hinges: Steel with steel pin.
3. Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: Steel with steel pin.

E. Hinge Options: Where indicated in door hardware sets or on Drawings:

1. Safety Stud: Designed for stud in one leaf to engage hole in opposing leaf.
2. Nonremovable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while door is closed; for outswinging doors.
3. Corners: Square.

F. Fasteners: Comply with the following:

1. Machine Screws: For metal doors and frames. Install into drilled and tapped holes.
2. Wood Screws: For wood doors and frames.
3. Threaded-to-the-Head Wood Screws: For fire-rated wood doors.

## 2.5 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Hinges shall be a geared continuous hinge utilizing a single gear section for the door leaf and a separate gear section for the frame side of the door. The door leaf and jamb leaf shall fully mortised where scheduled, and full surface where scheduled.. Geared hinges are to be certified to ANSI 156.25, Grade 2 and UL 10C tested and approved for 90 minutes.

## 2.6 LOCKS, LATCHES, AND BOLTS

A. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard wrought box strike for each latch or lock bolt, with curved lip extended to protect frame, finished to match hardware set, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Lock Throw: Provide 5/8-inch (16-mm) minimum throw of latch on pairs of doors. Comply with UL requirements for throw of bolts and latch bolts on rated fire openings.

C. Flush Bolt Heads: Minimum of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter rods of brass, bronze, or stainless steel with minimum 12-inch- (300-mm-) long rod for doors up to 84 inches (2100 mm) in height. Provide longer rods as necessary for doors exceeding 84 inches (2100 mm) in height.

D. Cylindrical Locks - ANSI A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1 Strength and Operational requirements. Meets A117.1 Accessibility Codes. Latch bolts shall be steel with minimum ½" throw, deadlocking on keyed and exterior functions. ¾" throw anti-friction latchbolt on pairs of fire doors.. Lock case shall be steel. Provide 5/8" minimum throw of latch and deadbolt used on pairs of doors.

E. Lockset Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide locksets of the following approved manufacturers:

1. Best 93K Series
2. Sargent 10 Line
3. Schlage ND Series

## 2.7 KEYING REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Supplier will meet with Owner to finalize keying requirements and obtain final instructions in writing.

B. Review the keying system with the Owner and provide the type required, master, grandmaster or great-grandmaster integrated with Owner's existing system. If key pinning charts are required, owner to furnish charts to hardware supplier.

C. Furnish temporary keyed cores for the construction period, and remove these when directed. The construction cores remain property of the supplier and shall be returned to the supplier when they are removed. Contractor shall install the permanent cores in the presence of the owner's representative.

D. Permanent Keys: Secured shipment direct from point of origination to Owner's Representative

1. For estimate: 2 keys per change combination, 5 master keys per group, 5 grand-master keys, 3 control keys.

## 2.8 PUSH/PULL UNITS

A. Exposed Fasteners: Provide manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners for installation, thru-bolted.

## 2.9 CLOSERS

A. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural Transportations Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)."

1. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:

a. Interior, Non-fire-rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.

b. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).

B. Door Closers for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Door closers shall not require more than 30 lbf to set door in motion and not more than 15lbf to open door to minimum required width.

C. Cylinder: Shall be of high strength cast iron construction. All door exterior closers shall be tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 test requirements by a BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. A written certification showing successful completion of a minimum of 10,000,000 cycles for all exterior door closers must be provided. Cylinder shall have been manufactured and in the marketplace for a minimum of 10 years

D. Size of Units: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

E. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4 Grade 1. Provide type of arm required for closer to be located on non-public side of door, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Full rack-and-pinion type cylinder with removable non-ferrous cover and cast iron body. Heat-treated pinion shaft, single piece forged piston, chrome silicon steel spring.
2. Thru-bolts at wood doors unless doors are provided with closer blocking. Non-sized, non-handed, and adjustable. Place closer inside building, stairs, and rooms.
3. Plates, brackets and special templating when needed for interface with particular header, door and wall conditions and neighboring hardware.
4. Opening pressure: Exterior doors 8.5 lb., interior doors 5 lb., labeled fire doors 15 lb.
5. Separate adjusting valves for closing speed, latching speed and backcheck, fourth valve for delayed action where scheduled.
6. Extra-duty arms at exterior doors scheduled with parallel arm units.
7. Exterior doors do not require seasonal adjustments in temperatures from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F, furnish data on request.
8. Non-flaming fluid will not fuel door or floor covering fires.

F. Surface closer Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide closer of the following approved manufacturers:

1. LCN 4041 Series
2. Sargent 281 Series

## 2.10 EXIT DEVICES/PANIC HARDWARE

A. General features: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.

B. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural Transportations Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)."

1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.

C. Exit Devices for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Exit devices shall not require more than 15lbf to release the latch. Locks shall not require use of a key, tool of special knowledge for operation.

D. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to AHJ for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.

1. Push-through touch pad design. No exposed touch bar fasteners, no exposed cavities when operated. Return stroke sound dampeners.
2. No exposed screws to show through glass doors.
3. Non-handed basic device design with center case interchangeable with all functions, no extra parts required to effect change of function.

E. Specific features:

1. Non-Fire Rated Devices: As scheduled in hardware sets.
2. Lever Trim: Vandal resistant, forged brass or bronze escutcheon min .130" thickness, match lockset lever design.
3. Fire-Labeled Devices: UL label indicating "Fire Exit Hardware". Vertical rod devices less bottom rod (LBR) unless otherwise scheduled.
4. Electrically Operated Devices: Single manufacturer source for electric latch retraction devices, electrically controlled trim, power transfers, power supplies, monitoring switches and controls.
5. Furnish all exit devices with deadlocking latchbolts.
6. End caps shall be of heavy-duty metal alloy construction and provide horizontal adjustment to provide flush alignment with device cover plate. When device end cap is installed, no raised edges will protrude. End cap shall be cast metal or forged aluminum and have a minimum thickness of (.250"). Plastic or metal stamping will not be acceptable.
7. Provide all shim kits and filler plates to allow flush mounting of exit devices on all types of doors used in this project.
8. Removable Mullions: Removable with single turn of building key. Securely reinstalled without need for key.

F. Exit Device Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide exit devices of the following approved manufacturers:

1. Sargent 19-43-GL-80 Series, freewheeling where levers are used.
2. Von Duprin 98 Series

## 2.11 TRIM AND STOPS

A. Kick plates, mop plates, and armor plates, shall be .050 gauge with 32D finish. Kick plates to be 10" high, mop plates to be 5" high. All plates shall be two (2) inches less full width of door.

B. Push plates, pull plates, door pulls, and miscellaneous door trim shall be shown in the hardware schedule.

C. Doorstops shall be furnished for all doors to prevent damage to doors or hardware from striking adjacent walls or fixtures. Wall stops are preferred. Floor stops are used only where noted in hardware schedule. Where conditions prohibit the use wall type stops, furnish overhead stops either surface mounted or concealed as noted in hardware sets.

2.12 WEATHERSTRIPPING AND SEALS

A. General: Provide continuous weatherstripping on exterior doors and smoke, light, or sound seals on interior doors where indicated or scheduled. Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

2.13 THRESHOLDS

A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide standard metal threshold unit of type, size, and profile as shown or scheduled.

2.14 HARDWARE FINISHES

A. Match items to the manufacturer's standard color and texture finish for the latch and locksets (or push-pull units if no latch or lock sets).

B. Provide finishes that match those established by BHMA or, if none established, match the Architect's sample.

C. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware.

D. The designations used in schedules and elsewhere to indicate hardware finishes are those listed in ANSI/BHMA A156.18, "Materials and Finishes," including coordination with the traditional U.S. finishes shown by certain manufacturers for their products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Steel Doors and Frames: Comply with DHI A115 Series.

1. Surface-Applied Door Hardware: Drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI A250.6.

B. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI A115-W Series.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Pre-installation conference shall be conducted prior to installation of hardware at Project site. Meet with the, Owner, Contractor, installer, and manufacturers representatives. A separate pre-installation conference shall be conducted prior to the installation of electronic security hardware with the electrical contractor Review catalogs, brochures, templates, installation instructions, and the approved hardware schedule. Survey installation procedures and workmanship, with special emphasis on unusual conditions, as to ensure correct technique of installation, and coordination with other work. Notify participants at least ten, 10 working days before conference.

B. Hardware Installers must have a minimum of five (5) years experience in installation of hardware. Provide verification of installer's qualification to Consultant for approval. All installers to attend review meetings with the hardware distributor.

C. Install hardware using only manufacturer supplied and approved fasteners in strict adherence with manufacturers published installation instructions.

D. Install head seal prior to installation of "PA"-parallel arm mounted door closers and push side mounted door stops/holders. Trim, cut and notch thresholds and saddles neatly to minimally fit the profile of the door frame. Install thresholds and saddles in a bed of caulking completely sealing the underside from water and air penetration.

E. Counter sink through bolt of door pull under push plate during installation.

F. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated, as follows, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Builders' Hardware for Custom Steel Doors and Frames."
3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."

G. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 09 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.

1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.

H. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended.

Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

1. Door Closers: Unless otherwise required by authorities having jurisdiction, adjust sweep period so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.

B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately six months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust, including adjusting operating forces, each item of door hardware as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware and door hardware finishes. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

## 3.7 DOOR HARDWARE SETS

HW SET: 01

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | ALL HARDWARE BY DOOR MFG | | B/O |

HW SET: 02

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK | 93K7D 15D | 626 | BES |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 SCUSH X TB | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE | 8400 10" X 2" LDW | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | SET | SEALS | 700SA (DO NOT CUT AROUND CLOSER BRACKET) | AL | NGP |
| 1 | EA | DOOR SWEEP | C627A | AL | NGP |
| 1 | EA | THRESHOLD | 425HD | AL | NGP |

HW SET: 03

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK | 10-28-10G04 LL (2-3/4 LATCH, ANSI STRIKE) | 626 | SAR |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 EDA X TB | 689 | LCN |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE | 8400 10" X 2" LDW | 630 IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP | WS407CCV | 630 IVE |
| 1 | SET | SEALS | 2525B | BRN NGP |

HW SET: 04

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP | 652 IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK | 93K7D 15D | 626 BES |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 EDA X TB | 689 LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE | 8400 10" X 2" LDW | 630 IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP | WS407CCV | 630 IVE |
| 1 | SET | SEALS | 2525B | BRN NGP |

HW SET: 05 - NOT USED

HW SET: 06

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 | 652 IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK | 93K7D 15D | 626 BES |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 HEDA X TB | 689 LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE | 8400 10" X 2" LDW | 630 IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP | WS407CCV | 630 IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER | SR64 | GRY IVE |

HW SET: 07

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 | 652 IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK | 10-28-10G04 LL (2-3/4 LATCH, ANSI STRIKE) | 626 SAR |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 HEDA X TB | 689 LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE | 8400 10" X 2" LDW | 630 IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP | WS407CCV | 630 IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER | SR64 | GRY IVE |

HW SET: 08

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP | 652 IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK | 93K7D 15D | 626 BES |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP | WS407CCV | 630 IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER | SR64 | GRY IVE |

HW SET: 09

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 | 652 IVE |
| 1 | EA | ENTRANCE LOCK | 10-28-10G05 LL (2-3/4 LATCH, ANSI STRIKE) | 626 SAR |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP | WS407CCV | 630 IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER | SR64 | GRY IVE |

HW SET: 10

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | ENTRANCE LOCK | 10-28-10G05 LL (2-3/4 LATCH, ANSI STRIKE) | 626 | SAR |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 EDA X TB | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE | 8400 10" X 2" LDW | 612 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP | WS407CCV | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER | SR64 | GRY | IVE |

HW SET: 11

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | EA | HINGE | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | CLASSROOM DEADBOLT | 487 LL (2-3/4 DB, 2-3/4 DB STRIKE) | 626 | SAR |
| 1 | EA | PUSH PLATE | 8200 6" X 16" | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | PULL PLATE | 8305-0 4" X 16" | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 EDA X TB | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE | 8400 10" X 2" LDW | 612 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP | WS407CCV | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER | SR64 | GRY | IVE |

HW SET: AL-01

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | EA | CONTINUOUS HINGE | 112HD | 628 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | EXIT DEVICE | 19-43-GL-8863 FLL X TB | 626 | SAR |
| 1 | EA | RIM CYLINDER | 34 | 626 | SAR |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 EDA X TB X 18PA | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | OVERHEAD STOP | 100S-ADJ | 630 | GLY |
| 1 | | | THRESHOLD AND PERIMETER SEAL BY DOOR MFG | | B/O |

HW SET: AL-02

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | EA | CONTINUOUS HINGE | 112HD | 628 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | DUMMY RAIL X TRIM | 19-43-8893 X 874 FLLDT | 626 | SAR |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4041 EDA X TB X 18PA | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | OVERHEAD STOP | 100S-ADJ | 630 | GLY |
| 1 | | | THRESHOLD AND PERIMETER SEAL BY DOOR MFG | | B/O |

# SECTION 08800 - GLAZING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:

1. Windows.
2. Doors.
3. Glazed curtain walls.
4. Storefront framing.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 10 Section "Toilet Accessories" for mirrored glass at toilet room locations.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Manufacturer: A firm that produces primary glass or fabricated glass as defined in referenced glazing publications.

B. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.

C. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.

D. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of the hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Glass Design: Glass thicknesses indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites for various size openings in nominal thicknesses indicated, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:

   a. Specified Design Wind Loads: As indicated within Structural Drawings.
   b. Specified Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour (meters per second) at 33 feet (10 m) above grade, according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.4.2, "Analytic Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
   c. Specified Design Snow Loads: As indicated, but not less than snow loads applicable to Project, required by ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 7, "Snow Loads."
   d. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.

      1) Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.

   e. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For the following types of glass supported on all four edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/50 times the short side length or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is less.

      1) For monolithic-glass lites heat treated to resist wind loads.
      2) For insulating glass.
      3) For laminated-glass lites.

   f. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6 mm.
   g. Thickness of Tinted and Heat-Absorbing Glass: Provide the same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:

1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick and a nominal 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide interspace.
3. Center-of-Glass U-Values: NFRC 100 methodology using LBL-35298 WINDOW 4.1 computer program, expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
4. Center-of-Glass Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200 methodology using LBL-35298 WINDOW 4.1 computer program.
5. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.

B. Samples: For the following products, in the form of 12-inch- (300-mm-) square Samples for glass and of 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples for sealants. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.

C. Samples: For the following products, in the form of 12-inch- (300-mm-) square Samples for glass.

1. Each color of tinted float glass.
2. Coated vision glass.
3. Insulating glass for each designation indicated.
4. For each color (except black) of exposed glazing sealant indicated.

D. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.

E. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

F. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

G. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer indicating glazing sealants were tested for adhesion to glass and glazing channel substrates and for compatibility with glass and other glazing materials.

H. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating the following products comply with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products:

1. Tinted float glass.
2. Coated float glass.
3. Insulating glass.
4. Glazing sealants.
5. Glazing gaskets.

I. SWRI Validation Certificate: For each elastomeric glazing sealant specified to be validated by SWRI's Sealant Validation Program.

J. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in glass installations with a record of successful in-service performance; and who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association Glazier Certification Program as Level 2 (Senior Glaziers) or Level 3 (Master Glaziers).

B. Source Limitations for Clear Glass: Obtain clear float glass from one primary-glass manufacturer.

C. Source Limitations for Tinted Glass: Obtain tinted, heat-absorbing, and light-reducing float glass from one primary-glass manufacturer for each tint color indicated.

D. Source Limitations for Coated Glass: Obtain coated glass from one manufacturer for each type of coating and each type and class of float glass indicated.

E. Source Limitations for Insulating Glass: Obtain insulating-glass units from one manufacturer using the same type of glass and other components for each type of unit indicated.

F. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain glazing accessories from one source for each product and installation method indicated.

G. Glass Product Testing: Obtain glass test results for product test reports in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing glass products.

1. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
2. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.

H. Elastomeric Glazing Sealant Product Testing: Obtain sealant test results for product test reports in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing current sealant formulations within a 36-month period.

1. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
2. Test elastomeric glazing sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
3. Test elastomeric glazing sealants according to SWRI's Sealant Validation Program for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920 for adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement, adhesion-in-peel, and indentation hardness.

I. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Submit to elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of each glass type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member that will contact or affect elastomeric glazing sealants.

1. Use manufacturer's standard test methods to determine whether priming and other specific preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.

    a. Perform tests under normal environmental conditions replicating those that will exist during installation.

2. Submit not fewer than nine pieces of each type and finish of glass-framing members and each type, class, kind, condition, and form of glass (monolithic, laminated, and insulating units) as well as one sample of each glazing accessory (gaskets, tape sealants, setting blocks, and spacers).
3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
4. For materials failing tests, obtain sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including the use of specially formulated primers.
5. Testing will not be required if elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers submit data based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, glazing materials matching those submitted.

J. Safety Glass: Category II materials complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and ANSI Z97.1.

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, permanently mark safety glass with certification label of Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

K. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1. SIGMA Publications: SIGMA TM-3000, "Vertical Glazing Guidelines," and SIGMA TB-3001, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."

L. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following inspecting and testing agency:

1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.
2. Associated Laboratories, Inc.
3. National Accreditation and Management Institute.

M. Mockups: Before glazing, build mockups for each glass product indicated below to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:

1. Build mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Build mockups with the following kinds of glass to match glazing systems required for Project, including typical lite size, framing systems, and glazing methods:

    a. Heat-strengthened coated glass.
    b. Fully tempered glass.
    c. Spandrel glass.
    d. Coated insulating glass.

3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting fabrication.
5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
6. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

N. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic seal ruptures.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

1. Do not install liquid glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

1.9 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Coated-Glass Products: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for those coated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products indicated in schedules at the end of Part 3.

2.2 PRIMARY FLOAT GLASS

A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent glass, flat), Quality q3 (glazing select); class as indicated in schedules at the end of Part 3.

2.3 HEAT-TREATED FLOAT GLASS

A. Fabrication Process: By vertical (tong-held) or horizontal (roller-hearth) process, at manufacturer's option, except provide horizontal process where indicated as tongless or free of tong marks.

B. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I (transparent glass, flat); Quality q3 (glazing select); class, kind, and condition as indicated in schedules at the end of Part 3.

## 2.4 COATED FLOAT GLASS

A. General: Provide coated glass complying with requirements indicated in this Article and in schedules at the end of Part 3.

1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) coated float glass in place of coated annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) where safety glass is indicated.
2. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) coated float glass, except provide Kind FT (fully tempered) products where coated safety glass is indicated.

B. Pyrolytic-Coated Float Glass: Float glass with solar-reflective metallic-oxide coating applied by pyrolytic deposition process during initial manufacture, complying with requirements specified in schedules at the end of Part 3.

C. Sputter-Coated Float Glass: Float glass with metallic-oxide or metallic-nitride coating deposited by vacuum deposition process after manufacture and heat treatment (if any), complying with requirements specified in schedules at the end of Part 3.

D. Coated Spandrel Float Glass: Float glass complying with requirements specified in monolithic glass schedules at the end of Part 3 and the following:

1. Fallout Resistance: Provide spandrel units identical to those passing the fallout-resistance test for spandrel glass specified in ASTM C 1048.
2. Factory apply manufacturer's standard opacifier of the following material to coated second surface of lites, with resulting products complying with GTA 89-1-6.

a. Manufacturer's standard opacifier material.
b. Polyester film laminated to glass with solvent-based adhesive.

## 2.5 INSULATING GLASS

A. Insulating-Glass Units: Preassembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA units and with requirements specified in this Article and in the Insulating-Glass Schedule at the end of Part 3.

1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) where safety glass is indicated.

B. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated in the Insulating-Glass Schedule at the end of Part 3 are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.

C. Sealing System: Dual seal, with primary and secondary sealants as follows:

1. Manufacturer's standard sealants.

D. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction complying with the following requirements:

1. Aluminum with clear-anodized finish.
2. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
3. Corner Construction: Manufacturer's standard corner construction.

## 2.6 ELASTOMERIC GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:

1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range for this characteristic.

B. Elastomeric Glazing Sealant Standard: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied, chemically curing sealant in the Glazing Sealant Schedule at the end of Part 3, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses.

1. Additional Movement Capability: Where additional movement capability is specified in the Glazing Sealant Schedule, provide products with the capability, when tested for adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C 719, to withstand the specified percentage change in the joint width existing at time of installation and remain in compliance with other requirements in ASTM C 920 for uses indicated.

## 2.7 GLAZING GASKETS

A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below, complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:

1. Neoprene, ASTM C 864.
2. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
3. Silicone, ASTM C 1115.
4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM C 1115.
5. Any material indicated above.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.

E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

## 2.9 FABRICATION OF GLASS AND OTHER GLAZING PRODUCTS

A. Fabricate glass and other glazing products in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing standard, to comply with system performance requirements.

B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with indoor and outdoor faces.

C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:

1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

## 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.

C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.

E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

G. Provide spacers for glass lites where the length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm) as follows:

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.

K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

## 3.4 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

A. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with stretch allowance during installation.

B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.

C. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

## 3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.

B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove them immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.

C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for build-up of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended by glass manufacturer.

D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in any way, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended by glass manufacturer.

## 3.6 MONOLITHIC FLOAT-GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Uncoated Clear Float Glass: Where glass as designated below is indicated, provide Type I (transparent glass, flat), Class 1 (clear) glass lites complying with the following:

1. Uncoated Clear Annealed Float Glass: Annealed or Kind HS (heat strengthened), Condition A (uncoated surfaces) where heat strengthening is required to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with performance requirements.
2. Uncoated Clear Fully Tempered Float Glass: Kind FT (fully tempered) as required by drawings.

## 3.7 INSULATING-GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Low-E Insulating Glass: Where glass of this designation is indicated, provide uncoated insulating-glass units complying with the following:

1. Products: Provide the following (or pre-approved equal):

   a. PPG – Solexia – Sungate 500, Low E

2. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: 1" Overall thickness with (2) ¼" lites each and ½" air space.
3. Interspace Content: Air
4. Visible Light Transmittance: 64%
5. Winter Night time U-Value: 0.35
6. Shading Coefficient: 0.51
7. Light to Solar Gain Ratio: 1.42

## 3.8 GLAZING SEALANT SCHEDULE

A. Low-Modulus Nonacid-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant: Where glazing sealants of this designation are indicated, provide products complying with the following:

1. Products: Available products include the following:

    a. 790; Dow Corning.
    b. Silpruf; GE Silicones.
    c. UltraPruf SCS2300; GE Silicones.
    d. HiFlex 331; NUCO Industries, Inc.
    e. NuFlex 309; NUCO Industries, Inc.
    f. VP 275; Ohio Sealants, Inc.
    g. 864; Pecora Corporation.
    h. PSI-641; Polymeric Systems, Inc.
    i. Omniseal; Sonneborn, Div of ChemRex, Inc.
    j. Spectrem 1; Tremco.

2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Additional Movement Capability: 100 percent movement in extension and 50 percent movement in compression for a total of 150 percent movement.
5. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
6. Uses Related to Glazing Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to glazing substrates indicated, O.

B. Medium-Modulus Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant: Where glazing sealants of this designation are indicated, provide products complying with the following:

1. Products: Available products include the following:

    a. 791; Dow Corning.
    b. 795; Dow Corning.
    c. HiFlex 393; NUCO Industries, Inc.
    d. PSI-631; Polymeric Systems, Inc.
    e. SM5731 Poly-Glaze; Schnee-Morehead, Inc.
    f. SM5733 Poly-Glaze; Schnee-Morehead, Inc.
    g. Spectrem 2; Tremco.
    h. Tremsil 600; Tremco.

2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Glazing Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to glazing substrates indicated, O.

END OF SECTION 08800

# SECTION 08920 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Glazed aluminum curtain wall, unit-and-mullion system installation.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for insulation materials and firesafing field installed in conjunction with glazed aluminum curtain wall system.
2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants installed as part of glazed aluminum curtain wall system.
3. Division 8 Section "Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts."
4. Division 8 Section "Glazing."

### 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system that has the following capabilities based on pre-construction testing:

1. Withstands loads and thermal and structural movement requirements indicated without failure. Failure includes the following:

a. Air infiltration and water penetration exceeding specified limits.
b. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movement, to glazing units.

B. Glazing is physically and thermally isolated from framing members.

C. System is pressure equalized at its interior face.

D. System is reglazable from the interior, except spandrel glazing or panels are reglazable from the exterior.

E. Wind Loads: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system, including anchorage, capable of withstanding wind-load design pressures calculated according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction or the American Society of Civil Engineers' ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," 6.4.2, "Analytical Procedure," whichever are more stringent.

1. Sidesway (Story Drift): Accommodate building story drift when wind loads effect maximum overturning moment. Calculate story drift according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Deflection of framing members in a direction normal to wall plane is limited to 1/360 of clear span, 3/4 inches (19 mm) maximum, where plaster or gypsum board surfaces are subject to bending.
3. Deflection of framing members overhanging an anchor point is limited to 2 times the length of the cantilevered member, divided by 175.
4. Test Performance: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system that does not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of clear span when tested according to ASTM E 330.

    a. Test Pressure: 150 percent of inward and outward wind-load design pressures.
    b. Duration: As required by design wind velocity; fastest 1 mile (1.609 km) of wind for relevant exposure category.

F. Seismic Loads: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system, including anchorage, capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions calculated according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction or ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," Section 9, "Earthquake Loads," whichever are more stringent.

G. Dead Loads: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system members that do not deflect an amount which will reduce glazing bite below 75 percent of design dimension when carrying full dead load. Provide a minimum 1/8-inch (3.18-mm) clearance between members and top of fixed panels, glazing, or other fixed part immediately below. Provide a minimum 1/16-inch (1.59-mm) clearance between members and operable windows and doors.

H. Live Loads: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system, including anchorage, that accommodates supporting structure's deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads indicated without failure of materials or permanent deformation.

I. Air Infiltration: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system with permanent resistance to air leakage through system of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s/sq. m) of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa).

1. Provide operable windows with permanent resistance to air leakage complying with AAMA 101 requirements for types of windows indicated.

J. Water Penetration: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system that does not evidence water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward acting wind-load design pressure as defined by ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," but not less than 10 lbf/sq. ft. (479 Pa). Water leakage is defined as follows:

1. According to AAMA 501.1.
2. Uncontrolled water infiltrating system or appearing on system's normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.

K. Thermal Movements: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system, including anchorage, that accommodates thermal movements of system and supporting elements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures without buckling, damaging stresses on glazing, failure of joint sealants, damaging loads on fasteners, noise or vibration, and other detrimental effects.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

L. Structural Support Movement: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system that accommodates structural movements including, but not limited to, sway, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection.

M. Condensation Resistance: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system with condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 55 when tested according to AAMA 1503.1.

N. Average Thermal Conductance: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system with an average U-value of not more than 0.66 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (3.75 W/sq. m x K) when tested according to AAMA 1503.1.

O. Dimensional Tolerances: Provide glazed aluminum curtain wall system, including anchorage, that accommodates dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each product specified, including details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings showing fabrication and installation of glazed aluminum curtain wall system including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other units of Work.

1. For installed products indicated to comply with certain design loadings, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

D. Samples for initial selection in the form of manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for components with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for verification of each type of exposed finish required in manufacturer's standard sizes. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.

F. Cutaway Sample of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of system, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:

1. Joinery.
2. Anchorage.
3. Expansion provisions.
4. Glazing.
5. Flashing and drainage.

G. Welder certificates indicating that welders comply with requirements specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Installer certificates signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with requirements in "Quality Assurance" Article.

I. Preconstruction test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance with performance requirements of glazed aluminum curtain wall system.

J. Product test reports from a qualified independent testing agency evidencing compliance of glazed aluminum curtain wall system with requirements based on comprehensive testing of manufacturer's current system.

K. Field test reports from a qualified independent inspecting and testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance with performance requirements of glazed aluminum curtain wall system.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. At the time of submitting project bid to architect submit data and concept drawing to substantiate system type, engineering requirements, performance criteria and installer qualifications as designated by this specification. The architect reserves the right to reject and bid based on non-conformance to this specification or to drawings as judged solely by the architect.

- Submit concept drawings indicating system type, profiles, size and configuration that meet the architectural intent as indicated in the bid documents.
- Submit test reports from a qualified independent testing agency evidencing compliance with the performance requirements of the specifications for each system proposed.
- Submit engineering calculations as applicable pre-engineered data that substantiaites the system proposed, meet required wind and seismic parameters of the specifications.
- Submit certificate stating that the manufacturer and installer has 5 years experience in comparable dollar volume, scope and complexity of work as this proposed project.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: To qualify for approval, an independent testing agency must demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on evaluation of agency-submitted criteria conforming to ASTM E 699, that it has the experience and capability to satisfactorily conduct the testing indicated without delaying the Work.

C. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of glazed aluminum curtain wall systems that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

D. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer to assume engineering responsibility and perform work of this Section who has specialized in installing glazed aluminum curtain wall systems similar to those required for this Project and who is acceptable to manufacturer.

1. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a qualified professional engineer to prepare or supervise the preparation of data for glazed aluminum curtain wall systems, including drawings, testing program development, test-result interpretation, and comprehensive engineering analysis that shows systems' compliance with specified requirements.
2. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for glazed aluminum curtain wall systems, including drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of glazed aluminum curtain wall system from one source and by a single manufacturer.

F. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sight lines and relationships to one another and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, or in-service performance.

G. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of glazed aluminum curtain wall system and are based on the specific system indicated. Other manufacturers' systems with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval and only to the extent needed to comply with performance requirements. Where modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

H. Preconstruction Testing: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform the preconstruction testing indicated.
2. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform the preconstruction testing indicated.
3. Test glazed aluminum curtain wall system for compliance with requirements specified for performance and test methods. Conduct tests using specimen representative of proposed materials and construction including perimeter components according to AAMA 501 recommendations.

I. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."

1. Engage welders who have satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and who are currently certified for these processes.

J. Mockups: Prior to installing glazed aluminum curtain wall system, construct mockups for each form of construction and finish required to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects as well as qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for Work.

1. Locate mockups on-site in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Notify Architect 7 days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before start of Work.
5. Retain and maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.

    a. When directed, demolish and remove mockups from Project site.
    b. Approved mockups in an undisturbed condition at the time of Substantial Completion may become part of the completed Work.

K. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 1 Section "Project Meetings." Review methods and procedures related to glazed aluminum curtain wall system including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Inspect and discuss condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
2. Review structural loading limitations.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review required inspecting, testing, and certifying procedures.
5. Review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures for coping with unfavorable conditions.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and show recorded measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, guarantee dimensions and proceed with fabrication without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to guaranteed dimensions.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Warranty: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace components of a glazed aluminum curtain wall system that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
2. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
3. Failure of system to meet performance requirements.
4. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
5. Failure of operating components to function normally.
6. Water leakage.
7. Glazing breakage.

C. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Arch Amarlite.
2. Butler Manufacturing Company; Vistawall Architectural Products.
3. EFCO Corporation.
4. International Aluminum Corporation; U.S. Aluminum.
5. Kawneer Company, Inc.

6. Tubelite Architectural Systems.
7. Wausau Metals Corporation.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, complying with the requirements of standards indicated below.

1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
4. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10.

B. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 36 (ASTM A 36M) for structural shapes, plates, and bars; ASTM A 611 for cold-rolled sheet and strip; or ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M) for hot-rolled sheet and strip.

C. Glazing as specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

D. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers; in hardness recommended by manufacturer.

E. Glazing sealants and fillers as specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

F. Framing system gaskets and joint fillers as recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

G. Sealants and joint fillers for joints within glazed aluminum curtain wall system as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

H. Firesafing materials as specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."

I. Insulating materials as specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."

J. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements, except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

## 2.3 COMPONENTS

A. Exterior Trim: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 666, Type 302, 304, or 316 requirements; with No. 4 finish; and in profiles indicated.

B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Provide manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum brackets and reinforcements. Provide nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials. Finish exposed portions to match glazed aluminum curtain wall.

1. At movement joints, use slip-joint linings, spacers, and sleeves of material and type recommended by manufacturer.
2. Where fasteners anchor into aluminum less than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick, provide reinforcement to receive fastener threads.

3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads finished to match framing members, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Anchors: 3-way adjustable anchors that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.

1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153 requirements.

E. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, 0.018-inch- (0.457-mm-) thick stainless steel, complying with ASTM A 666, of type selected by manufacturer for compatibility with system.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate glazed aluminum curtain wall system according to Shop Drawings. Fabricate components that, when assembled, will have accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

B. Forming: Form shapes with sharp profiles, straight and free of defects or deformations, before finishing.

C. Prepare components to receive concealed fasteners and anchor and connection devices.

D. Fabricate components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring in glazing channels, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to the exterior.

E. Welding: Weld components to comply with referenced standard and Shop Drawings, unless otherwise indicated. Weld before finishing components. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

F. Glazing Pockets: Provide minimum clearances for thickness and type of glass indicated according to FGMA's "Glazing Manual."

G. Metal Protection: Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

H. Frame Units: Factory assemble frame units according to Shop Drawings to greatest extent possible. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight, unless otherwise indicated. Assemble components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring in glazing channels, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to the exterior.

1. Install glazing according to Shop Drawings. Comply with requirements of Division 8 Section "Glazing," unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Finish designations prefixed by AA conform to the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

D. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 607.1.

2.6 STEEL PRIMING

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying primer.

B. Surface Preparation: Perform manufacturer's standard cleaning operations to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel.

C. Priming: Apply manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of glazed aluminum curtain wall system. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected or accommodations acceptable to Architect have been made.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for protecting, handling, and installing glazed aluminum curtain wall system. Do not install damaged components. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight, unless otherwise indicated. Provide means to drain water to the exterior to produce a permanently weatherproof system.

B. Metal Protection: Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring in glazing channels, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to the exterior.

D. Install framing members plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

E. Install factory-assembled frame units plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

F. Install column covers plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

G. Install operable windows plumb and level, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to provide specified performance and proper operation.

H. Anchorage: After system components are positioned, fix connections to building structure as indicated on Shop Drawings.

1. Provide separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.

I. Welding: Weld components to comply with referenced standard and Shop Drawings, unless otherwise indicated. Weld in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.

J. Install glazing according to Shop Drawings. Comply with requirements of Division 8 Section "Glazing," unless otherwise indicated.

K. Install sealant according to Shop Drawings. Comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," unless otherwise indicated.

L. Install insulation materials in locations indicated. Comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Building Insulation," unless otherwise indicated.

M. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain wall system to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6 mm in 12 m).
2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet (3 mm in 6 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6 mm in 12 m).
3. Alignment: Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm); where a reveal or protruding element separates aligned surfaces by less than 2 inches (50.8 mm), limit offset to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
4. Location: Limit variation from plane or location shown on Shop Drawings to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.7 m); 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) over total length.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner reserves the right to engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform testing indicated.

B. Air Infiltration: Test areas of installed system indicated on Drawings for compliance with system performance requirements according to ASTM E 783.

C. Water Penetration: Test areas of installed system indicated on Drawings for compliance with system performance requirements according to ASTM E 1105 at minimum differential pressure of 20 percent of inward acting wind-load design pressure as defined by ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa).

D. Water Spray Test: After completing the installation of 75-feet- (23-m-) by-2-story minimum area of glazed aluminum curtain wall system, test system for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 in a 2-bay area directed by Architect.

E. Repair or remove Work that does not meet requirements or that is damaged by testing; replace to conform to specified requirements.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure glazed aluminum curtain wall system is without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08920

# SECTION 09255 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Nonload-bearing steel framing members for gypsum board assemblies.
2. Gypsum board assemblies attached to steel framing.
3. Cementitious backer units installed with gypsum board assemblies.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for load-bearing steel framing.
2. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood framing and furring, and gypsum sheathing applied over wood framing.
3. Division 7 Section "Firestopping" for firestopping systems and fire-resistance-rated joint sealants.
4. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assemblies" for framing, gypsum panels, and other components forming shaft wall assemblies.
5. Division 9 Section "Tile" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Gypsum Board Construction Terminology: Refer to ASTM C 11 and GA-505 for definitions of terms for gypsum board assemblies not defined in this Section or in other referenced standards.

### 1.4 ASSEMBLY PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sound Transmission Characteristics: For gypsum board assemblies with STC ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies whose STC ratings were determined according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by a qualified independent testing agency.

B. Fire Resistance: Provide gypsum board assemblies with fire-resistance ratings indicated.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each type of product specified.

C. Shop Drawings showing locations, fabrication, and installation of control and expansion joints including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other units of Work.

D. Product certificates signed by manufacturers of gypsum board assembly components certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single-Source Responsibility for Steel Framing: Obtain steel framing members for gypsum board assemblies from a single manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Single-Source Responsibility for Panel Products: Obtain each type of gypsum board and other panel products from a single manufacturer.

C. Single-Source Responsibility for Finishing Materials: Obtain finishing materials from either the same manufacturer that supplies gypsum board and other panel products or from a manufacturer acceptable to gypsum board manufacturer.

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-resistance-rated gypsum board assemblies are indicated, provide gypsum board assemblies that comply with the following requirements:

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As indicated by GA File Numbers in GA-600 "Fire Resistance Design Manual" or design designations in UL "Fire Resistance Directory" or in the listing of another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Gypsum board assemblies indicated are identical to assemblies tested for fire resistance according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Deflection and Firestop Track: Top runner provided in fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated is labeled and listed by UL, Warnock Hersey, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier.

B. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes. Neatly stack gypsum panels flat to prevent sagging.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions, General: Establish and maintain environmental conditions for applying and finishing gypsum board to comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's recommendations, whichever are more stringent.

B. Room Temperatures: For nonadhesive attachment of gypsum board to framing, maintain not less than 40 deg F (4 deg C). For adhesive attachment and finishing of gypsum board, maintain not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 48 hours before application and continuously after until dry. Do not exceed 95 deg F (35 deg C) when using temporary heat sources.

C. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces as required to dry joint treatment materials. Avoid drafts during hot, dry weather to prevent finishing materials from drying too rapidly.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Steel Framing and Furring:

   a. Clark Steel Framing, Inc.
   b. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
   c. Dale Industries, Inc.
   d. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
   e. Marino/Ware (formerly Marino Industries Corp.).
   f. National Gypsum Co.; Gold Bond Building Products Division.
   g. Unimast, Inc.

2. Grid Suspension Assemblies:

   a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
   b. Chicago Metallic Corp.
   c. USG Interiors, Inc.
   d. Worthington Steel Company (formerly National Rolling Mills).

3. Gypsum Board and Related Products:

   a. Domtar Gypsum.
   b. Georgia-Pacific Corp.
   c. National Gypsum Co.; Gold Bond Building Products Division.
   d. United States Gypsum Co.

C. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in the Work where proprietary gypsum wallboard is indicated include, but are not limited to, the following:

D. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products where proprietary gypsum wallboard is indicated:

1. Gyprock Fireguard C Gypsum Board; Domtar Gypsum.
2. Firestop Type C; Georgia-Pacific Corp.
3. Fire-Shield G; National Gypsum Co.; Gold Bond Building Products Division.
4. SHEETROCK Brand Gypsum Panels, FIRECODE C Core; United States Gypsum Co.
5. SHEETROCK Brand Gypsum Panels, ULTRACODE Core; United States Gypsum Co.

### 2.2 STEEL FRAMING COMPONENTS FOR SUSPENDED AND FURRED CEILINGS

A. General: Provide components complying with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.

B. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

C. Wire Ties: ASTM A 641 (ASTM A 641M), Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

D. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641 (ASTM A 641M), Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.162-inch (4.1-mm) diameter.

E. Hanger Rods: Mild steel and zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

F. Flat Hangers: Mild steel and zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

G. Angle-Type Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch (22.2 mm) wide, formed from 0.0635-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653, G 90 (ASTM A 653M, Z 180) coating designation, with bolted connections and 5/16-inch (8-mm) diameter bolts.

H. Channels: Cold-rolled steel, 0.0598-inch (1.5-mm) minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal and 7/16-inch- (11.1-mm-) wide flanges, and as follows:

1. Carrying Channels: 2 inches (50.8 mm) deep, 590 lb/1000 feet (88 kg/100 m), unless otherwise indicated.
2. Furring Channels: 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) deep, 300 lb/1000 feet (45 kg/100 m), unless otherwise indicated.
3. Finish: Rust-inhibitive paint, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Steel Studs for Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, with flange edges of studs bent back 90 degrees and doubled over to form 3/16-inch- (5-mm-) wide minimum lip (return), and complying with the following requirements for minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal and for depth:
1. Thickness: 0.0329 inch (0.84 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
2. Thickness: As indicated.
3. Depth: 3-5/8 inches (92.1 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
4. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653, G 40 (ASTM A 653M, Z 90) hot-dip galvanized coating.

J. Grid Suspension System for Interior Ceilings: ASTM C 645, manufacturer's standard direct-hung grid suspension system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock to form a modular supporting network.

## 2.3 STEEL FRAMING FOR WALLS AND PARTITIONS

A. General: Provide steel framing members complying with the following requirements:
1. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653, G 40 (ASTM A 653M, Z 90) hot-dip galvanized coating for framing members attached to and within 10 feet (3 m) of exterior walls.

B. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645, with flange edges of studs bent back 90 degrees and doubled over to form 3/16-inch- (5-mm-) wide minimum lip (return), and complying with the following requirements for minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal and for depth:

1. Thickness: 20 ga, unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
2. Depth: 3-5/8 inches (92.1 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
3. Depth: 6 inches (152.4 mm) where indicated.

4. Depth: 1-5/8 inch (41.3 mm) where indicated.

C. Deflection Track: Manufacturer's top runner complying with the requirements of ASTM C 645 and with 2-inch- (50.8-mm-) deep flanges.

D. Deflection Track: Manufacturer's standard top runner designed to prevent cracking of gypsum board applied to interior partitions resulting from deflection of the structure above fabricated from steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653 (ASTM A 653M) or ASTM A 568 (ASTM A 568M). Thickness as indicated for studs, and width to accommodated depth of studs, and of the following configuration:
1. Top Runner with Slotted Flanges: 2-1/2-inch- (63.5-mm-) deep flanges with slots 1 inch (25.4 mm) o.c.
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      1) Superior Flex Track System (SFT); Delta Star, Inc.
      2) SLP-TRK; Metal-Lite, Inc.

E. Deflection and Firestop Track: Top runner designed to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure above while maintaining continuity of the assembly. Comply with requirements of ASTM C 645 except configuration, of thickness indicated for studs and width to accommodate depth of studs indicated with flanges offset at midpoint to accommodate gypsum board thickness.
1. Offset Configuration: Reveal design with offset recessing in from depth of stud.
2. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Fire Trak" manufactured by Fire Trak Corp.

F. Steel Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, hat shaped, depth and minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal as follows:

1. Thickness: 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
2. Depth: 7/8 inch (22.2 mm).

G. Furring Brackets: Serrated-arm type, adjustable, fabricated from corrosion-resistant steel sheet complying with ASTM C 645, minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal of 0.0329 inch (0.84 mm), designed for screw attachment to steel studs and steel rigid furring channels used for furring.

H. Steel Resilient Furring Channels: Manufacturer's standard product designed to reduce sound transmission, fabricated from steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653 (ASTM A 653M) or ASTM A 568 (ASTM A 568M) to form 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) deep channel of the following configuration:
1. Double-Leg Configuration: Hat-shaped channel with 1-1/2-inch- (38.1-mm-) wide face connected to flanges by double-slotted or expanded-metal legs (webs).

I. Z-Furring Members: Manufacturer's standard Z-shaped furring members with slotted or nonslotted web, fabricated from steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653 (ASTM A 653M) or ASTM A 568 (ASTM A 568M); with a minimum base metal (uncoated) thickness of 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm), face flange of 1-1/4 inch (31.8 mm), wall-attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22.2 mm), and of depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

J. Steel Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel, 0.0598-inch (1.5-mm) minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal and 7/16-inch- (11.1-mm-) wide flanges, 1-1/2 inches (38.1 mm) deep, 475 lb/1000 feet (45 kg/100 m), unless otherwise indicated.

K. Steel Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing complying with ASTM A 653 (ASTM A 653M) or ASTM A 568 (ASTM A 568M), length and width as indicated, and with a minimum base metal (uncoated) thickness as follows:

1. Thickness: 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm), unless otherwise indicated.

L. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Provide fasteners of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel framing and furring members securely to substrates involved; complying with the recommendations of gypsum board manufacturers for applications indicated.

## 2.4 GYPSUM BOARD PRODUCTS

A. General: Provide gypsum board of types indicated in maximum lengths available that will minimize end-to-end butt joints in each area indicated to receive gypsum board application.

1. Widths: Provide gypsum board in widths of 48 inches (1219 mm).

B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 36 and as follows:

1. Type: Regular for vertical surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Type: Type X where required for fire-resistance-rated assemblies.
3. Type: Sag-resistant type for ceiling surfaces.
4. Type: Proprietary type as required for specific fire-resistance-rated assemblies.
5. Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
6. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
7. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) where indicated.
8. Thickness: 1" where indicated for proprietary-type gypsum panels.

## 2.5 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

1. Provide cementitious backer units complying with ANSI A118.9, of thickness and width indicated below, and in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
2. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), where indicated.
3. Width: Manufacturer's standard width, but not less than 32 inches (813 mm).

B. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, cementitious backer units that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

C. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products:

1. The Original Wonderboard; Custom Building Products.
2. Wonderboard Multi+Board; Custom Building Products.
3. DomCrete Cementitious Tile-Backer Board; Domtar Gypsum.
4. Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board; FinPan, Inc.
5. DUROCK Cement Board; United States Gypsum Co.

## 2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Accessories for Interior Installation: Cornerbead, edge trim, and control joints complying with ASTM C 1047 and requirements indicated below:

1. Material: Formed metal or plastic, with metal complying with the following requirement:

a. Steel sheet zinc coated by hot-dip process or rolled zinc.

2. Shapes indicated below by reference to Fig. 1 designations in ASTM C 1047:

   a. Cornerbead on outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. LC-bead with both face and back flanges; face flange formed to receive joint compound. Use LC-beads for edge trim, unless otherwise indicated.
   c. L-bead with face flange only; face flange formed to receive joint compound. Use L-bead where indicated.
   d. U-bead with face and back flanges; face flange formed to be left without application of joint compound. Use U-bead where indicated.
   e. One-piece control joint formed with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

## 2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Provide joint treatment materials complying with ASTM C 475 and the recommendations of both the manufacturers of sheet products and of joint treatment materials for each application indicated.

B. Joint Tape for Gypsum Board: Paper reinforcing tape, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use pressure-sensitive or staple-attached, open-weave, glass-fiber reinforcing tape with compatible joint compound where recommended by manufacturer of gypsum board and joint treatment materials for application indicated.

C. Joint Tape for Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by cementitious backer unit manufacturer.

D. Setting-Type Joint Compounds for Gypsum Board: Factory-packaged, job-mixed, chemical-hardening powder products formulated for uses indicated.

1. Where setting-type joint compounds are indicated as a taping compound only or for taping and filling only, use formulation that is compatible with other joint compounds applied over it.
2. For prefilling gypsum board joints, use formulation recommended by gypsum board manufacturer.
3. For filling joints and treating fasteners of water-resistant gypsum backing board behind base for ceramic tile, use formulation recommended by gypsum board manufacturer.
4. For topping compound, use sandable formulation.

E. Drying-Type Joint Compounds for Gypsum Board: Factory-packaged vinyl-based products complying with the following requirements for formulation and intended use.

1. Ready-Mixed Formulation: Factory-mixed product.

   a. Taping compound formulated for embedding tape and for first coat over fasteners and face flanges of trim accessories.
   b. Topping compound formulated for fill (second) and finish (third) coats.
   c. All-purpose compound formulated for both taping and topping compounds.

2. Job-Mixed Formulation: Powder product for mixing with water at Project site.

   a. Taping compound formulated for embedding tape and for first coat over fasteners and face flanges of trim accessories.
   b. Topping compound formulated for fill (second) and finish (third) coats.
   c. All-purpose compound formulated for both taping and topping compounds.

F. Joint Compound for Cementitious Backer Units: Material recommended by cementitious backer unit manufacturer.

## 2.8 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and the following requirements:

1. Product is effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

B. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce transmission of airborne sound.

C. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, acoustical sealants that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

D. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:

a. PL Acoustical Sealant; ChemRex, Inc.; Contech Brands.
b. AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant; Pecora Corp.
c. SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant; United States Gypsum Co.

2. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints:

a. BA-98; Pecora Corp.
b. Tremco Acoustical Sealant; Tremco, Inc.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials for gypsum board construction that comply with referenced standards and recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Special adhesive or joint compound recommended for laminating gypsum panels.

C. Spot Grout: ASTM C 475, setting-type joint compound recommended for spot-grouting hollow metal door frames.

D. Fastening Adhesive for Wood: ASTM C 557.

E. Fastening Adhesive for Metal: Special adhesive recommended for laminating gypsum panels to steel framing.

F. Steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002 for the following applications:

1. Fastening gypsum board to steel members less than 0.033 inch (0.84 mm) thick.

G. Steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening gypsum board to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.

H. Steel drill screws of size and type recommended by unit manufacturer for fastening cementitious backer units.

I. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.

J. Foam Gaskets: Closed-cell vinyl foam adhesive-backed strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, in width to suit metal stud size indicated.

K. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket insulation produced by combining mineral fibers of type described below with thermosetting resins to comply with ASTM C 665 for Type I (blankets without membrane facing).
   1. Mineral-Fiber Type: Fibers manufactured from glass.

L. Thermal Insulation: Material indicated below, of thickness and width to fill voids formed by Z-furring members:

   1. Unfaced Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket insulation produced by combining mineral fibers of type described below with thermosetting resins to comply with ASTM C 665 for Type I (blankets without membrane facing).
      a. Mineral-Fiber Type: Fibers manufactured from glass.

   2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: Rigid, cellular, polystyrene thermal insulation formed from a polystyrene base resin by an extrusion process using hydrochlorofluorocarbons as the blowing agent to comply with ASTM C 578 for Type IV, and with the following surface-burning characteristics:

      a. Flame-spread and smoke-developed ratings of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E 84.

M. Polyethylene Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 4397, thickness and maximum permeance rating as follows:
   1. 6 mils (0.15 mm), 0.13 perms (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).

N. Vapor Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates to which gypsum board assemblies attach or abut, installed hollow metal frames, cast-in-anchors, and structural framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of assemblies specified in this Section. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Ceiling Anchorages: Coordinate installation of ceiling suspension systems with installation of overhead structural assemblies to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have

been installed to receive ceiling hangers that will develop their full strength and at spacing required to support ceilings.

1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordination with other construction.

## 3.3 INSTALLING STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

A. Steel Framing Installation Standard: Install steel framing to comply with ASTM C 754 and with ASTM C 840 requirements that apply to framing installation.

B. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing at terminations in gypsum board assemblies to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction. Comply with details indicated and with recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer or, if none available, with United States Gypsum Co.'s "Gypsum Construction Handbook."

C. Isolate steel framing from building structure at locations indicated to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.

1. Where building structure abuts ceiling perimeter or penetrates ceiling.
2. Where partition framing and wall furring abut structure, except at floor.
   a. Install deflection track top runner to attain lateral support and avoid axial loading.

## 3.4 INSTALLING STEEL FRAMING FOR SUSPENDED AND FURRED CEILINGS

A. Suspend ceiling hangers from building structural members and as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with the location of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
3. Secure wire hangers by looping and wire-tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eyescrews, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
4. Secure flat, angle, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eyescrews, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure as well as for type of hanger involved, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
5. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
6. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
7. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.

B. Sway-brace suspended steel framing with hangers used for support.

C. Install suspended steel framing components in sizes and at spacings indicated, but not less than that required by the referenced steel framing installation standard.

1. Wire Hangers: 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c.
2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c.

D. Installation Tolerances: Install steel framing components for suspended ceilings so that cross-furring or grid suspension members are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m) as measured both lengthwise on each member and transversely between parallel members.

E. Wire-tie or clip furring members to main runners and to other structural supports as indicated.

F. Grid Suspension System: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension system meets vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

## 3.5 INSTALLING STEEL FRAMING FOR WALLS AND PARTITIONS

A. Install runners (tracks) at floors, ceilings, and structural walls and columns where gypsum board stud assemblies abut other construction.

1. Where studs are installed directly against exterior walls, install asphalt felt strips or foam gaskets between studs and wall.

B. Installation Tolerances: Install each steel framing and furring member so that fastening surfaces do not vary more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by the faces of adjacent framing.

C. Extend partition framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing over frames for doors and openings and frame around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling to provide support for gypsum board.

1. Cut studs 1/2 inch (13 mm) short of full height to provide perimeter relief.
2. For STC-rated and fire-resistance-rated partitions that extend to the underside of floor/roof slabs and decks or other continuous solid structural surfaces to obtain ratings, install framing around structural and other members extending below floor/roof slabs and decks, as needed, to support gypsum board closures needed to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.

D. Terminate partition framing at suspended ceilings where indicated.

E. Install steel studs and furring in sizes and at spacings indicated.

1. Single-Layer Construction: Space studs 16 inches (406 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
2. Cementitious Backer Unit Construction: Space studs 16 inches (406 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

F. Install steel studs so flanges point in the same direction and leading edge or end of each gypsum board panel can be attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

G. Frame door openings to comply with GA-219, and with applicable published recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated. Attach vertical studs at jambs with screws either di-

rectly to frames or to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.

1. Install 2 studs at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint.
3. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of floor or roof structure above.

H. Frame openings other than door openings to comply with details indicated or, if none indicated, as required for door openings. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.

I. Install thermal insulation as follows:

1. Erect insulation vertically and hold in place with Z-furring members spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. Start from this furring channel with standard width insulation panel and continue in regular manner. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches (300 mm) from corner and cut insulation to fit.
4. Until gypsum board is installed, hold insulation in place with 10-inch (250-mm) staples fabricated from 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) diameter tie wire and inserted through slot in web of member.

J. Install polyethylene vapor retarder where indicated to comply with the following requirements:

1. Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with mechanical fasteners or adhesives. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose mineral-fiber insulation.
2. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping not less than 2 wall studs. Fasten vapor retarders to framing at top, end, and bottom edges, at perimeter of wall openings, and at lap joints; space fasteners 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
3. Seal joints in vapor retarders caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor retarder tape.
4. Repair any tears or punctures in vapor retarder immediately before concealing it with the installation of gypsum board or other construction.

## 3.6 APPLYING AND FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

A. Gypsum Board Application and Finishing Standards: Install and finish gypsum panels to comply with ASTM C 840 and GA-216.

B. Install sound-attenuation blankets, where indicated, prior to installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

C. Install ceiling board panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in the central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.

D. Install gypsum panels with face side out. Do not install imperfect, damaged, or damp panels. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.

E. Locate both edge or end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Avoid joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings where possible.

F. Attach gypsum panels to steel studs so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

G. Attach gypsum panels to framing provided at openings and cutouts.

H. Spot grout hollow metal door frames for solid-core wood doors, hollow metal doors, and doors over 32 inches (813 mm) wide. Apply spot grout at each jamb anchor clip and immediately insert gypsum panels into frames.

I. Form control and expansion joints at locations indicated and as detailed, with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels, as well as supporting framing behind gypsum panels.

J. Cover both faces of steel stud partition framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases that are braced internally.

1. Except where concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
3. Where partitions intersect open concrete coffers, concrete joists, and other structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by coffers, joists, and other structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.

K. Isolate perimeter of nonload-bearing gypsum board partitions at structural abutments, except floors, as detailed. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with U-bead edge trim where edges of gypsum panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

L. Where STC-rated gypsum board assemblies are indicated, seal construction at perimeters, behind control and expansion joints, openings, and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant including a bead at both faces of the partitions. Comply with ASTM C 919 and manufacturer's recommendations for location of edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through gypsum board assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

M. Space fasteners in gypsum panels according to referenced gypsum board application and finishing standard and manufacturer's recommendations.

1. Space screws a maximum of 12 inches (304.8 mm) o.c. for vertical applications.

N. Space fasteners in panels that are tile substrates a maximum of 8 inches (203.2 mm) o.c.

## 3.7 GYPSUM BOARD APPLICATION METHODS

A. Single-Layer Application: Install gypsum wallboard panels as follows:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels prior to wall/partition board application to the greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing, unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing), unless parallel application is required for fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Use maximum-length panels to minimize end joints.

    a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of board.
    b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally.

B. Wall Tile Substrates: For substrates indicated to receive thin-set ceramic tile and similar rigid applied wall finishes, comply with the following:
1. Install cementitious backer units to comply with ANSI A108.11 at locations indicated to receive wall tile.

C. Direct-Bonding to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's recommendations, and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

## 3.8 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. General: For trim accessories with back flanges, fasten to framing with the same fasteners used to fasten gypsum board. Otherwise, fasten trim accessories according to accessory manufacturer's directions for type, length, and spacing of fasteners.

B. Install cornerbead at external corners.

C. Install edge trim where edge of gypsum panels would otherwise be exposed. Provide edge trim type with face flange formed to receive joint compound, except where other types are indicated.

1. Install LC-bead where gypsum panels are tightly abutted to other construction and back flange can be attached to framing or supporting substrate.
2. Install L-bead where edge trim can only be installed after gypsum panels are installed.
3. Install U-bead where indicated.
4. Install aluminum trim and other accessories where indicated.

D. Install control joints at locations indicated.

E. Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and manufacturer's recommendations and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.

## 3.9 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, flanges of cornerbead, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration.

B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged areas using setting-type joint compound.

C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints and to flanges of trim accessories as recommended by trim accessory manufacturer.

D. Levels of Gypsum Board Finish: Provide the following levels of gypsum board finish per GA-214.

1. Level 1 for ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated, unless a higher level of finish is required for fire-resistance-rated assemblies and sound-rated assemblies.
2. Level 2 where panels form substrates for tile and where indicated.
3. Level 4 for gypsum board surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Use one of the following joint compound combinations as applicable to the finish levels specified:

F. Use the following joint compound combination as applicable to the finish levels specified:
1. Embedding and First Coat: Setting-type compound. Fill (Second) Coat: Setting-type compound. Finish (Third) Coat: Job-mixed, drying-type, all-purpose compound.

G. For Level 4 gypsum board finish, embed tape in joint compound and apply first, fill (second), and finish (third) coats of joint compound over joints, angles, fastener heads, and accessories. Touch up and sand between coats and after last coat as needed to produce a surface free of visual defects and ready for decoration.

H. Where Level 2 gypsum board finish is indicated, embed tape in joint compound and apply first coat of joint compound.

I. Where Level 1 gypsum board finish is indicated, embed tape in joint compound.

J. Finish cementitious backer units to comply with unit manufacturer's directions.

## 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Above-Ceiling Observation: Architect will conduct an above-ceiling observation prior to installation of gypsum board ceilings and report any deficiencies in the Work observed. Do not proceed with installation of gypsum board to ceiling support framing until deficiencies have been corrected.

1. Notify Architect one week in advance of the date and the time when the Project, or part of the Project, will be ready for an above-ceiling observation.
2. Prior to notifying Architect, complete the following in areas to receive gypsum board ceilings:

a. Installation of 80 percent of lighting fixtures, powered for operation.
b. Installation, insulation, and leak and pressure testing of water piping systems.
c. Installation of air duct systems.
d. Installation of air devices.
e. Installation of mechanical system control air tubing.
f. Installation of ceiling support framing.

## 3.11 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove any residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Installer, that ensure gypsum board assemblies are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09255

# SECTION 09265 - GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT-WALL ASSEMBLIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Shaft enclosures.
2. Stair enclosures.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 9 "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for applying and finishing panels in gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Gypsum Board Construction Terminology: Refer to ASTM C 11 and GA-505 for definitions of terms for gypsum board construction not defined in this Section or in other referenced standards.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance Characteristics: As follows:

1. Provide gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies capable of withstanding the full air-pressure loads indicated for maximum heights of partitions indicated without failing and while maintaining an airtight and smoke-tight seal. Evidence of failure includes deflections exceeding limits indicated, bending stresses causing studs to break or to distort, and end-reaction shear causing runners to bend or to shear and studs to become crippled.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each gypsum board shaft-wall assembly specified.

B. Fire-Test-Response Reports: From a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency substantiating each gypsum board shaft-wall assembly's required fire-resistance rating.

1. Include data substantiating that elevator entrances and other items that penetrate each gypsum board shaft-wall assembly do not negate fire-resistance rating.

C. Research/Evaluation Reports: Of the model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that substantiate required fire-resistance rating for each gypsum board shaft-wall assembly and evidence compliance with building code in effect for Project.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain components for each gypsum board shaft-wall assembly indicated through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Provide gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies as follows:

1. Assemblies comply with requirements of fire-response-tested assemblies indicated by GA File Numbers in GA-600, "Fire Resistance Design Manual"; or design designations in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or certification listings of Warnock Hersey or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, and bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier.

B. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes. Neatly stack gypsum boards flat on leveled supports off the ground to prevent sagging.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Comply with requirements for environmental conditions, room temperatures, and ventilation specified in the following Division 9 Section:

1. "Gypsum Board Assemblies."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by manufacturers indicated in the Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assembly Schedule at the end of Part 3.

2.2 ASSEMBLY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials and components complying with requirements of fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated. Provide panels in maximum lengths available to eliminate or minimize end-to-end butt joints.

B. Steel Framing: ASTM C 645.

1. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653, G40 (ASTM A 653M, Z90) hot-dip galvanized coating.

2. Studs: Manufacturer's standard profile for fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and in depth and thickness indicated in the Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assembly Schedule.
3. Track (Runner): Manufacturer's standard J-profile track with long-leg length as standard with manufacturer, but at least 2 inches (50.8 mm), in depth matching studs and in thickness indicated in the Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assembly Schedule.
4. Jamb Struts: Manufacturer's standard J-profile strut with long-leg length of 3 inches (76.2 mm), in depth matching studs, and not less than 0.0329 inch (0.84 mm) thick.
5. Corner and End Members: Manufacturer's standard profile framing member for use at corners or where assembly terminates at other work, in depth matching studs and in manufacturer's standard thickness not less than the stud thickness indicated in the Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assembly Schedule.

C. Gypsum Liner Panels: Manufacturer's proprietary liner panels in 1-inch (25.4-mm) thickness and with moisture-resistant paper faces.

D. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 36, core type as required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
1. Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.

E. Accessories: Cornerbead, edge trim, and control joints of material and shapes specified in Division 9 Section referenced below that comply with gypsum board shaft-wall assembly manufacturer's written recommendations for application indicated.

1. "Gypsum Board Assemblies."

F. Gypsum Wallboard Joint-Treatment Materials: Provide materials complying with ASTM C 475 and gypsum board shaft-wall assembly manufacturer's written recommendations for applications indicated, and as specified in Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies."

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials for gypsum board shaft-wall construction that comply with requirements indicated and gypsum board shaft-wall assembly manufacturer's written recommendations.

B. Steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002 for fastening gypsum board to steel members less than 0.03 inch (0.76 mm) thick.

C. Steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening gypsum board to steel members from 0.03 to 0.112 inch (0.76 to 2.84 mm) thick.

D. Runner (Track) Fasteners: Power-driven fasteners of type indicated below and of size and material required to withstand loading conditions imposed on shaft-wall assemblies without exceeding allowable design stress of runners, fasteners, or structural substrates where anchors are embedded.

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Provide powder-actuated fasteners with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by shaft-wall assemblies, as determined by testing conducted by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM E 1190.

E. Acoustical Sealant: As recommended by gypsum board shaft-wall assembly manufacturer for application indicated.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates to which gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies attach or abut, with Installer present. Substrates include hollow-metal frames, elevator hoistway door frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing; examine for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies to comply with requirements of fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and the following:

1. ASTM C 754 for installing steel framing.
2. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for applying and finishing gypsum wallboard and other panels indicated.

B. Install supplementary framing in gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies around openings and as required for blocking, bracing, and support of gravity and pullout loads of fixtures, equipment, services, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar items that cannot be supported directly by shaft-wall assembly framing.

1. At elevator hoistway door frames, provide jamb struts on each side of door frame. Provide other shaft-wall framing at opening according to assembly manufacturer's written recommendations.
2. Where handrails are indicated for direct attachment to gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies, provide galvanized steel reinforcing strip with 0.0329-inch (0.84-mm) minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal in size indicated, accurately positioned and secured behind at least 1 face-layer panel as indicated.

C. Integrate stair hanger rods with gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies by locating cavity of assemblies where required to enclose rods.

D. At penetrations in shaft wall, maintain fire-resistance rating of shaft-wall assembly by installing supplementary steel framing around perimeter of penetration and fire protection behind boxes containing wiring devices, elevator call buttons, elevator floor indicators, and similar items.

E. Isolate shaft-wall assemblies from building structure to prevent structural movement from transferring loads to shaft-wall assemblies.

F. Seal gypsum board shaft-walls with acoustical sealant at perimeter of each assembly where it abuts other work and at joints and penetrations within each assembly. Install acoustical sealant to withstand dislocation by air-pressure differential between shaft and external spaces; maintain an airtight and smoke-tight seal; and comply with manufacturer's written instructions or ASTM C 919, whichever is more stringent.

## 3.3 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Installer, that ensure gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09265

# SECTION 09310 - CERAMIC TILE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Ceramic mosaic tile.
2. Glazed wall tile.
3. Waterproof membrane for thin-set tile installations.
4. Cementitious backer units.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
2. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for cementitious backer units installed in gypsum wallboard assemblies.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Module Size: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499) plus joint width indicated.

B. Facial Dimension: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499).

C. Facial Dimension: Nominal tile size as defined in ANSI A137.1.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:

1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.6.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of tile, mortar, grout, and other products specified.

B. Tile Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual tiles or sections of tiles showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type and composition of tile indicated. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

C. Grout Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual sections of grout showing the full range of colors available for each type of grout indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: Of each item listed below, prepared on Samples of size and construction indicated. Where products involve normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.

1. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color required.

E. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.

F. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the products furnished comply with requirements.

G. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names of architects and owners, and other information specified.

H. Tile Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance of special-purpose tile with specified requirements.

I. Setting Material Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance of tile-setting and -grouting products with specified requirements.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed tile installations similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain each color, grade, finish, type, composition, and variety of tile from one source with resources to provide products from the same production run for each contiguous area of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying the Work.

C. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from a single manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.

D. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from one source and by a single manufacturer for each product:
1. Cementitious backer units.
2. Joint sealants.
3. Waterproofing.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirement of ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.

B. Prevent damage or contamination to materials by water, freezing, foreign matter, and other causes.

C. Handle tile with temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is completed and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are being maintained to comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels describing contents.

1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed, for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, those indicated in the ceramic tile installation schedules at the end of this Section.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products indicated in the ceramic tile installation schedules at the end of this Section.

C. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

D. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Tile Products:
   a. Dal-Tile Corporation.
   b. Florida Tile Industries, Inc.
   c. Interceramics, USA.
   d. Mannington Ceramic Tile.

2. Tile-Setting and -Grouting Materials:

   a. American Olean Tile Company.
   b. Dal-Tile Corporation.
   c. DAP, Inc.

d. Mapei Corporation.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1, "Specifications for Ceramic Tile," for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.

1. Provide tile complying with Standard Grade requirements, unless otherwise indicated.
2. For facial dimensions of tile, comply with requirements relating to tile sizes specified in Part 1 "Definitions" Article.

B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI standards referenced in "Setting Materials" and "Grouting Materials" articles.

C. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated for tile, grout, and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures, patterns, and other appearance characteristics, provide specific products or materials complying with the following requirements:

1. Match colors, textures, and patterns indicated by referencing manufacturer's standard designations for these characteristics.

D. Mounting: Where factory-mounted tile is required, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer, unless another mounting method is indicated.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

A. Unglazed Ceramic Mosaic Tile: Provide factory-mounted flat tile complying with the following requirements:

1. Composition: Porcelain.
2. Module Size: As noted at end of specification section.

B. Glazed Ceramic Mosaic Tile: Provide factory-mounted flat tile complying with the following requirements:

1. Composition: Porcelain.
2. Module Size: As noted at end of specification section.

C. Trim Units: Provide tile trim units to match characteristics of adjoining flat tile and to comply with the following requirements:

1. Size: As indicated, coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable.
2. Shapes: As follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:

a. Wainscot Cap for Thin-Set Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose.

2.4 WATERPROOFING FOR THIN-SET TILE INSTALLATIONS

A. General: Provide products that comply with ANSI A118.10 and the descriptions in this Article.

B. Polyethylene-Sheet Waterproofing: Manufacturer's standard proprietary product consisting of composite sheets, 60 inches (152 mm) wide by a nominal thickness of 6 mils, composed of an inner layer of non-plasticized, chlorinated polyethylene sheet faced on both sides with laminated, high-strength, nonwoven polyester material, designed for embedding in latex-portland cement mortar and as the substrate for latex-portland cement mortar setting bed.

## 2.5 SETTING MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement Mortar Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.1A and as specified below:

1. Cleavage Membrane: polyethylene sheeting ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils (0.1 mm) thick.

2. Latex additive (water emulsion) described below, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex additive manufacturer for use with job-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.

a. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard.
b. Latex Additive: Acrylic resin.

B. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.4, composed as follows:

1. Prepackaged Dry-Mortar Mix: Factory-prepared mixture of portland cement; dry, redispersible, ethylene vinyl acetate additive; and other ingredients to which only water needs to be added at Project site.

a. For wall applications, provide nonsagging, latex-portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.4 for mortar of this type defined in Section F-2.1.2.

2. Mixture of Dry-Mortar Mix and Latex Additive: Mixture of prepackaged dry-mortar mix and liquid-latex additive complying with the following requirements:

a. Latex Additive: Acrylic resin.
b. For wall applications, provide nonsagging, latex-portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.4 for mortar of this type defined in Section F-2.1.2.

C. Organic Adhesive: ANSI A136.1, Type I.

## 2.6 GROUTING MATERIALS

A. Latex-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6 for materials described in Section H-2.4, composed as follows:

1. Factory-Prepared, Dry-Grout Mixture: Factory-prepared mixture of portland cement; dry, redispersible, ethylene vinyl acetate additive; and other ingredients to produce the following:

a. Unsanded grout mixture for joints 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and narrower.

2. Mixture of Dry-Grout Mix and Latex Additive: Mixture of factory-prepared, dry-grout mix and latex additive complying with the following requirements:

a. Unsanded Dry-Grout Mix: Dry-set grout complying with ANSI A118.6 for materials described in Section H-2.3, for joints 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and narrower.

## 2.7 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated that comply with applicable requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

B. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

C. One-Part, Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C 920; Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to nonporous joint substrates indicated, O; formulated with fungicide, intended for sealing interior ceramic tile joints and other nonporous substrates that are subject to in-service exposures of high humidity and temperature extremes.

D. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products which may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

E. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. One-Part, Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealants:

a. Dow Corning 786; Dow Corning Corporation.
b. Sanitary 1700; GE Silicones.
c. Pecora 898 Sanitary Silicone Sealant; Pecora Corp.
d. Rhodorsil 6B White; Rhone-Poulenc, Inc.
e. Tremsil 600 White; Tremco, Inc.

## 2.8 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

A. Provide cementitious backer units complying with ANSI A118.9, of thickness and width indicated below, and in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.

1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), where indicated.
2. Width: Manufacturer's standard width, but not less than 32 inches (813 mm).

B. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, cementitious backer units that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

C. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products:

1. The Original Wonderboard; Custom Building Products.
2. Wonderboard Multi+Board; Custom Building Products.
3. DomCrete Cementitious Tile-Backer Board; Domtar Gypsum.
4. Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board; FinPan, Inc.
5. DUROCK Cement Board; United States Gypsum Co.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.

B. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.

C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.

1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free from oil, waxy films, and curing compounds; and within flatness tolerances required by referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for installations indicated.
2. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed before installing tile.
3. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust latter in consultation with Architect.

B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone and are incompatible with tile-setting materials by using a terrazzo or concrete grinder, a drum sander, or a polishing machine equipped with a heavy-duty wire brush.

B. Provide concrete substrates for tile floors installed with dry-set or latex-portland cement mortars that comply with flatness tolerances specified in referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for installations indicated.

1. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds per tile-setting material manufacturer's written instructions to fill cracks, holes, and depressions.
2. Remove protrusions, bumps, and ridges by sanding or grinding.

C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within the ranges selected during Sample submittals, verify that tile has been blended in the factory and packaged so tile units taken from one package show the same

range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

D. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type or needed to prevent adhesion or staining of exposed tile surfaces by grout, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating them with a continuous film of temporary protective coating indicated below, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces:

1. Petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot.
2. Grout release.
3. Petroleum paraffin wax or grout release.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. ANSI Tile Installation Standards: Comply with parts of ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards in "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that apply to types of setting and grouting materials and to methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.

B. TCA Installation Guidelines: TCA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation." Comply with TCA installation methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.

C. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form a complete covering without interruptions, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern, unless otherwise indicated. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are the same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise indicated.

1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets the same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.

F. Lay out tile wainscots to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.

G. Grout tile to comply with the requirements of the following tile installation standards:

1. For ceramic tile grouts (sand-portland cement, dry-set, commercial portland cement, and latex-portland cement grouts), comply with ANSI A108.10.

## 3.4 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

A. Install waterproofing to comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to produce a waterproof membrane of uniform thickness bonded securely to substrate.

B. Do not install tile over waterproofing until waterproofing has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.

## 3.5 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

A. General: Install tile to comply with requirements in the Ceramic Tile Floor Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCA installation methods and ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards.

B. Joint Widths: Install tile on floors with the following joint widths:

1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

C. Back Buttering: For installations indicated, obtain 100 percent mortar coverage by complying with applicable special requirements for back buttering of tile in referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards:
1. Tile floors in wet areas, including showers, tub enclosures, laundries, and swimming pools.
2. Tile floors composed of rib-backed tiles.

## 3.6 WALL TILE INSTALLATION

A. Install types of tile designated for wall installations to comply with requirements in the Ceramic Tile Wall Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCA installation methods and ANSI setting-bed standards.

B. Joint Widths: Install tile on walls with the following joint widths:

1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
2. Wall Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

C. Back Buttering: For installations indicated, obtain 100 percent mortar coverage by complying with applicable special requirements for back buttering of tile in referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards:

## 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

1. Remove latex-portland cement grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
2. Unglazed tile may be cleaned with acid solutions only when permitted by tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions, but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Protect metal surfaces, cast iron, and vitreous plumbing fixtures from effects of acid cleaning. Flush surface with clean water before and after cleaning.
3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer that is acceptable to brick and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent it from clogging drains.

B. Finished Tile Work: Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, unbonded, and otherwise defective tile work.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure tile is without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

1. When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply a protective coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear.
2. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least 7 days after grouting is completed.

D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

## 3.8 CERAMIC TILE WALL INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Ceramic Tile Wall Installation: Where interior wall installations is indicated, comply with the following:

1. Tile Type/Products: Wall tile as follows.

a. Dal-tile or equal, Style: Village Blend.
b. Style: 6"x12" with 3"x12" wall cap w/ coved base if offered
c. Color: As selected from full color range
d. Installation: TCA W244-03

D. GROUT FOR WALLS, Mapei or equal, provide sealer on all tile grout

## 3.9 CERAMIC MOSAICS UNGLAZED FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Ceramic Floor Tile Installation: Where interior wall installations is indicated, comply with the following:

1. Tile Type/Products: Floor tile as follows.

a. Dal-tile or equal, Style: Village Blend.
b. Style: 12"x12"
c. Color: As selected from full color range
d. Installation: TCA F113-03

E. GROUT FOR FLOOR, Mapei or equal, provide sealer on all tile grout.

END OF SECTION 09310

# SECTION 09511 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes ceilings consisting of acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product specified.

B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounted items. Show the following:

1. Ceiling suspension system members.
2. Method of attaching suspension system hangers to building structure.
3. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures; air outlets and inlets; speakers; sprinklers; and special moldings at walls, column penetrations, and other junctures of acoustical ceilings with adjoining construction.
4. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/8 inch = 1 foot (1:96).

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual acoustical panels or sections of acoustical panels, suspension systems, and moldings showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of ceiling assembly indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each type of ceiling assembly indicated; in sets for each color, texture, and pattern specified, showing the full range of variations expected in these characteristics.

1. 6-inch- (150-mm-) square samples of each acoustical panel type, pattern, and color.
2. Full-size samples of each acoustical panel type, pattern, and color.
3. Set of 12-inch- (300-mm-) long samples of exposed suspension system members, including moldings, for each color and system type required.

E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of contracting officer and owners, and other information specified.

F. Product Test Reports: Indicate compliance of acoustical panel ceilings and components with requirements based on comprehensive testing of current products.

G. Research/Evaluation Reports: Evidence of acoustical panel ceiling's and components' compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed acoustical panel ceilings similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations for Ceiling Units: Obtain each acoustical ceiling panel from one source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying the Work.

C. Source Limitations for Suspension System: Obtain each suspension system from one source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying the Work.

1. Obtain both acoustical ceiling panels and suspension system from the same manufacturer.

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical panel ceilings that comply with the following requirements:

1. Fire-response tests were performed by UL, ITS/Warnock Hersey, or another independent testing and inspecting agency that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that performs testing and follow-up services.
2. Surface-burning characteristics of acoustical panels comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84.
3. Fire-resistance-rated assemblies, which are indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory," from ITS/Warnock Hersey's "Directory of Listed Products," or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency, are identical in materials and construction to those tested per ASTM E 119.
4. Products are identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical panels and suspension system components to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient tempera-

ture and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels describing contents.

1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size units equal to 10.0 percent of amount installed.
2. Suspension System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products indicated for each designation in the Acoustical Panel Ceiling Schedule at the end of Part 3.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting Method for Measuring Noise Reduction Coefficient: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches (400 mm) away from test surface per ASTM E 795.

B. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing ASTM E 1264 pattern designations and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by the Project Manager from each manufacturer's full range of products that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.

C. Antimicrobial Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial solution consisting of a synergistic blend of substituted ammonium salts of alkylated phosphoric acids admixed with free alkylated phosphoric acid that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria.

D. Panel Characteristics: Comply with requirements indicated in the Acoustical Panel Ceiling Schedule at the end of Part 3, including those referencing ASTM E 1264 classifications.

2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable ASTM C 635 requirements.

B. Metal Suspension System Characteristics: Comply with requirements indicated in the Acoustical Panel Ceiling Schedule at the end of Part 3.

C. Finishes and Colors, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated.

D. Attachment Devices: Size for five times design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Cast-in-Place and Postinstalled Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Type: Postinstalled expansion anchors.
   b. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (0.005 mm) for Class SC service condition (mild).

2. Postinstalled Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

E. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:

1. Zinc-Coated Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
2. Nickel-Copper-Alloy Wire: ASTM B 164, nickel-copper-alloy UNS No. N04400.
3. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung) will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- (2.69-mm-) diameter wire.

F. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

G. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

H. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide; formed with 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick, galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) diameter bolts.

I. Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems

indicated; formed from sheet metal of same material and finish as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.

1. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
3. For narrow-face suspension systems, provide suspension system and manufacturer's standard edge moldings that match width and configuration of exposed runners.

## 2.4 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and the following requirements:

1. Product is effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

B. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.

C. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:

a. PL Acoustical Sealant; Chemrex, Inc., Contech Brands.
b. AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant; Pecora Corp.
c. SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant; United States Gypsum Co.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage, and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordination: Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling anchors whose installation is specified in other Sections.

1. Furnish cast-in-place anchors and similar devices to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordinating other work.

B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with publications referenced below per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."

1. Standard for Ceiling Suspension System Installations: Comply with ASTM C 636.
2. Standard for Ceiling Suspension Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with ASTM E 580.
3. CISCA's Guidelines for Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with CISCA's "Guidelines for Seismic Restraint of Direct-Hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies--Seismic Zones 3 & 4."
4. U.B.C.'s "Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and for Lay-in Panel Ceilings": U.B.C. Standard 25-2.

B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
3. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
4. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
5. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure; that are appropriate for substrate; and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
6. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both structure to which hangers are attached and type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
7. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or drilled-in anchors that extend through forms into concrete.
8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; and provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.

C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.

D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.

1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m). Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.

E. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fitted accurately into suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.

1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:

a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.

2. Paint cut panel edges remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.

3. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

## 3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

## 3.5 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING SCHEDULE

A. Ceiling type "CT-1" (see drawings A-DT500) Acoustical Panel Ceiling:

1. Products: Provide the following: Armstrong Ceiling system or pre-approved equal, "Dune" tegular or equal, 24" x 24" panels.

2. 9/16" Suprafine exposed tee suspension grid system.

B. Ceiling type "CT-2" (see drawings A-DT500) Panel Ceiling:

1. Products: Provide the following: Armstrong Ceiling system or pre-approved equal, "Metal Works, Effects", Wood Looks, 2'x2' ceiling system

2. 15/16" Effects Black "Vector", tee suspension grid system.

3. Provide 6" Axiom "Effects" edge trim.

END OF SECTION 09511

# SECTION 09570 – WOOD CEILING SYSTEM

## PART 1. GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This section describes the requirements for providing the suspended metal ceiling systems as indicated on the drawings and specified, to include:

1. Linear wood ceiling panels

2. Suspension assemblies

3. Accessories; provide all other necessary items including devices for attachments to overhead construction, secondary members, splines, splices, connecting clips, wall connectors, wall trims and all other devices required for a complete installation.

4. Coordinate items penetrating or being integrated into ceiling systems with responsible trades.

### 1.03 Quality Assurance

A. Reference Standards:

1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

a. C635 Specifications for Metal Suspension for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panel Ceiling.

2. Local Building Code, current edition requirements.

3. All woodworking materials shall meet the requirements of the Architectural Woodworking Institute. (AWI) AWI and/or WIC.

### 1.04 Submittals

A. Comply with the requirements of Division 1, Section 01300, Submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product descriptions and specifications for metal ceiling system.

C. Samples: Submit full size ceiling panel minimum of 12" long showing straight edge detail with an attached suspension system and perimeter trim member in the specified finish.

D. Shop Drawings:

1. Provide properly dimensioned shop drawings showing ceiling layout. Show all locations, markings, quantities, materials, sizes and shapes and indicate all methods of connecting, anchoring, fastening, bracing and attaching to work of other trades. Shop drawing submittals to be on computer aided design systems and furnished on computer disks. System shall be compatible with that of the architect.

## PART 2. PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Project design is based on materials and systems of Ceilings Plus, Los Angeles, CA 800-822-3411, www.ceilingsplus.com

Other manufacturers must be approved prior to the bid in written form, by the architect. Specified manufacturer's standard of quality and manufacturing tolerances shall be criteria for evaluating "equivalent" product.

### 2.02 LINEAR WOOD CEILING PANELS

A. Linear Wood Panels, "Planx" #PL-II. Class A Fire rated with flame spread 20, Smoke developed 25. (Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. UL#723.)

B. The panel thickness shall be min. 3/4" with detail to accept steel attachment clip supplied with system. The panels shall be Class I fire rated core with a select veneer species as selected by the architect. The panels will be finished with a clear, two-step sealer and topcoat on front and backside. All exposed surfaces of the veneer shall be finish sanded with 600-grit sandpaper between sealer and finish coat.

C. The wood veneer specie shall be 3 face on (all exposed faces) with a generic balancing veneer on back. Veneer shall be as selected by the architect. Range of veneer grain and color to be submitted for approval.

D. No fasteners of any kind shall be visible on exposed face surfaces of ceiling panels or support tees. Down light openings and sprinkler holes shall be neatly cut and finished as required.

E. Use extruded aluminum splices, supplied by specified manufacturer to align and control elevation of panels.

### 2.03 SUPPORTING GRID

A. Supporting grid system shall consist of straight, factory formed tee in adequate thickness, to support loads. Finish tee color black, unless otherwise specified by architect.

B. Ceiling suspension shall meet structural requirements as required in ASTM 635, ASTM 636, heavy duty direct hung ceilings. Main runners shall be spaced min 2' on center to support load of panels.

C. Hanger attachments shall be 12-ga. pre-straightened steel wires, rods or other approved hanging device that will support required loads.

D. Tolerances: Maximum deviation of ceiling panels from edge to edge in width shall not exceed 1/8" in 10' when measured with a straightedge placed at any directional location on the finished surfaces. Maximum deviation shall not exceed 1/4" from level in any area or room.

PART 3. EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. General Installation:

1. Materials shall be installed in strict accordance with procedures recommended by the manufacturer and requirements of agencies having jurisdiction. All materials for this section shall be from a single source ceiling manufacturer with minimum 5 years experience with products of the nature specified.

2. Attach supporting channels of adequate strength to construction above by approved connection method according to local building codes.

3. The contractor responsible for the work of this section shall be qualified and experienced in the performance of this work and done so for no less than a period of 5 years.

B. Product Handling

1. Delivery: Deliver wood ceiling materials to jobsite in unopened containers identified with product manufacturer's name, trade name and other applicable identification.

2. Storage: Store all materials in dry and protected locations until installation. Relative humidity should be approximately 50-55% at 70 degrees F (21 degrees C). Store away from direct sunlight. Install when space is completely conditioned, clean and free of airborne particles.

3. Remove and replace units that have been damaged or cannot be satisfactorily cleaned to the owner's or architect's acceptance, at no additional cost to the owner. To clean materials follow manufacturer's written cleaning procedures.

C. Maintenance

1. Maintenance instructions, as written by the manufacturer, are to be left with the building owner.

# SECTION 09651 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

## 1.1 GENERAL

A. Submittals: As follows:

1. Product Data: For each type of product specified.
2. Samples: Of each different color and pattern of resilient product specified.
3. Maintenance Data: For resilient floor tile to include in the maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

B. Extra Materials: Deliver extra materials to Owner as follows:

1. Furnish not less than one box for each color of resilient tile flooring installed.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, those indicated in the Resilient Tile Flooring Schedule at the end of this Section.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products indicated for each designation in the Resilient Tile Flooring Schedule at the end of this Section.

C. Vinyl Composition Floor Tile: Products complying with ASTM F 1066 and with requirements specified in the Resilient Tile Flooring Schedule.

D. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based formulation provided or approved by flooring manufacturer for applications indicated.

E. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where installation of resilient products will occur, with Installer present, for compliance with manufacturer's requirements. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for resilient product installation and comply with requirements specified.

1. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by flooring manufacturer.
2. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation: Comply with resilient product manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive resilient products.

C. Tile Installation: Comply with tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.

1. Lay out tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half of a tile at perimeter.

   a. Lay tiles square with room axis.

2. Match tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered.
   a. Lay tiles in basket-weave pattern with grain direction alternating in adjacent tiles.
   b. Lay tiles in pattern of colors and sizes indicated on Drawings.

D. Resilient Accessory Installation: Install resilient accessories according to manufacturer's written installation instructions.

E. Clean and protect resilient products according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Clean resilient products after installation and not more than 4 days before dates scheduled for inspections intended to establish date of Substantial Completion in each area of Project.

F. Tile Floor Schedule
1. Color #1 as noted on drawings shall be Mannington Commerical "Essentials or equal"

2. Color #2 as noted on drawings shall be Mannington Commerical "Essentials or equal"

END OF SECTION 09651

# SECTION 09653 - RESILIENT WALL BASE AND ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Resilient wall base.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product specified.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard sample sets consisting of sections of units showing the full range of colors and patterns available for each type of product indicated.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer to perform work of this Section who has specialized in installing resilient products similar to those required for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and color of product specified from one source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying the Work.

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 W/sq. cm or greater when tested per ASTM E 648.
2. Smoke Density: Maximum specific optical density of 450 or less when tested per ASTM E 662.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened cartons and containers, each bearing names of product and manufacturer, Project identification, and shipping and handling instructions.

B. Store products in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained between 50 and 90 deg F (10 and 32 deg C).

C. Move products into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours before installation, unless longer conditioning period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain a temperature of not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C) in spaces to receive resilient products for at least 48 hours before installation, during installation, and for at least 48 hours after installation, unless manufacturer's written recommendations specify longer time periods. After postinstallation period, maintain a temperature of not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).

B. Do not install products until they are at the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.

C. For resilient products installed on traffic surfaces, close spaces to traffic during installation and for time period after installation recommended in writing by manufacturer.

D. Coordinate resilient product installation with other construction to minimize possibility of damage and soiling during remainder of construction period. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels describing contents.

1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet (3 linear m) for each 500 linear feet (150 linear m) or fraction thereof, of each different type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.
2. Deliver extra materials to Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, those indicated in the Resilient Wall Base and Accessory Schedule at the end of Part 3.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products indicated for each designation in the Resilient Wall Base and Accessory Schedule at the end of Part 3.

2.2 RESILIENT WALL BASE

A. Rubber Wall Base: Products complying with resilient wall base and accessories section 3.5 of this specification section.

2.3 RESILIENT ACCESSORIES

A. Rubber Accessories: Products complying with requirements specified in the Resilient Wall Base and Accessory Schedule.

2.4 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient product manufacturer for applications indicated.

B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where installation of resilient products will occur, with Installer present, for compliance with manufacturer's requirements, including those for maximum moisture content. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for resilient product installation and comply with requirements specified. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive resilient products.

B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.

C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.

D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing resilient products. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, or dust. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install resilient products according to manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Apply resilient wall base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

1. Install wall base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
2. Tightly adhere wall base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
3. Do not stretch base during installation.

4. Form outside corners on job, from straight pieces of maximum lengths possible, without whitening at bends. Shave back of base at points where bends occur and remove strips perpendicular to length of base that are only deep enough to produce a snug fit without removing more than half the wall base thickness.
5. Form inside corners on job, from straight pieces of maximum lengths possible, by cutting an inverted V-shaped notch in toe of wall base at the point where corner is formed. Shave back of base where necessary to produce a snug fit to substrate.

C. Place resilient products so they are butted to adjacent materials and bond to substrates with adhesive. Install reducer strips at edges of flooring that would otherwise be exposed.

## 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing resilient products:

1. Remove adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by resilient product manufacturers.
2. Sweep or vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
3. Do not wash resilient products until after time period recommended by resilient product manufacturer.
4. Damp-mop or sponge resilient products to remove marks and soil.

B. Protect resilient products against mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by resilient product manufacturer.

1. Apply protective floor polish to vinyl resilient products installed on floors and stairs that are free from soil, visible adhesive, and surface blemishes, if recommended by manufacturer.

   a. Use commercially available product acceptable to resilient product manufacturer.
   b. Coordinate selection of floor polish with Owner's maintenance service.

2. Cover resilient products installed on floors and stairs with undyed, untreated building paper until inspection for Substantial Completion.

C. Clean resilient products not more than 4 days before dates scheduled for inspections intended to establish date of Substantial Completion in each area of Project. Clean products according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

1. Before cleaning, strip protective floor polish that was applied to vinyl products on floors and stairs after completing installation only if required to restore polish finish and if recommended by resilient product manufacturer.
2. After cleaning, reapply polish on vinyl products on floors to restore protective floor finish according to resilient product manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate with Owner's maintenance program.

## 3.5 RESILIENT WALL BASE AND ACCESSORY SCHEDULE

A. Rubber Wall Base: Where designated, provide rubber wall base complying with the following:

1. Color and Pattern: Roppe 700 series or approved equal by others, color as selected by project manager to match existing building color.

2. Style: 4" Straight edge at carpet locations
3. Style: 4" Coved edge at scheduled locations
4. Style 6" Coved edge at scheduled locations

END OF SECTION 09653

SECTION 09680 - CARPET

1.1 GENERAL

A. Submittals: As follows:

1. Product Data for each type of product indicated.
2. Samples for each product required.
3. Product schedule using same room and product designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
4. Maintenance data for carpet to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

B. Extra Materials: Furnish 15 percent of amount installed, but not less than 10 sq. yd. (8.3 sq. m).

C. Carpet to be purchased and installed by general contractor.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Carpet Type I : **Interface, Entropy, Variations**

1. Color and Pattern: As selected by Project manager
   Style: #14648
   Carpet Type: Tile
   Flaming Mode: (ASTM E-648):
   Smoke Density: ASTM E 662 – Less than 450
   Warranty: As per State Requirements

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet performance. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for carpet installation and comply with requirements specified.

1. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and slabs are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet manufacturer

B. Preparation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and carpet manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet installation.

C. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.

D. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents.

E. Comply with carpet manufacturer's written recommendations for seam locations and direction of carpet; maintain uniformity of carpet direction and lay of pile. At doorways, center seams under the door in closed position.

F. Cut and fit carpet to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet manufacturer.

G. Extend carpet into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.

H. Install pattern as per manufactures recommendations

I. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet:

1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet manufacturer.
2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet surface.
3. Vacuum carpet using commercial machine with face-beater element.

J. Protect installed carpet to comply with CRI 104, Section 15, "Protection of Indoor Installations."

END OF SECTION 09680

# SECTION 09770 - SPECIAL WALL SURFACES (Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Panels)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Special wall surfaces, including fiberglass reinforced plastic panels.

B. Related Sections: Section related to this section include:

1. Division Gypsum board assemblies Section 09255.

### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Performance Requirements: Provide fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) panels which have been manufactured and installed to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage, or failure.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal Procedures Section.

B. Product Data: Submit product data, including manufacturer's SPEC-DATA product sheet, for specified products.

C. Samples: Submit selection and verification samples for finishes, colors and textures. Submit two samples of each type of panel, trim and fastener.

D. Quality Assurance Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties.
2. Certificates: Product certificates signed by manufacturer certifying materials comply with specified performance characteristics, criteria and physical requirements.

E. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:
1. Warranty: Warranty documents specified herein.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Installer Qualifications: Installer should be experienced in performing work of this section and should have specialized in installation of work similar to that required for this project.

a. Certificate: When requested, submit certificate indicating qualifications.

2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer should be capable of providing field service representation during construction and should be capable of approving application method.Specifier

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, & HANDLING

A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirements Sections.

B. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid construction delays.

C. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact. Package sheets on skids or pallets for shipment to project site.

D. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by manufacturer. Store panels indoors in a dry place at the project site.

E. Handling: Remove foreign matter from face of panel by use of a soft bristle brush, avoiding abrasive action.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Requirements:

1. Installation shall not begin until building is enclosed, permanent heating and cooling equipment is in operation, and residual moisture from plaster, concrete or terrazzo work has dissipated.
2. During installation, and for not less than 48 hours before, maintain an ambient temperature and relative humidity within limits required by type of adhesive used and recommendation of adhesive manufacturer.
3. Provide ventilation to disperse fumes during application of adhesive as recommended by adhesive manufacturer.

B. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.

B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC (FRP) PANELS

A. Manufacturer: Kemlite Company or equal.

1. Contact: P.O. Box 2429, Joilet, IL 60434; Telephone: (800) 435-0080, (815) 467-8600; Fax: (815) 467-8666.

2. F.R.P:

a. Color: from manufacturers full line of colors.
b. Size: 4' x 8',.
c. Moldings: Provide harmonizing PVC (polyvinyl chloride) moldings.

3. Surfaseal Surface Protection: Provide manufacturer's proprietary surfaseal surface protection for fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) panels.
4. Division Bars, Corner Trim: Panel manufacturer's standard length extruded vinyl pieces; longest length possible to eliminate end joints.
5. Fasteners: Noncorrosive drive rivets.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Kemlite Glasbord-P Fiberglass Panels with Surfaseal Surface Protection:

1. Rating: Class III (C) Interior Finish.
2. Wall Panels: Finish, thickness and color shall be:

a. Embossed 0.09" (2.3 mm) Glasbord-P with Surfaseal color: 85 white, 83 colonial white, 70 soft beige, 48 pearl gray, 66 silver, 84 ivory.

3. Performance Properties: Provide products with the following properties:

a. Class C Flamespread of 200 or less, Smoke Developed of 450 or lower per ASTM E84 latest version.
b. Barcol Hardness (scratch resistance) per ASTM D2583 of:

1) 42 for embossed 0.09" (2.3 mm) Glasbord-P.

c. Panels shall exhibit no more than a 0.038percent weight loss after a 25-cycle Taber Abrasion Test using CS-17 abrasive wheels with 1000 g weight.
d. Meets USDA/FSIS Requirements.
e. Complies with ICBO Report Number 4583.
f. A means of frontside identification and confirmation of meeting Class III (C) the interior finish requirement after installation and while in service (without labels) embossed panels only.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Adhesive: Provide panel adhesive as recommended by panel manufacturer.

2.4 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Related Materials: Refer to other sections listed in Related Sections paragraph herein for related materials.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY

A. Source Quality: Obtain fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) panels from a single manufacturer. Provide panels and molding only from manufacturer specified to ensure warranty and color harmonization of accessories.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions, and product carton instructions for installation.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify that substrate conditions (which have been previously installed under other sections) are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1. Examine backup surfaces to determine that corners are plumb and straight, surfaces are smooth, uniform, clean, free from foreign matter, nails countersunk, joints and cracks filled flush and smooth with the adjoining surface.
2. Do not begin installation until backup surfaces are in a satisfactory condition.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: prepair gypsum dry wall as per manufactures requirements for installation

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Fiberglass Reinforced Panel (FRP) Installation:

1. Cut and drill panels with carbide tipped saw blades or drill bits, or cut with snips.
2. Install panels with manufacturer's recommended gap for panel field and comer joints.
3. Predrill fastener holes in panels with 1/8" (3.2 mm) oversize.
4. For trowel type and application of adhesive, follow adhesive manufacturer's recommendations.
5. Using products acceptable to panel manufacturer, install FRP system in accordance with panel manufacturer's printed instructions. Comply with panel manufacturer's Installation Guide #6211.

B. Site Tolerances: 1/16".

C. Related Products Installation: Refer to other sections listed in Related Sections paragraph herein for related materials installation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Upon Owner's request, provide manufacturer's field service consisting of product use recommendations and periodic site visits for inspection of product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Cleaning: Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas. Repair or replace products that have been installed and are damaged. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to owner's acceptance. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.

1. Remove any adhesive or excessive sealant from panel face using solvent or cleaner recommended by panel manufacturer.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protection: Protect installed product and finish surfaces from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 09770

# SECTION 09900 - PAINTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes surface preparation and field painting of the following:

1. Exposed exterior items and surfaces.
2. Exposed interior items and surfaces.
3. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.

B. Paint exposed surfaces, except where the paint schedules indicate that a surface or material is not to be painted or is to remain natural. If the paint schedules do not specifically mention an item or a surface, paint the item or surface the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces whether or not schedules indicate colors. If the schedules do not indicate color or finish, the Architect will select from standard colors and finishes available.

1. Painting includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color coding), hangers, exposed steel and iron work, and primed metal surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment.

C. Do not paint prefinished items, concealed surfaces, finished metal surfaces, operating parts, and labels.

1. Prefinished items include the following factory-finished components:

a. Architectural woodwork and casework.
b. Metal toilet enclosures.
c. Elevator entrance doors and frames.
d. Elevator equipment.
e. Finished mechanical and electrical equipment.
f. Light fixtures.
g. Distribution cabinets.

2. Concealed surfaces include walls or ceilings in the following generally inaccessible spaces:

a. Foundation spaces.
b. Furred areas.
c. Ceiling plenums.
d. Utility tunnels.
e. Pipe spaces.
f. Duct shafts.
g. Elevator shafts.

3. Finished metal surfaces include the following:

   a. Anodized aluminum.
   b. Stainless steel.
   c. Chromium plate.
   d. Copper.
   e. Bronze and brass.

4. Operating parts include moving parts of operating equipment and the following:

   a. Valve and damper operators.
   b. Linkages.
   c. Sensing devices.
   d. Motor and fan shafts.

5. Labels: Do not paint over Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Factory Mutual (FM), or other code-required labels or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

D. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving" for traffic-marking paint.
2. Division 2 Section "Portland Cement Concrete Paving" for traffic-marking paint.
3. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop priming structural steel.
4. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming ferrous metal.
5. Division 6 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for shop priming interior architectural woodwork.
6. Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames" for shop priming steel doors and frames.
7. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for surface preparation for gypsum board.
8. Divisions 15 and 16: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is specified in Divisions 15 and 16, respectively.

E. Alternates: Refer to Division 1 Section "Alternates" for description of Work in this Section affected by alternates.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. General: Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D 16 apply to this Section.

1. Flat refers to a lusterless or matte finish with a gloss range below 15 when measured at an 85-degree meter.
2. Eggshell refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 5 and 20 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
3. Satin refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 15 and 35 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
4. Semigloss refers to medium-sheen finish with a gloss range between 30 and 65 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
5. Full gloss refers to high-sheen finish with a gloss range more than 65 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each paint system specified. Include block fillers and primers.

1. Material List: Provide an inclusive list of required coating materials. Indicate each material and cross-reference specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
2. Manufacturer's Information: Provide manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material proposed for use.
3. Certification by the manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for each type of finish-coat material indicated.

1. After color selection, the Architect will furnish color chips for surfaces to be coated.

C. Samples for Verification: Of each color and material to be applied, with texture to simulate actual conditions, on representative Samples of the actual substrate.

1. Provide stepped Samples, defining each separate coat, including block fillers and primers. Use representative colors when preparing Samples for review. Resubmit until required sheen, color, and texture are achieved.
2. Provide a list of materials and applications for each coat of each sample. Label each sample for location and application.
3. Submit Samples on the following substrates for the Architect's review of color and texture only:
   a. Stained or Natural Wood: Provide two 4-by-8-inch (100-by-200-mm) samples of natural- or stained-wood finish on actual wood surfaces.
   b. Ferrous Metal: Provide two 4-inch- (100-mm-) square samples of flat metal and two 8-inch- (200-mm-) long samples of solid metal for each color and finish.

D. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced applicator who has completed painting system applications similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain block fillers, primers, and undercoat materials for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.

C. Benchmark Samples (Mockups): Provide a full-coat benchmark finish sample of each type of coating and substrate required on the Project. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P5. Duplicate finish of approved prepared samples.

1. The Architect will select one room or surface to represent surfaces and conditions for each type of coating and substrate to be painted.

   a. Wall Surfaces: Provide samples on at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m) of wall surface.
   b. Small Areas and Items: The Architect will designate an item or area as required.

2. After permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated, apply coatings in this room or to each surface according to the Schedule or as specified. Provide required sheen, color, and texture on each surface.

a. After finishes are accepted, the Architect will use the room or surface to evaluate coating systems of a similar nature.

3. Final approval of colors will be from job-applied samples.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to the Project Site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and the following information:

1. Product name or title of material.
2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
4. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
5. Thinning instructions.
6. Application instructions.
7. Color name and number.
8. VOC content.

B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F (7 deg C). Maintain containers used in storage in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.

1. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from fire and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and application.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Apply water-based paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 90 deg F (10 and 32 deg C).

B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 and 95 deg F (7.2 and 35 deg C).

C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog, or mist; or when the relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; or at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

1. Painting may continue during inclement weather if surfaces and areas to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by manufacturer during application and drying periods.

## 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra paint materials from the same production run as the materials applied in the quantities described below. Package paint materials in unopened, factory-sealed containers for storage and identify with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to the Owner.

1. Quantity: Furnish the Owner with extra paint materials in the quantities indicated below:
   a. Interior, Semigloss Acrylic Enamel: 2 gal. (7.57 L) of each color applied.

2. Quantity: Furnish the Owner with an additional 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.785 L) or 1 case, as appropriate, of each material and color applied.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in the paint schedules.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products in the paint schedules.

C. Manufacturers Names: The following manufacturers are referred to in the paint schedules by use of shortened versions of their names, which are shown in parentheses:

1. Devoe & Raynolds Co. (Devoe).
2. Fuller-O'Brien Paints (Fuller).
3. Glidden Co. (The) (Glidden).
4. Benjamin Moore & Co. (Moore).
5. PPG Industries, Inc. (PPG).
6. Pratt & Lambert, Inc. (P & L).
7. Sherwin-Williams Co. (S-W).

### 2.2 PAINT MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, undercoats, and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Material Quality: Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.

1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.

C. Colors: Match colors indicated by reference to manufacturer's color designations.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with the Applicator present, under which painting will be performed for compliance with paint application requirements.

1. Do not begin to apply paint until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces receiving paint are thoroughly dry.

2. Start of painting will be construed as the Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions within a particular area.

B. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total system for various substrates. On request, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers.

1. Notify the Architect about anticipated problems using the materials specified over substrates primed by others.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of the size or weight of the item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations in each space or area, reinstall items removed using workers skilled in the trades involved.

B. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean the substrates of substances that could impair the bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease before cleaning.

1. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.

C. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition and as specified.

1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime.

2. Wood: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view smooth and dust off.
   a. Prime, stain, or seal wood to be painted immediately on delivery. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, and paneling.
   b. When transparent finish is required, backprime with spar varnish.
   c. Seal tops, bottoms, and cutouts of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish or sealer immediately on delivery.

3. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous-metal surfaces that have not been shop coated; remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or mechanical cleaning methods that comply with the Steel Structures Painting Council's (SSPC) recommendations.

   a. Blast steel surfaces clean as recommended by paint system manufacturer and according to requirements of SSPC-SP 10.
   b. Treat bare and sandblasted or pickled clean metal with a metal treatment wash coat before priming.
   c. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged. Wire-brush, clean with solvents recommended by paint manufacturer, and touch up with the same primer as the shop coat.

4. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces with nonpetroleum-based solvents so surface is free of oil and surface contaminants. Remove pretreatment from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods.

D. Materials Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.
3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.

E. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to simplify identification of each coat when multiple coats of the same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

## 3.3 APPLICATION

A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.

1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the schedules.
2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, convector covers, covers for finned-tube radiation, grilles, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain the system integrity and provide desired protection.
5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before the final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.
7. Paint back sides of access panels and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.
8. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.

B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.

1. The number of coats and the film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until the previous coat has cured as recommended by the manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
2. Omit primer on metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touchup painted.
3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb

pressure, and where application of another coat of paint does not cause the undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.

C. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for the type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for the surface or item being painted.
2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by the manufacturer for the material and texture required.
3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by the manufacturer for the material and texture required.

D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials no thinner than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate. Provide the total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by the manufacturer.

E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed in equipment rooms and in occupied spaces.

F. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Piping, pipe hangers, and supports.
2. Heat exchangers.
3. Tanks.
4. Ductwork.
5. Insulation.
6. Motors and mechanical equipment.
7. Accessory items.

G. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Conduit and fittings.
2. Switchgear.
3. Panelboards.

H. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat of material, as recommended by the manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.

I. Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce a glass-smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, runs, cloudiness, color irregularity, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections.

1. Provide satin finish for final coats.

J. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. The Owner reserves the right to invoke the following test procedure at any time and as often as the Owner deems necessary during the period when paint is being applied:

1. The Owner will engage the services of an independent testing agency to sample the paint material being used. Samples of material delivered to the Project will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in the presence of the Contractor.
2. The testing agency will perform appropriate tests for the following characteristics as required by the Owner:

   a. Quantitative material analysis.
   b. Abrasion resistance.
   c. Apparent reflectivity.
   d. Flexibility.
   e. Washability.
   f. Absorption.
   g. Accelerated weathering.
   h. Dry opacity.
   i. Accelerated yellowness.
   j. Recoating.
   k. Skinning.
   l. Color retention.
   m. Alkali and mildew resistance.

3. The Owner may direct the Contractor to stop painting if test results show material being used does not comply with specified requirements. The Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint from the site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces previously coated with the rejected paint. If necessary, the Contractor may be required to remove rejected paint from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with specified paint, the 2 coatings are incompatible.

## 3.5 CLEANING

A. Cleanup: At the end of each workday, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint materials from the site.

1. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by washing and scraping. Be careful not to scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

## 3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage by painting. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as approved by Architect.

B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work after completing painting operations.

1. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P1.

## 3.7 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

A. Brick Sealers:

1. Brick Block Silane/Siloxane Reeminum Sealer (or approved equal).

B. Exterior Concrete: Provide the following finish systems over exterior concrete:

1. V-Seal Concrete Sealer 102.

C. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior ferrous metal. Primer is not required on shop-primed items.

1. Low-Luster Acrylic Finish: 2 finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.

a. Primer: Rust-inhibitive metal primer applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.3 mils (0.033 mm).

1) Devoe: 13101 Mirrolac Rust Penetrating Metal Primer.
2) Fuller: 621-04 Blox-Rust Alkyd Metal Primer.
3) Glidden: 5205 Glid-Guard Tank & Structural Primer, Red.
4) Moore: IronClad Retardo Rust-Inhibitive Paint #163.
5) PPG: 6-208 Speedhide Interior/Exterior Rust Inhibitive Steel Primer, Red.
6) P & L: S/D 1009 Suprime "9" Interior/Exterior Alkyd Metal Primer.

b. First and Second Coat: Low-sheen (eggshell or satin), exterior, acrylic-latex paint applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.8 mils (0.071 mm).

1) Devoe: 16XX Wonder-Shield Exterior Latex Satin House and Trim Paint.
2) Fuller: 261-XX Eggshell Sheen Latex House and Trim Paint.
3) Glidden: 6700 Series Spred Ultra Exterior Satin Latex House and Trim Paint.
4) Moore: MoorGard Latex House Paint #103.
5) PPG: 76 Line Sun-Proof Exterior House & Trim Acrylic Satin Latex.
6) P & L: Z/F 4200 Series Accolade Exterior Eggshell.

D. Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior zinc-coated (galvanized) metal surfaces:

1. Semigloss, Acrylic-Enamel Finish: 2 finish coats over a galvanized metal primer.

a. Primer: Galvanized metal primer applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils (0.031 mm).

1) Devoe: 8502/8520 Mirrolac-WB Interior/Exterior Waterborne Flat DTM Primer and Finish.
2) Fuller: 621-05 Blox-Rust Latex Metal Primer.
3) Glidden: 5205 Glid-Guard Tank & Structural Primer, Red.
4) Moore: IronClad Galvanized Metal Latex Primer #155.
5) PPG: 90-709 Pitt-Tech One Pack Interior/Exterior Primer/Finish DTM Industrial Enamel.
6) P & L: Z/F 1003 Suprime "3" Interior/Exterior Latex Metal Primer.

b. First and Second Coats: Semigloss, exterior, acrylic-latex enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.6 mils (0.066 mm).

1) Devoe: 17XX Wonder-Shield Semi-Gloss Exterior Acrylic Latex House and Trim Paint.
2) Fuller: 664-XX Weather King II Semi-Gloss House & Trim Paint.
3) Glidden: 6600 Series Spred Ultra Exterior Gloss Latex House & Trim Paint.
4) Moore: MoorGlo Latex House & Trim Paint #096.
5) PPG: 78 Line Sun-Proof Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex House and Trim Paint.
6) P & L: Z/F 3100 Series Aqua Royal Latex House & Trim Finish.

3.8 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Floor Slab: Provide the following paint systems over interior concrete floor surfaces:

1. Moxie 1500 interior concrete floor sealer.

B. Gypsum Board: Provide the following finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:

1. Semigloss, Acrylic-Enamel Finish: 2 finish coats over a primer.

a. Primer: Latex-based, interior primer applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils (0.031 mm).

1) Devoe: 50801 Wonder-Tones Interior Vinyl Latex Primer-Sealer.
2) Fuller: 220-20 Pro-Tech Latex Wall Primer Sealer, White.
3) Glidden: 5111 Spred Ultra Latex Primer-Sealer.
4) Moore: Regal First Coat Interior Latex Primer & Underbody #216.
5) PPG: 17-10 Quick-Drying Interior Latex Primer-Sealer.
6) P & L: Z/F 1001 Suprime "1" 100 Percent Acrylic Multi-Purpose Primer.

b. First and Second Coats: Semigloss, acrylic-latex, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.6 mils (0.066 mm).

1) Devoe: 39XX Wonder-Tones Semi-Gloss Interior Latex Enamel.
2) Fuller: 214-XX AA Enamel Interior Acrylic Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel.
3) Glidden: 8200 Series Spred Ultra Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel.
4) Moore: Moore's Regal AquaGlo Vinyl-Acrylic Latex Enamel #333.
5) PPG: 88-110 Satinhide Interior Enamel Wall & Trim Lo-Lustre Semi-Gloss Latex.
6) P & L: Z/F 4100 Series Accolade Interior Semi-Gloss.

C. Natural-Finish Woodwork: Provide the following natural finishes over new, interior woodwork:

1. Waterborne, Satin-Varnish Finish: 2 finish coats of a waterborne, clear-satin varnish over a sanding sealer. Wipe wood filler before applying stain.

a. Filler Coat: Paste-wood filler applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer.

1) Devoe: None required.
2) Moore: Benwood Paste Wood Filler #238.
3) PPG: None required.
4) P & L: None required.

b. Sealer Coat: Clear sanding sealer applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer.

1) Devoe: 4200 WoodWorks Waterborne Quick-Dry Clear Sealer.
2) Moore: None recommended.
3) PPG: 77-30 Rez Interior Quick-Drying Sealer and Finish.
4) P & L: Z 7520 Latex Sanding Sealer.

c. First and Second Finish Coats: Waterborne, varnish finish applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer.

1) Devoe: 4300 WoodWorks Waterborne Crystal Clear Finish, Satin.
2) Moore: Stays Clear Acrylic Polyurethane #423, Satin.
3) PPG: 77-49 Rez Satin Acrylic Clear Polyurethane.
4) P & L: Z 17 Acrylic Latex Varnish, Satin.

D. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over ferrous metal:

1. Semigloss, Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat over an enamel undercoater and a primer.

a. Primer: Quick-drying, rust-inhibitive, alkyd-based or epoxy-metal primer, as recommended by the manufacturer for this substrate, applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils (0.038 mm).

1) Devoe: 13101 Mirrolac Rust Penetrating Metal Primer.
2) Fuller: 621-04 Blox-Rust Alkyd & Structural Metal Primer.
3) Glidden: 5207 Glid-Guard Tank & Structural Primer, White.
4) Moore: IronClad Retardo Rust-Inhibitive Paint #163.
5) PPG: 6-208 Speedhide Interior/Exterior Rust Inhibitive Steel Primer.
6) P & L: S 4551 Tech-Gard High Performance Rust Inhibitor Primer.

b. Undercoat: Alkyd, interior enamel undercoat or semigloss, acrylic-latex, interior enamel, as recommended by the manufacturer for this substrate, applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.3 mils (0.033 mm).

1) Devoe: 39XX Wonder-Tones Semi-Gloss Interior Latex Enamel.
2) Fuller: 220-07 Interior Alkyd Enamel Undercoat.
3) Glidden: 8200 Series Spred Ultra Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel.
4) Moore: Moore's Alkyd Enamel Underbody #217.
5) PPG: 6-6 Speedhide Interior Quick-Drying Enamel Undercoater.
6) P & L: Z/F 4100 Series Accolade Interior Semi-Gloss.

c. Finish Coat: Semigloss, acrylic-latex, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.3 mils (0.033 mm).

1) Devoe: 39XX Wonder-Tones Semi-Gloss Interior Latex Enamel.
2) Fuller: 214-XX AA Enamel Interior Acrylic Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel.
3) Glidden: 8200 Series Spred Ultra Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel.
4) Moore: Moore's Regal AquaGlo Vinyl-Acrylic Latex Enamel #333.
5) PPG: 88-110 Satinhide Interior Enamel Wall & Trim Lo-Lustre Semi-Gloss Latex.
6) P & L: Z/F 4100 Series Accolade Interior Semi-Gloss.

E. Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over zinc-coated metal:

1. Semigloss, Acrylic-Enamel Finish: 2 finish coats over a primer.

a. Primer: Galvanized metal primer applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils (0.031 mm).

1) Devoe: 13201 Mirrolac Galvanized Metal Primer.
2) Fuller: 621-05 Blox-Rust Latex Metal Primer.
3) Glidden: 5207 Glid-Guard Tank & Structural Primer, White.
4) Moore: IronClad Galvanized Metal Latex Primer #155.
5) PPG: 90-709 Pitt-Tech One Pack Interior/Exterior Primer/Finish DTM Industrial Enamel.
6) P & L: Z/F 1003 Suprime "3" Interior/Exterior Latex Metal Primer.

b. First and Second Coats: Semigloss, acrylic-latex, interior enamel applied at spreading rate recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.6 mils (0.066 mm).

1) Devoe: 39XX Wonder-Tones Semi-Gloss Interior Latex Enamel.
2) Fuller: 214-XX AA Enamel Interior Acrylic Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel.
3) Glidden: 8200 Series Spred Ultra Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel.
4) Moore: Moore's Regal AquaGlo Vinyl-Acrylic Latex Enamel #333.
5) PPG: 88-110 Satinhide Interior Enamel Wall & Trim Lo-Lustre Semi-Gloss Latex.
6) P & L: Z/F 4100 Series Accolade Interior Semi-Gloss.

END OF SECTION 09900

# SECTION 10100 - VISUAL DISPLAY BOARDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Porcelain enamel markerboards.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For each type of visual display board required.

   1. Include dimensioned elevations. Show location of joints between individual panels where unit dimensions exceed maximum panel length.
   2. Include sections of typical trim members.
   3. Show anchors, grounds, reinforcement, accessories, layout, and installation details.

B. Samples for Verification: Of the following products, showing color and texture or finish selected. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets showing the full range of variations expected. Prepare Samples from the same material to be used for the Work.

   1. Visual Display Boards: Sample panels not less than 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm), mounted on the substrate indicated for the final Work. Include a panel for each type, color, and texture required.
   2. Aluminum Trim and Accessories: Samples of each finish type and color, on 6-inch- (150-mm-) long sections of extrusions and not less than 4-inch (100-mm) squares of sheet or plate. Include Sample sets showing the full range of color variations expected.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain visual display boards through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of visual display boards and are based on the products indicated. Other manufacturers' products with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."

   1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval and only to the extent needed to comply with performance requirements. Where modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify field measurements before preparation of Shop Drawings and before fabrication to ensure proper fitting. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay the Work.
2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating chalkboards without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: The special porcelain enamel chalkboard warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Porcelain Enamel Markerboards:

a. Best-Rite Chalkboard Co.
b. Carolina Chalkboard Co.
c. Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc.
d. Ghent Manufacturing, Inc.
e. Greensteel, Inc.
f. Lemco, Inc.
g. Marsh Chalkboard Company.
h. Nelson Adams Company.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Markerboards: Balanced, high-pressure-laminated, porcelain enamel markerboard of 3-ply construction consisting of face sheet, core material, and backing.

1. Face Sheet: 0.024-inch- (0.61-mm-), "Vitracite," porcelain enamel clad, Type 1, stretcher-leveled aluminized-steel face sheet, as manufactured by Claridge Products and Equipment. Fuse porcelain enamel coating to steel at approximately 1000 deg F (540 deg C).

a. Cover Coat: Provide manufacturer's standard, light-colored, special writing surface with gloss finish intended for use with erasable dry markers.

2. Core: 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick, particleboard core material complying with requirements of ANSI A208.1, Grade 1-M-1.
3. Backing Sheet: 0.018-inch- (0.46-mm-) thick, galvanized steel sheet backing.
4. Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, moisture-resistant, thermoplastic-type adhesive.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Metal Trim and Accessories: Fabricate frames and trim of not less than 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) thick, extruded-aluminum alloy, size and shape as indicated, to suit type of installation. Provide straight, single-length units. Keep joints to a minimum. Miter corners to a neat, hairline closure.

1. Where size of visual display boards or other conditions require support in addition to normal trim, provide structural supports or modify trim as indicated or as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard structural support accessories to suit conditions indicated.
2. Field-Applied Trim: Manufacturer's standard snap-on trim with no visible screws or exposed joints.
3. Chalktray: Manufacturer's standard, continuous, solid, extrusion-type, aluminum chalktray with ribbed section and smoothly curved exposed ends for each chalkboard.
4. Map Rail: Furnish map rail at top of each unit, complete with the following accessories:

a. Display Rail: Provide continuous cork display rail approximately 1 or 2 inches (25 or 50 mm) wide, as indicated, integral with map rail.
b. End Stops: Provide one end stop at each end of map rail.
c. Map Hooks: Provide 2 map hooks with flexible metal clips for every 48 inches (1220 mm) of map rail or fraction thereof.

## 2.4 FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes.

B. Finish designations prefixed by AA conform to the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

C. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 607.1.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine wall surfaces, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting installation of visual display boards.

1. Surfaces to receive markerboards shall be free of dirt, scaling paint, and projections or depressions that would affect smooth, finished surfaces of markerboards.

2. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Deliver factory-built visual display boards completely assembled in one piece without joints, where possible. If dimensions exceed panel size, provide 2 or more pieces of equal length as acceptable to Architect. When overall dimensions require delivery in separate units, prefit components at the factory, disassemble for delivery, and make final joints at the site. Use splines at joints to maintain surface alignment.

B. Install units in locations and at mounting heights indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions. Keep perimeter lines straight, plumb, and level. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.

C. Coordinate Project-site-assembled units with grounds, trim, and accessories. Join parts with a neat, precision fit.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Verify that accessories required for each unit have been properly installed and that operating units function properly.

B. Clean units according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 10100

# SECTION 10155 - TOILET COMPARTMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes toilet compartments and screens as follows:

1. Type: Steel, color-coated finish.
2. Compartment Style: Overhead braced and floor anchored.
3. Screen Style: Wall hung.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 10 "Toilet and Bath Accessories" for toilet paper holders, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and style of toilet compartment and screen specified. Include details of construction relative to materials, fabrication, and installation. Include details of anchors, hardware, and fastenings.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation of toilet compartment and screen assemblies. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Show locations of reinforcement and cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of sections of actual units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of compartment or screen indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: Of each compartment or screen color and finish required. samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.

### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions in areas of installation by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating units without field measurements. Coordinate supports, adjacent construction, and fixture locations to ensure actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Accurate Partitions Corporation.
2. All American Metal Corp.
3. Ampco Products, Inc.
4. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
5. Capitol Partitions, Inc.
6. Compression Polymers Group; Comtec Industries.
7. Crane Plumbing; Sanymetal.
8. Knickerbocker Partition Corporation.
9. Lambaton/Universal.
10. MASCO; Flush-Metal Partition Corp.
11. Metpar Corp.
12. Santana Products, Inc.
13. Young Sales Corp.; DesignRite.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials that have been selected for surface flatness and smoothness. Exposed surfaces that exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, telegraphing of core material, or other imperfections on finished units are unacceptable.

B. Steel Sheets for Color-Coated Finish: Provide mill-phosphatized steel sheet that is leveled to stretcher-leveled flatness complying with the requirements of standards indicated below:

1. Electrolytically Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 591 (ASTM A 591M), Class C, of the following minimum thicknesses:

a. Pilasters (Overhead Braced): 0.0359 inch (0.9 mm).
b. Pilasters (Unbraced): 0.0478 inch (1.2 mm).
c. Panels and Screens: 0.0359 inch (0.9 mm).

d. Doors: 0.0299 inch (0.75 mm).
e. Tapping Reinforcement: 0.0747 inch (1.9 mm).

C. Core Material for Metal-Faced Units: Manufacturer's standard sound-deadening honeycomb of resin-impregnated kraft paper in thickness required to provide finished thickness of 1 inch (25 mm) minimum for doors, panels, and screens and 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum for pilasters.

D. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): ASTM A 666, Type 302 or 304 stainless steel, not less than 0.0312 inch (0.8 mm) thick and 3 inches (75 mm) high, finished to match hardware.

E. Stirrup Brackets: Manufacturer's standard ear or U-brackets for attaching panels and screens to walls and pilasters of the following material:
1. Material: Stainless steel.

F. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Manufacturer's standard design for attaching panels and screens to walls and pilasters of the following material:
1. Material: Stainless steel.

G. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard design, heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories of the following material:
1. Material: Stainless steel.

H. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile in manufacturer's standard finish.

I. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum strip in manufacturer's standard finish.

J. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel or chrome-plated steel or brass, finished to match hardware, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use hot-dip galvanized or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide standard doors, panels, screens, and pilasters fabricated for compartment system. Provide units with cutouts and drilled holes to receive compartment-mounted hardware, accessories, and grab bars, as indicated.

1. Provide internal reinforcement in metal units for compartment-mounted hardware, accessories, and grab bars, as indicated.

B. Metal-Faced Toilet Compartments and Screens: Pressure laminate seamless face sheets to core material and provide continuous, interlocking molding strip or lapped and formed edges. Seal corners by welding or clips. Grind exposed welds smooth.

C. Overhead-Braced-and-Floor-Anchored Compartments: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, fasteners, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Make provisions for setting and securing continuous head rail at top of each pilaster. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.

D. Wall-Hung Screens: Provide units in sizes indicated of same construction and finish as compartment panels, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide metal-faced screens with integral full-height flanges for attachment to wall.

E. Doors: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- (610-mm-) wide in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- (813-mm-) wide clear opening for compartments indicated to be handicapped accessible.

1. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold door open at any angle up to 90 degrees.
2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper designed for emergency access. Provide units that comply with accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction at compartments indicated to be handicapped accessible.
3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumpers at out-swinging doors or entrance screen doors.

## 2.4 ZINC- OR ZINC-ALLOY-COATED STEEL SHEET FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying finishes.

B. Color-Coated Finish: Provide manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with coating manufacturer's written instructions for pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

1. Color: One color in each room as selected by Contracting Officer from manufacturer's full range of colors.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, plumb, and level. Provide clearances of not more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) between pilasters and panels and not more than 1 inch (25 mm) between panels and walls. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.

1. Secure panels to walls and panels with not less than 2 stirrup brackets attached near top and bottom of panel. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.

B. Overhead-Braced-and-Floor-Anchored Compartments: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with not less than 2 fasteners. Hang doors and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.

C. Screens: Attach with anchoring devices according to manufacturer's written instructions and to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb and to resist lateral impact.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors and swing doors in entrance screens to return to fully closed position.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure toilet compartments and screens are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 10155

# SECTION 10520 - FIRE-PROTECTION SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Portable fire extinguishers.
2. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:

    a. Portable fire extinguishers.

3. Fire-protection accessories.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 9 Section "Painting" for field-painting fire-protection cabinets.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire-protection specialties.

1. Fire Extinguishers: Include rating and classification.
2. Cabinets: Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of cabinet finish indicated.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed cabinet finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below and of same thickness and material indicated for the Work. If finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.

1. Size: 6-by-6-inch- (150-by-150-mm-) square Samples.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers and cabinets through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers."

C. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Provide extinguishers listed and labeled by FM.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated and provided by Owner under separate Contract are accommodated.

B. Coordinate size of cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of hoses, hose valves, and hose racks indicated are accommodated.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Portable Fire Extinguishers:

a. Amerex Corporation.
b. Ansul Incorporated.
c. Badger; Div. of Figgie Fire Protection Systems.
d. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
e. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
f. General Fire Extinguisher Corporation.
g. J.L. Industries, Inc.
h. Kidde: Walter Kidde, The Fire Extinguisher Co.
i. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
j. Modern Metal Products; Div. of Technico.
k. Moon/American, Inc.
l. Pem All; Div. of Pem Systems, Inc.
m. Potter-Roemer; Div. of Smith Industries, Inc.
n. Samson Products, Inc.
o. Watrous; Div. of American Specialties, Inc.

2. Fire-Protection Cabinets:

a. Filtrine Manufacturing Company.
b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
c. General Accessory Manufacturing Co.
d. J.L. Industries, Inc.
e. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
f. Modern Metal Products; Div. of Technico.
g. Moon/American, Inc.
h. Potter-Roemer; Div. of Smith Industries, Inc.
i. Samson Products, Inc.

j. Thomas Enterprises.
k. Watrous; Div. of American Specialties, Inc.

C. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the products specified in the Fire-Protection Cabinet Schedule at the end of Part 3.

D. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products indicated for each designation in the Fire-Protection Cabinet Schedule at the end of Part 3.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: Carbon steel, complying with ASTM A 366/A 366M, commercial quality, stretcher leveled, temper rolled.

B. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:

1. Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
2. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).

C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666/A 666M, Type 302 or Type 304 alloy.

D. Copper-Alloy Sheet, Brass: ASTM B 36/B 36M, alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).

E. Copper-Alloy Sheet, Bronze: ASTM B 36/B 36M, alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).

## 2.3 PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. General: Provide fire extinguishers of type, size, and capacity for each cabinet and other locations indicated.

B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 20-lb (4.5-kg) nominal capacity, in enameled-steel container.

## 2.4 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINETS

A. Cabinet Construction: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub), with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated. Weld joints and grind smooth. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.

1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Listed and labeled to meet requirements of ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of wall where it is installed.

a. Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.0478-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) thick, fire-barrier material.
b. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

2. Cabinet Metal: Enameled-steel sheet.
3. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.

B. Cabinet Type: Suitable for the following:

1. Fire extinguisher.

C. Cabinet Mounting: Suitable for the following mounting conditions:

1. Semirecessed: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of shallow depth to suit style of trim indicated.

D. Cabinet Trim Style: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

1. Trimless: Surface of surrounding wall finishes flush with exterior finished surface of cabinet frame and door, without overlapping trim attached to cabinet.

a. Provide recessed flange, of same material as box, attached to box to act as plaster stop.

2. Exposed Trim: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

a. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) backbend depth.

E. Cabinet Trim Material: Manufacturer's standard, as follows:

1. Steel sheet.

F. Door Material: Manufacturer's standard, as follows:

1. Steel sheet.

G. Door Glazing: Manufacturer's standard, as follows:

1. Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, as follows:
   a. Thickness: 6 mm.

2. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, as follows:

a. Class 1 (clear).

3. Tempered Break Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 1.5 mm.

H. Door Style: Manufacturer's standard design, as follows:

1. Fully glazed panel with frame.

I. Door Construction: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, of materials indicated, and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.

1. Provide minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick door frames, fabricated with tubular stiles and rails, and hollow-metal design.
2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.

J. Door Hardware: Provide manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated. Provide either lever handle with cam-action latch, or exposed or concealed door pull and friction latch. Provide concealed or continuous-type hinge permitting door to open 180 degrees.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure extinguisher, of sizes required for types and capacities of extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.

1. Provide brackets for extinguishers not located in cabinets.
2. Provide brackets for extinguishers located in cabinets.

B. Break-Glass Strike: Provide manufacturer's standard metal strike, complete with chain and mounting clip, secured to cabinet.

C. Door Locks: Provide cylinder lock, with all cabinets keyed alike.

D. Identification: Provide lettering to comply with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, color, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
1. Identify fire extinguisher in cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" applied to door.
   a. Application Process: Decals.
   b. Lettering Color: White.
   c. Orientation: Vertical.

## 2.6 COLORS AND TEXTURES

A. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range for these characteristics.

## 2.7 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

D. Cabinet and Door Finishes: Provide manufacturer's standard baked-enamel paint for the following:

1. Exterior of cabinets and doors, except for those surfaces indicated to receive another finish.
2. Interior of cabinets and doors.

## 2.8 STEEL FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, grease, mill scale, rust, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond using manufacturer's standard methods.

B. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for cabinets to verify actual locations of piping connections before cabinet installation.

B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets are to be installed.

C. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.

1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged units.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing fire-protection specialties.

B. Install in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Prepare recesses for cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.
2. Fasten mounting brackets to structure and cabinets, square and plumb.
3. Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION

A. Adjust cabinet doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Refinish or replace cabinets and doors damaged during installation.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that cabinets and doors are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 10520

# SECTION 10801 - TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

## GENERAL

### RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### SUMMARY

This Section includes the following:

Toilet and bath accessories.

Related Sections include the following:

### SUBMITTALS

Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions and thicknesses, dimensions, profiles, fastening and mounting methods, specified options, and finishes for each type of accessory specified.

Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required. Use designations indicated in the Toilet and Bath Accessory Schedule and room designations indicated on Drawings in product schedule.

Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Provide lists of replacement parts and service recommendations.

### QUALITY ASSURANCE

Source Limitations: Provide products of same manufacturer for each type of accessory unit and for units exposed to view in same areas, unless otherwise approved by Architect.

### COORDINATION

Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by disabled persons, proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

### WARRANTY

General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

Manufacturer's Mirror Warranty: Written warranty, executed by mirror manufacturer agreeing to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects within minimum warranty period indicated.

Minimum Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PRODUCTS

### MANUFACTURERS

Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering accessories that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide accessories by one of the following:

Toilet and Bath Accessories: See specified accessories alternate must meet specified quality and construction. Pre-approval by architect prior to bidding.

A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
American Specialties, Inc.
Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
Bradley Corporation.
McKinney/Parker Washroom Accessories Corp.

Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, those indicated in the Toilet and Bath Accessory Schedule at the end of Part 3.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products indicated for each designation in the Toilet and Bath Accessory Schedule at the end of Part 3.

### MATERIALS

Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, with No. 4 finish (satin), in 0.0312-inch (0.8-mm) minimum nominal thickness, unless otherwise indicated.

Mirror Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q2, nominal 6.0 mm thick, with silvering, electroplated copper coating, and protective organic coating complying with FS DD-M-411.

Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, tamper and theft resistant when exposed, and of galvanized steel when concealed.

### FABRICATION

General: One, maximum 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) diameter, unobtrusive stamped manufacturer logo, as approved by Architect, is permitted on exposed face of accessories. On interior surface not exposed to view or back surface of each accessory, provide printed, waterproof label or stamped nameplate indicating manufacturer's name and product model number.

Surface-Mounted Toilet Accessories: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with continuous stainless-steel hinge. Provide concealed anchorage where possible.

Framed Glass-Mirror Units: Fabricate frames for glass-mirror units to accommodate glass edge protection material. Provide mirror backing and support system that permits rigid, tamper-resistant glass installation and prevents moisture accumulation.

Provide galvanized steel backing sheet, not less than 0.034 inch (0.85 mm) and full mirror size, with nonabsorptive filler material. Corrugated cardboard is not an acceptable filler material.

Mirror-Unit Hangers: Provide mirror-unit mounting system that permits rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, as follows:

Heavy-duty wall brackets of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devices requiring a special tool to remove.

Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of three keys to Owner.

## EXECUTION

### INSTALLATION

Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated. Provide blocking in walls as needed for sufficient installation Toilet and Bath accessories.

Secure mirrors to walls in concealed, tamper-resistant manner with special hangers, toggle bolts, or screws. Set units level, plumb, and square at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated.

Install grab bars to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf (1112 N), when tested according to method in ASTM F 446.

### ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation and verify that mechanisms function properly. Replace damaged or defective items.

Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.

Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturers written recommendations.

### TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORY SCHEDULE

1. Waste Receptacle, Bobrick B-277 or approved equal, paper towel dispenser/ waste receptacle, stainless steel satin finish.
2. Soap Dispenser, Bobrick B-4112 or approved equal, stainless steel satin finish.
3. Grab Bar, Bobrick B-5806 or approved equal, stainless steel grab bar with snap flange 1 @ 36" long , 1 at 30" long and one at 18" long . 1 per each handicap stall or per approved equal by others

4. Utility Shelf With Broom Holders and Rag Hooks, Bobrick B-224 or approved equal.
5. Paper Towel Dispenser: Bobrick B-4262 stainless steel satin finish, or pre-approved equal by others.
6. Surface Mounted Multi-Roll Toilet Tissue Dispenser: Bobrick B-4288 stainless steel satin finish, or pre-approved equal by others.
7. Surface Mounted Toilet Seat Cover Dispenser: Bobrick B-4221 stainless steel satin finish, or pre-approved equal by others.
8. Partition mounted Sanitary Napkin Disposal: (1 per each women's stall) Bobrick B-354 stainless steel satin finish, or pre-approved equal by others.

Mirror Unit, provide mirror unit complying with the following:
Stainless-Steel, Channel-Framed Mirror: Fabricate frame from stainless-steel channels in manufacturer's standard satin or bright finish with square corners mitered to hairline joints and mechanically interlocked.

END OF SECTION 10801

# SECTION 12511 - HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes venetian blinds.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for each type of horizontal louver blind specified. Include printed data on physical characteristics.

C. Shop drawings showing location and extent of blinds. Show installation details at and relationship to adjoining work. Include elevations indicating blind units. Indicate location of blind controls.

D. Samples for initial selection in the form of manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of horizontal louver blind indicated.

E. Samples for verification of the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes, showing the full range of color, texture, and pattern variations expected. Prepare samples from the same material to be used for the Work.

1. Louver: Manufacturer's standard-size unit, not less than 12 inches (300 mm) long.
2. Valance: Manufacturer's standard-size unit, not less than 12 inches (300 mm) long.

F. Schedule of horizontal louver blinds using same room designations indicated on Drawings.

G. Maintenance data for horizontal louver blinds to include in the operation and maintenance manual specified in Division 1. Include the following:

1. Methods for maintaining horizontal louver blinds and finishes.
2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to finishes and performance.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide horizontal louver blinds identical to those tested for the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Test Method: NFPA 701.
2. Rating: Pass.

B. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of horizontal louver blind from one source and by a single manufacturer.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Check actual horizontal louver blind dimensions by accurate field measurements before fabrication, and show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

B. Space Enclosure and Environmental Limitations: Do not install horizontal louver blinds until space is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are and will be continuously maintained at values near those indicated for final occupancy.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels clearly describing contents.

1. Horizontal Louver Blinds: Before installation begins, furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount of each size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Horizontal Louver Blinds:

a. Eastern Standard Corp.
b. Faber.
c. Hunter Douglas, Inc.
d. Joanna Western Mills Co.
e. Kirsch.
f. Levolor Corp.
g. Louverdrape, Inc.
h. Nanik.
i. Springs Window Fashions Division, Inc.; (Bali-Graber).
j. Verosol USA, Inc.

C. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, horizontal louver blinds that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the products specified in each Product Data sheet at the end of this Section.

D. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified in each Product Data sheet at the end of this Section.

## 2.2 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

A. Louvers: Manufacturer's standard as follows:
   1. Aluminum.Verify Nominal
   2. Nominal Louver Width: 1 inch (25 mm) (miniblinds).

B. Tilt Operation: Manual with wand.

C. Cord-Lock Operation: Top-locking cord lock; locks pull cord to stop blind in either fully opened or fully closed position only and is equipped with a ring pull not more than 10 inches (250 mm) long.

   1. Position of Cord Lock: Right side, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Cord Equalizers: Self-aligning to maintain horizontal louver blind position.

E. Valance: Match color of louvers.

F. Mounting: End.

G. Colors and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated, provide horizontal louvers complying with the following requirements:
   1. Provide Architect's selections from manufacturer's full range of colors and patterns for horizontal louver blinds of type indicated.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

A. Product Standard and Description: Comply with AWCMA Document 1029 for each horizontal louver blind unit consisting of louvers, rails, cord locks, tilting mechanisms, tapes, and installation hardware.

B. Lifting and Tilting Mechanisms: Noncorrosive, self-lubricating materials.

C. Unit Sizes: Obtain units fabricated in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F (23 deg C):

   1. Blind Units Installed Between (Inside) Jambs: Width equal to 1/4 inch (6 mm) per side or 1/2 inch (12 mm) total, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm), less than jamb to jamb dimension of opening in which each blind is installed. Length equal to 1/4 inch (6 mm), plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm), less than head to sill dimension of opening in which each blind is installed.

D. Installation Fasteners: Not less than 2 fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal noncorrosive to blind hardware and adjoining construction; support blind units under conditions of normal use.

E. Hold-Down Brackets: Manufacturer's standard, as indicated.

F. Side Channels: Manufacturer's standard, as indicated.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of horizontal louver blinds. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install blinds level, plumb, and located so exterior louver edges in any position are not closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to interior face window frame.
   1. Jamb Mounted: Install headrail flush with face of opening jamb and head.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust components and accessories for proper operation.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean blind surfaces, according to manufacturer's instructions, after installation.

B. Remove surplus materials, packaging, rubbish, and debris resulting from installation. Leave installation areas neat, clean, and ready for use.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that horizontal louver blinds are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

3.6 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLIND SCHEDULE

A. General: Provide horizontal louver blinds to comply with requirements in this Section and with the following schedule of blinds:

   1. Horizontal Louver Blind Designation:

      a. Color: Provide Architect's selections from manufacturer's full range of colors and patterns for horizontal louver blinds of type indicated.
      b. Blind Location: See architectural floor plan for location
      c. Location of Tilt Control: Right side, unless otherwise indicated.
      d. Location of Cord Lock: Left side, unless otherwise indicated.
      e. Mounting: End.

END OF SECTION 12511

## SECTION 13916 - FIRE-SUPPRESSION SPRINKLERS & PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes fire-suppression piping and equipment for the following building systems:

1. Wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinklers, including piping, valves, specialties, and automatic sprinklers.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 10 Section "Fire-Protection Specialties" for cabinets and fire extinguishers.
2. Division 16 Section "Fire Alarm Systems" for alarm devices not in this Section.

C. All sprinkler piping is to have a wall thickness less than or equal to schedule 40 and greater than schedule 10.

D. Contractor is responsible to install underground service piping and connect to existing water line. See details provided on drawings.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Working Plans: Documents, including drawings, calculations, and material specifications prepared according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 for obtaining approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Authority having Jurisdiction: The building official, Engineer and the insurance underwriter where applicable.

C. Hose Connection: Valve with threaded outlet matching fire hose coupling thread for attaching fire hose.

#### 1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design sprinkler piping according to the following and obtain approval from engineer, prior to submitting to other authorities having jurisdiction. :

1. Design Sprinkler system with the following 10% reduced flow data:
   Flow Data available directly west of proposed building
   Static - 72 psi
   Residual - 61 psi @ 2,140 gpm flowing
   Date of Test, July 21, 2010 performed by VBFA, Inc.

2. Include losses through water-service piping and valves.
3. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: As follows:

   a. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
   b. Restaurant, Kitchen, and Bakery Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
   c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
   d. Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
   e. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
   f. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
   g. Library Stack Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
   h. Retail Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
   i. Mechanical Boiler Rooms Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.

4. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design: As follows:
5. (Reduce Design areas with quick response heads when applicable and increase design area as required for pitched ceilings or Dry Pipe Systems.

   a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
   b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500- sq. ft. area.
   c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500- sq. ft. area.
   d. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.

6. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: As follows (except as modified by authorities having jurisdiction)

   a. Office Space: 225 sq. ft..
   b. Storage Areas: 130/**400** sq. ft..
   c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
   d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
   e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.
   f. Future Finish Areas 100 sq. ft. (shell space)

B. Components and Installation: Capable of producing piping systems with 175-psig minimum.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Wet Sprinkler System: Fire-suppression system with sprinkler systems. Sprinkler system is supplied from fire riser.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data for the following:

1. Pipe and fitting materials and methods of joining for sprinkler and standpipe piping.
2. Pipe hangers and supports.
3. Piping seismic restraint.
4. Valves, including specialty valves, accessories, and devices.
5. Alarm devices, include electrical data.
6. Fire department connections. Include type; number, size, and arrangement of inlets; caps and chains; size and direction of outlet; escutcheon and marking; and finish.
7. Sprinklers, escutcheons, and guards. Include sprinkler flow characteristics, mounting, finish, and other pertinent data.

B. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by engineer authorities having jurisdiction. Include hydraulic calculations, unless noted otherwise. Drawings are to be approved by the Engineer prior to submitting to other authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13 and NFPA 14. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping", Test Certification of Backflow prevention and "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Underground Piping."

D. Maintenance Data: For each type of standpipe and sprinkler specialty to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has designed and installed fire-suppression piping similar to that indicated for this Project and obtained design approval and inspection approval from authorities having jurisdiction. The Engineer requires evidence to support the ability of the contractor to perform work in the scope and volume as specified. A contractor, who cannot show such experience, may be found not suitable to perform the work. The following are the approved contractors for this project:

a. PRE-APPROVED CONTRACTOR LIST:

1. Certified Fire
2. Chaparral Fire
3. Delta Fire
4. Firetrol
5. Fire Engineering
6. Fire Services Inc.
7. The Safety Team
8. Simplex-Grinnell
9. Western Automatic
10. Western States Fire Protection

b. A contractor not listed in the "PRE-APPROVED CONTRACTORS LIST" must receive prior approval from the engineer to bid this project.

B. Engineering Responsibility: : Preparation of working plans using AutoCAD compatible drawing program, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer or Engineering Technician NICET Level III. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test or refer to data provided in section 1.4.A.1.

C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firms whose equipment, specialties, and accessories are listed by product name and manufacturer in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" and FM's "Fire Protection Approval Guide" and that comply with other requirements indicated.

D. Standpipe and Sprinkler Components: Listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. NFPA Standards: Equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing complying with the following:

1. NFPA 13-07, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
2. NFPA 70-05, "National Electric Code."
3. NFPA 72-07, "National Fire Alarm Code."

G. International Conference of Building Code Officials codes and standards complying with the following:

1. IBC-2006, "International Building Code."
2. IFC-2006, "International Fire Code."

## 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: A supply of spare sprinklers (never less than 6) shall be supplied and located in a cabinet where the temperature does not exceed 100EF. These sprinklers shall correspond to the types and temperature ratings fo the sprinklers installed on the project. Special sprinkler head wrenches shall be included to correspond to the types of heads provided.

   The stock of spare sprinklers shall include all types and ratings installed and shall be as follows:

   a. For systems with not over 300 sprinklers, not less than 6 sprinklers.
   b. For systems with 300 to 1000 sprinklers, not less than 12 sprinklers.
   c. For systems with over 1000 sprinklers, not less than 24 sprinklers.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Specialty Valves and Devices:

   a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
   b. Star Sprinkler Corp.
   c. Viking Corp.
   d. Tyco Corp.

2. Water-Flow Indicators and Supervisory Switches:

   a. Pittway Corp.; System Sensor Div.
   b. Potter Electric Signal Co.
   c. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
   d. Viking Corp.
   e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
   f. Tyco Corp.

3. Sprinkler, Drain and Alarm Test Fittings:

    a. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
    b. Victaulic Co. of America.
    c. Tyco Corp.

4. Zone Check Assembly: Water-Flow Indicators

    a. Pittway Corp.; System Sensor Div.

5. Sprinkler, Inspector's Test Fittings:

    a. Fire-End and Croker Corp.

6. Fire Department Connections:

    a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
    b. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
    c. Firematic Sprinkler Devices, Inc.
    d. Tyco Corp.
    e. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
    f. Smith Industries, Inc.; Potter-Roemer Div.

7. Sprinklers:

    a. Tyco Corp.
    b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
    c. Viking Corp.
    d. Victaulic Co. of America

8. Gate Valves:

    a. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; Waterous Co.
    b. Tyco corp.
    c. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div.
    d. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
    e. Nibco, Inc.

9. Indicator Valves:

    a. Tyco Corp.
    b. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
    c. Milwaukee Valve Co., Inc.
    d. Nibco, Inc.
    e. Victaulic Co. of America.

10. Double Check Valve Assembly

    a. Ames
    b. Febco
    c. Wilkins
    d. Watts

11. Fire-Protection-Service Valves:

a. Tyco Corp.
b. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
c. Nibco, Inc.
d. Victaulic Co. of America.

12. Keyed Couplings for Steel Piping:

a. Tyco Corp.
b. Victaulic Co. of America.
c. Gruvlok.
d. Ward, Couplox

13. Press-Seal Fittings for Steel Piping: (not allowed)
14. Mechanically formed tee outlet (not allowed)

## 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

## 2.3 PIPES AND TUBES

A. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, mechanical-joint type; with cement-mortar lining and seal coat according to AWWA C104. Include gland, rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts according to AWWA C111.

B. Standard-Weight Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, ASTM A 135, or ASTM A 795; Schedule 40 in NPS 6 and smaller, and Schedule 30 in NPS 8 and larger.

C. Thinwall, Threadable Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, with wall thickness less than Schedule 40 and greater than Schedule 10, (Dyna-Thread 40.)

D. Schedule 10 Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller and NFPA 13 specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10. (Not Allowed)

E. Hybrid Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, lightwall, with wall thickness less than Schedule 10 and greater than Schedule 5. (DynaFlow-10) (Not allowed).

F. Copper Tube.

## 2.4 PIPE AND TUBE FITTINGS

A. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile-iron or cast-iron type; or AWWA C153, ductile-iron, compact mechanical-joint type. Include cement-mortar lining and seal coat according to AWWA C104 and glands, rubber gaskets, and bolts and nuts according to AWWA C111.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Flanges: ASME B16.1.

C. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4.

D. Steel, Threaded Couplings: ASTM A 865.

E. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, ASME B16.9, or ASME B16.11.

F. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5.

G. Steel, Grooved-End Fittings: UL-listed and FM-approved, ASTM A 47, malleable iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron; with dimensions matching steel pipe and ends factory grooved according to AWWA C606.

## 2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for pipe-flange gasket materials and welding filler metals.

B. Ductile-Iron, Flanged Joints: AWWA C115, ductile-iron or gray-iron pipe flanges, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts and nuts.

C. Steel, Keyed Couplings: UL 213 and AWWA C606, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ASTM A 536, ductile-iron housing, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts and nuts. Include listing for dry-pipe service for couplings for dry piping.

D. Transition Couplings: AWWA C219, sleeve type, or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and with ends compatible with piping to be joined.

## 2.6 POLYETHYLENE ENCASEMENT

A. Polyethylene encasement for Ductile-Iron Piping: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, film, 0.008-inch minimum thickness, tube or sheet.

## 2.7 GENERAL-DUTY VALVES

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Valves" for gate, ball, butterfly, globe, and check valves not required to be UL listed and FM approved.

## 2.8 FIRE-PROTECTION-SERVICE VALVES

A. General: UL listed and FM approved, with minimum 175-psig nonshock working-pressure rating. Valves for grooved-end piping may be furnished with grooved ends instead of type of ends specified.

B. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: UL 262; cast-bronze, threaded ends; solid wedge; OS&Y; and rising stem.

C. Indicating Valves, NPS 6" and Smaller: UL 1091; butterfly or ball-type, and integral indicating device.

1. Indicator: Electrical prewired, supervisory switch. Coordinate voltage and number of circuits with Fire Alarm requirements.

D. Gate Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: UL 262, iron body, bronze mounted, taper wedge, OS&Y, and rising stem. Include replaceable, bronze, wedge facing rings and flanged ends.

E. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: UL 312 or MSS SP-80, Class 150; bronze body with bronze disc and threaded ends.

F. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: UL 312, cast-iron body and bolted cap, with bronze disc or cast-iron disc with bronze-disc ring and flanged ends or grooved ends.

G. Double Check Valve Assembly: Resilient seated, spring loaded with testable outlets provided, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.9 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Ball Drip Valves: UL 1726, automatic drain valve, NPS 3/4, ball check device with threaded ends.

## 2.10 SPRINKLERS

A. Sprinkler Types and Categories: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating, unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

B. Sprinkler types, features, and options include the following:

1. Concealed ceiling sprinklers, including cover plate, where indicated.
2. Extended-coverage sprinklers.
3. Pendent sprinklers.
4. Pendent, dry-type sprinklers.
5. Quick-response sprinklers.
6. Recessed sprinklers, including escutcheon.
7. Sidewall sprinklers.
8. Sidewall, dry-type sprinklers.
9. Upright sprinklers.

C. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome-plated, bronze, and painted.

D. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications.

1. Ceiling Mounting: White, one piece, flat.
2. Sidewall Mounting: Whtie, one piece, flat.

E. Sprinkler Guards: Wire-cage type, including fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.11 SPECIALTY SPRINKLER FITTINGS

A. Specialty Fittings: UL listed; made of steel, ductile iron, or other materials compatible with piping.

B. Locking-Lug Fittings: (not allowed).

C. Mechanical-T Fittings: (not allowed).

D. Mechanical-Cross Fittings: (not allowed).

E. Drop-Nipple Fittings: UL 1474, with threaded inlet, threaded outlet, and seals; adjustable.

F. Sprinkler, Drain and Alarm Test Fittings: UL-listed, cast- or ductile-iron body; with threaded inlet and outlet, test valve, and orifice and sight glass.

## 2.12 HOSE CONNECTIONS

A.. Description: UL 668, 300-psig minimum pressure rating, brass, hose valve for connecting fire hose. Include 90-degree angle pattern design; female NPS inlet and male hose outlet; and lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include NPS 2-1/2 with 1-1/2 reducer with cap, and hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire department threads.

1. Valve Operation: Non Adjustable & Pressure Regulating type.
2. Finish: Rough chrome-plated.

## 2.13 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Wall, Fire Department Connections: UL 405; cast-brass body with brass, wall, escutcheon plate; brass, lugged caps with gaskets and brass chains; and brass, lugged swivel connections. Include inlets with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire department sizes and threads, outlet with pipe threads, extension pipe nipples, check devices or clappers for inlets, and escutcheon plate with marking "AUTO-SPRINKLER FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION." Number of NPS 2-1/2 connections and size of outlet as indicated. (4 X 2 ½ x 2 ½ )

1. Type: Flush mounting.
2. Escutcheon Plate: Square.
3. Finish: Rough brass

## 2.14 ALARM DEVICES

A. General: Types matching piping and equipment connections.

B. Horn/Strobe Alarm, listed for exterior installation.

C. Water-Flow Indicators: UL 346; electrical-supervision, vane-type water-flow detector; with 250-psig pressure rating; and designed for horizontal or vertical installation. Include two single-pole, double-throw, circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.

D. Indicator-Post Supervisory Switches: UL 753; electrical; single-pole, double throw; with normally closed contacts. Include design that signals controlled indicator-post valve is in other than fully open position.

E. Pressure switches: UL 753; electrical-supervision-type, water-flow switch with retard feature. Include single-pole, double- throw, normally closed contacts and design that operates on rising pressure and signals water flow.

F. Valve Supervisory Switches: UL 753; electrical; single-pole, double throw; with normally closed contacts. Include design that signals controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

2.15PRESSURE GAGES

A. Pressure Gages: UL 393, 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch- diameter dial with dial range of 0 to 250 psig.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Obtain Engineer's Water Analysis or fire-hydrant flow test. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article in Part 1 of this Section.

B. Engineer's Water Analysis. See Flow Analysis provided by Van Boerum & Frank Associates.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.3 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.

B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable thickness, fire- and smoke-rated construction, framing for hose-station cabinets, and other conditions where hose connections and stations are to be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.4 COORDINATION

A. All work of this contractor will be coordinated with other trades to insure minimal changes to the sprinkler system from the designs. Careful coordination of mechanical and electrical ducts, pipe and conduit shall be required.

B. The ceiling cavity must be carefully reviewed and coordinated with all trades. In the event of conflict, the installation of the mechanical equipment and piping shall be in the following order: plumbing waste, rainwater, and soil lines; supply, return, and exhaust ductwork, water piping, fire protection piping; and pneumatic control piping.

C. All piping shall be run concealed where possible. All lines will be run as high as possible so as to not interfere with future changes to ceiling heights or other mechanical equipment. This contractor will be responsible for all sleeves, core drills, and sealing of penetrations in walls, floors, and structural members to facilitate the installation of the system, however, no holes in structural members will be allowed unless approved by the structural engineer.

3.5 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Flanges, unions, and transition and special fittings with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system's pressure rating may be used in aboveground applications, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Use galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends; steel, grooved-end fittings; steel, keyed couplings; and grooved joints.

C. Underground Service-Entrance Piping: Use mechanical-joint pipe, fittings and approved restrained joints methods.

D. Sprinkler Main Piping: Use the following:

1. NPS 8 and Smaller: Standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, or grooved ends. No plain ends allowed.
2. Outlets shall be welded, Mechanical tee fittings are not allowed.

E. Branch line piping: Use the following:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Threadable steel pipe with threaded ends; cast- or malleable-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints. (Mechanical Tee fittings are not allowed)

## 3.6 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Fire-Protection-Service Valves: UL listed for applications where required by NFPA 13 and NFPA 14.
2. General-Duty Valves: For applications where UL-listed valves are not required by NFPA 13 and NFPA 14.

a. Shutoff Duty: Use gate, ball, or butterfly valves.
b. Throttling Duty: Use globe, ball, or butterfly valves.

## 3.7 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for basic piping joint construction.

B. Ductile-Iron-Piping, Grooved Joints: Use ductile-iron pipe with radius-cut-grooved ends; ductile-iron, grooved-end fittings; and ductile-iron, keyed couplings. Assemble joints with couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Steel-Piping, Grooved Joints: Use Schedule 40 steel pipe with cut or roll-grooved ends and Schedule 30 or thinner steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; steel, grooved-end fittings; and steel, keyed couplings. Assemble joints with couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling manufacturer's written instructions. Use gaskets listed for dry-pipe service for dry piping.

## 3.8 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTION

A. Install shutoff Backflow preventions assemblies, valve, pressure gage's, drain, and other accessories at connection to water service.

3.9 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for basic piping installation.

B. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.

C. Install underground service-entrance piping according to NFPA 24 and with restrained joints.

D. Make connections between underground and above-ground piping using bolted flange.

E. Install mechanical sleeve seal at pipe penetrations in basement and foundation walls. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."

F. Use approved fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

G. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller. Unions are not required on flanged devices or in piping installations using grooved joints.

H. Install flanges or flange adapters on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger connections.

I. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler piping, complete with shutoff valve, sized and located according to NFPA 13.

J. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

K. Install sprinkler zone control valves, check valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

L. Install ball drip valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or outside building.

M. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

N. Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA 13 for hanger materials. Install according to NFPA 13 for sprinkler piping.

1. No powder driven studs allowed.
2. Wrap-around braces are to be provided at end of branch lines.

O. Install piping with grooved joints according to manufacturer's written instructions. Construct rigid piping joints, unless otherwise indicated, or required by NFPA 13 for flexibility in seismic zones.

P. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.

## 3.10 SPECIALTY SPRINKLER FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install specialty sprinkler fittings according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.11 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Valves" for installing general-duty valves. Install fire-protection specialty valves, trim, fittings, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 14, manufacturer's written instructions, and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Valves: Install fire-protection-service valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire department connections. Provide permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Double Check Valve Assemblies: Install valves in vertical or horizontal position, per listings and for proper direction of flow.

## 3.12 SPRINKLER APPLICATIONS

A. General: Sprinkler heads shall be of the latest design closed spray type for 155EF unless specified otherwise or required by code. Heads in Light Hazard Occupancies shall be quick response type. Orifices larger than 1/2" may be used as required by density and spacing demands.Use sprinklers according to the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright and/or pendent sprinklers. Provide mechanical guards on all heads at or below 7'-0" height above the floor or where damage from room occupant use may occur.
2. Rooms with Ceilings: Recessed sprinklers.
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers with recessed escutcheon.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright; pendent, dry-type; and sidewall, dry-type sprinklers.
5. Provide freeze proof type automatic sprinkler heads serving exterior canopy area, unconditioned spaces, areas subject to freezing and in other areas requiring their use.
6. Heads located within the air streams of unit heaters or other heat-emitting equipment shall be selected for proper temperature rating.
7. Sprinkler Finishes: Use sprinklers with the following finishes:

    a. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Brass in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view.
    b. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with white cover plate.
    c. Recessed Sprinklers: White with white escutcheon.

B. Sprinklers: Use the following:

1. All sprinklers shall be listed, quick response type.
2. Sprinkler in future finish spaces shall be pendent/uprights installed with 1 x ½" bushing, to accommodate future finishes.
3. Finish ceiling spaces shall have recessed type canopies.

3.13 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

A. Every effort shall be required to insure that the heads form a symmetrical pattern in the ceiling with the ceiling grid, lights, diffusers and grilles. Offsets shall be made in piping to accommodate ductwork in the ceiling. Heads should be symmetrical and all piping run parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

1. In no case shall sprinkler heads be installed closer than approved distances from ceiling obstructions and HVAC ductwork.
2. Sprinkler heads shall not conflict with tile grids.
3. Sprinkler heads shall be located near center of corridors.

B. Where layout of sprinkler heads is shown on reflected ceiling plans the locations shall be followed unless approval is obtained from the Architect or such locations shown do not meet the requirements of NFPA-13. In either case, approval of the Architect shall be obtained in writing before sprinkler head locations are changed. If the installation of additional heads are needed to conform to NFPA 13 requirements in areas where heads are shown on reflected ceiling plans, they shall be included in the contract price.

C. Install sprinklers in patterns indicated.

1. Narrow dimension of 2x4 tile with sprinkler. Locate in 1 ft from end, or center of tile.

D. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing. Use dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space.

E. Future finish and tenant finish, Shell spaces shall be piped to accommodate future. Install sprinklers with 1" x ½" bushings, and space heads at a max. spacing of 100 sq. ft. per head. Occupancy shall be Ordinary-Hazard Group 1 Design.

3.14 HOSE-CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install freestanding hose connections for access and minimum passage restriction.

C. Install NPS 2-1/2 hose connections with quick-disconnect NPS 2-1/2 by NPS 1-1/2 reducer adapter, cap and chain.

3.15 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect water-supply piping and standpipes and sprinklers where indicated.

B. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire department connection. Drain to floor drain or outside building.

C. Connect piping to specialty valves, hose valves, specialties, fire department connections, and accessories.

D. Electrical Connections: Power wiring is specified in Division 16.

E. Connect alarm devices to fire alarm.

3.16 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 and in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler piping according to NFPA 13, "System Acceptance" Chapter.

B. Replace piping system components that do not pass test procedures and retest to demonstrate compliance. Repeat procedure until satisfactory results are obtained.

C. Report test results promptly and in writing to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Whether the underground serving the sprinkler system is done by this contractor or another, this contractor will be responsible to assure and have in his possession a certificate that the underground has been flushed and tested by the contractor who installed it in accordance with NFPA-24 prior to connection of the underground piping to the overhead sprinkler system.

3.18 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Remove and replace sprinklers having paint other than factory finish.

3.19 PROTECTION

A. Protect sprinklers from damage until Substantial Completion.

3.20 COMMISSIONING

A. Verify that specialty valves, trim, fittings, controls, and accessories are installed and operate correctly.

B. Verify that specified tests of piping are complete and that "Material Test Certificates" are complete.

C. Verify that damaged sprinklers and sprinklers with paint or coating not specified are replaced with new, correct type.

D. Verify that sprinklers are correct types, have correct finishes and temperature ratings, and have guards as required for each application.

E. Verify that **hose connections** and fire department connections have threads compatible with local fire department equipment.

F. Fill wet-pipe sprinkler piping with water.

G. Verify anti-freeze solution mixture and fill system with solution.

H. Coordinate with fire alarm tests. Operate as required.

3.21 DEMONSTRATION & TESTS

A. Demonstrate equipment, specialties, and accessories. Review operating and maintenance information.

B. All tests will be conducted as required by the local authority having jurisdiction, and in no case less than those required by NFPA standards. As a minimum, piping in the sprinkler system shall be tested at a water pressure at 200 psi for a period of not less two hours, or at 50 psi in excess of the normal pressure when the normal pressure is above 150 psi. Bracing shall be in place, and air shall be removed from the system through the hydrants and drain valves before the test pressure is applied. No apparent leaks will be permitted on interior or underground piping.

C. The local jurisdiction having authority and the Utah State Fire Marshal's office shall be notified at least three working days in advance of all tests and flushing. This includes any flushing of underground, hydrostatic testing, or flow testing that may be required.

D. This contractor shall make all the required tests to the sprinkler system as required by code. He shall be responsible to assure that the Contractor Test Certificates for the overhead, backflow and underground work are completed and delivered to the owner's insurance underwriter to assure proper insurance credit.

E. All tests requiring the witnessing by local authorities will be the responsibility of this contractor. If tests are not run or do not have the proper witness, then they will be run later and all damage caused by the system, or caused in uncovering the system for such test, will be borne by this contractor.

3.22 WARRANTY

A. This contractor shall warranty the sprinkler system and all its components for one year from the date of acceptance by the owner. Any costs incurred to extend any warranties of materials to assure this time frame shall be borne by this contractor.

B. Provide Operation and Maintenance Manuals with correct as-builts included. A minimum 6 sets to be provided in red 3-ring binders.

C. Electronic copy of AutoCAD as-built drawings shall also be provided on CD, with each O&M Manual.

3.23 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Flush, test and inspect sprinkler piping according to NFPA 13, "System Acceptance" Chapter.

B. Replace piping system components that do not pass test procedures and retest to demonstrate compliance. Repeat procedure until satisfactory results are obtained.

C. Report test results promptly and in writing to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION 13916

# SECTION 14200 – LIMITED USE/LIMITED APPLICATION COMMERCIAL ELEVATOR

## PART 1 GENERAL

### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Limited Use / Limited Application (LU/LA) commercial elevator with 1:2 roped hydraulic lift system.

### 1.02 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish all labor and materials, equipment and incidentals necessary to assemble and erect the commercial elevator, complete with a remote power unit and all hoses, rails, brackets, connections and controls essential for proper operation.

### 1.03 WORK BY OTHERS

A. Hoistway: Construct a hoistway of the size required by the manufacturer, complete with all demolition, additional framing, headers and framing components necessary to prepare the existing building to receive the elevator.

1. Hoistway size: 66" W x 73 1/4" D
2. The hoistway shall be vertical to within 1/8" throughout the entire height.
3. Provide structural members, installed, full length vertically of hoistway between floor plates, per manufacturer's recommendation.
4. Pit requirements: Provide 38" deep pit. Floor must sustain load specified in job drawings.
5. Overhead clearance: 10' 9"

A. Construct a machine room:

1. Provide elevator electrical circuit appropriate for particular motor, such as: 208/230 volt AC/ single or three phase / 60hz (30 amp).
2. Provide elevator lighting electrical circuit: 115 volt (15amp)

B. Provide system to maintain hoistway and machine room temperature between 50-90 degrees Fahrenheit.

### 1.04 REFERENCES

A. General: The applicable provisions of the following standards shall apply as if written here in their entirety.

B. American Society of Mechanical Engineers / American National Standards Institute (ASME/ANSI) publications:

1. ASME/ANSI A17.1 "Safety Codes for Elevators", Section 5.2 and Section 2.27.
2. ICC/ANSI A117.1.

A. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) publications:

1. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code
2. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code

1.05 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Travel: As shown on drawngs
B. Stops: as shown on drawings
C. Load Capacity: 1400 lb.
D. Speed: 30 fpm

1.06 SUBMITTALS:

A. Submittals shall be in accordance with Section 01300, SUBMITTALS.
B. Product Data: Submit product data, including manufacturer's specifications.
C. Submittal Drawings:

1. Submittal drawings showing all field construction, including dimensions.
2. Hoistway dimensions
3. Color selection charts

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications: Installer Qualifications: A company experienced in the assembly and erection of lifts and LU/LA elevators of the type specified; trained and certified by the manufacturer. Manufacturer Qualifications: A company specializing in the manufacture of lifts for the disabled and LU/LA elevators.

B. Regulatory Requirements: The complete manufacture, fabrication and erecting of the elevator shall be in compliance with all Federal, State and local codes and ordinances. The installer shall verify requirements of the local authority having jurisdiction and shall comply with all local codes and ordinances.

1.08 DELIVERY, HANDLING & STORAGE

A. All components shall be shipped to the site in substantial crates to protect from damage during shipping and handling. Upon arrival, inspect components and keep under cover until installed.

1.09 WARRANTY

A. Unit shall have a two 2 year limited parts warranty.

1.10 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance of the LU/LA elevator shall consist of regular cleaning and inspection at intervals not longer than every 6 months.
B. Inspection: ASME A17.1 requires all LU/LA elevators to be inspected every 6 months.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturer: "Evolution" model by The National Wheel-O-Vator Co., Inc.

B. Substitutions: Substitution shall be considered for approval but must be submitted and received by the architect at least 4 days prior to the addenda deadline date as listed in project schedule.

2.03 COMPONENTS

A. Car:

1. Size: 42" W x 54" D Clear
2. Enclosure: Shall be securely fastened to the car frame and platform. Shall be constructed of formed sheet steel panels with baked enamel finish. Floorboard shall be constructed of 1-1/2" AC plywood with minimum 22 Ga. steel fire pan.
3. Car entrances: Shall be equipped with D.C. powered automatic operator, horizontal sliding steel doors, automatic reopening system and clutch for hoistway door pick-up.
4. Safety Screen: Doors have full height photoelectric safety screen.
5. Car Doors: Shall be 3'0" x 6'8" with baked enamel finish.
6. Handrail: Provide one stainless steel handrail located on the car wall and mounted in accordance with ICC/ANSI A117.1 requirements.
7. Telephone: Provide ADA "Hands Free" phone mounted in control panel
8. Control panel: Provide one momentary pressure illuminated button for each landing, car keyed stop switch, alarm button, all mounted in a control panel having a removable stainless steel cover. Panel shall be designed and mounted so buttons are located in accordance with ICC/ANSI A117.1 requirements.
9. Visual feedback: Provide digital floor position indicator in control panel, indicator lights acknowledging call for car, and arrow lights indicating car's next travel direction.
10. Standard Color: As per Sherman Williams colors available
11. Audible feedback: Provide audible signal indicating car arrival and direction of travel.
12. Tactile feedback: Provide tactile/Braille characters on all car and hall call push buttons, and hoistway door jambs.
13. Interior lighting: Provide overhead light fixtures that automatically turn on when the car is in operation and turn off by means of a timer circuit.

B. Hoistway entrances:

1. Design: Provide each entrance with an automatic operating, horizontal sliding door in frame.
2. Construction: Doors and frames are steel with primed finish.
3. Doors shall have a concealed locking device, interlocked with the car operation to interrupt electrical power when the door is not securely closed. The entrance door shall be locked until car door opens.

C. Hydraulic power unit:

1. The pump, submerged motor and valve shall be pre-wired, ready for connection to the controller in the field.
2. Up direction acceleration adjustment
3. Two speed operation
4. Adjustable pressure relief valves
5. Manually operated down valve for emergency operation
6. Pressure gauges and pressure gauge isolation valves
7. Manual valve isolation between pump unit and jack
8. Low-pressure switch provided
9. Testing: Shall be factory tested prior to shipment

D. Cylinder:

1. Construction: Steel pipe with cylinder head having an internal guide ring and self-adjusting packing.
2. Safety valve: Cylinder shall be equipped with a pipe rupture safety valve to prevent uncontrolled car descent.

E. Plunger:

1. Construction: Shall be a machined steel shaft equipped with a stop, electrically welded to bottom end, to prevent plunger from leaving shaft cylinder.
2. Diameter: 90 mm.

F. Cable system: 1:2 system using (2) 3/8" – 7x19 aircraft cable integrated with rams header sheave mounted to the plunger.

G. Guide rail: Shall consist of two 8-lb. tee rails assembled and fastened. Provide brackets to hold rail assembly to walls. Rail shall be furnished with steel splice plates and hardware.

H. Car frame: Shall be equipped with non-metallic faced roller guide wheels.

I. Leveling device: Provide Hall effect switch system to maintain car within ¼" of the landing.

J. Control systems: Selective collective microprocessor. System components, i.e. car top box and main control panel shall be U.L. listed.

K. Motor (submerged): 5.0 HP, 1750-RPM 208/230 VAC, single phase.
L. Wiring:

1. Provide flexible traveling cable for electrical lights and controls in car.
2. All other electrical wiring shall be insulated, flame retardant and moisture proof copper wiring, installed in flexible metal conduit.

M. Safety Devices:

1. Slack cable protection: Provide a stainless steel linkage device that stops and sustains the car in the event of breakage or slacking of cables.
2. Terminal stopping device: Shall be provided at the top and bottom of the car travel.
3. Over speed protection: Provide a device, which in the event of the car over speeding, stops and sustains the car at that position.
4. Provide a platform toe guard at the car entrance.

N. Two battery emergency operation system:

1. Powers a light in the car.
2. Powers an emergency alarm system.
3. Powers a system to allow car to descend to bottom terminal floor.
4. The batteries shall be a re-chargeable type complete with an automatic re-charging system.

## 2.04 ACCESSORIES

A. Car color
B. Hoistway door and frame color
C. Finished flooring
D. Hydraulic tank heater
E. Electrical disconnect

## PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Inspect the hoistway and determine if the hoistway meets the manufacturer's requirements for clearances and plumb.
B. All components shall be assembled an erected in
C. strict compliance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
D. All wiring shall be in accordance with the wiring diagram furnished by the manufacturer.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Static/Running Load Test: All load rating and safety factors shall meet or exceed those specified in ASME A17.1

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Test the elevator to assure proper operation under all conditions of use. Make proper adjustments and review operating components for proper operation.
   a. National Wheel-O-Vator's Design Line 800-968-5438

**SECTION 15010 - MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL CONDITIONS

A. The General Conditions of the Contract, with the amendments, supplements, forms and requirements in Division 1, and herewith made a part of this Division.

B. All sections of Division 15 shall comply with the Mechanical General Requirements. The standards established in this section as to quality of materials and equipment, the type and quality of workmanship, mode of operations, safety rules, code requirements, etc., shall apply to all sections of this Division as though they were repeated in each Division.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. The project described herein is the UVU Facilities Building. This work shall include all labor, materials, equipment, fixtures, and devices for the entire mechanical work and a complete operating and tested installation as required for this project.

1.3 CODES & ORDINANCES

A. All work shall be executed in accordance with all underwriters, public utilities, local and state rules and regulations applicable to the trade affected. Should any change in the plans and Specifications be required to comply with these regulations, the Contractor shall notify the Architect before the time of submitting his bid. After entering into contract, the Contractor will be held to complete all work necessary to meet these requirements without extra expense to the Owner. Where work required by drawings or specifications is above the standard required, it shall be done as shown or specified.

B. Applicable codes:

Latest Edition
International Building code- 2006 Edition
International Mechanical Code- 2006 Edition
International Plumbing Code- 2006 Edition
International Fire Code- 2006 Edition

1.4 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

A. All work shall comply with the following standards.

1. Associated Air Balance council (AABC)
2. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI)
3. Air Diffusion council (ADC)
4. Air Movement and Control Association (AMCA)
5. American Gas Association (AGA)
6. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
7. American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)

8. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)
9. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM)
10. American Water Works Association (AWWA)
11. Cooling Tower Institute (CTI)
12. ETL Testing Laboratories (ETL)
13. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
14. Hydronics Institute (HI)
15. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting Industry (MSS)
16. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
17. National Electrical Code (NEC)
18. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
19. National Electrical Safety code (NESC)
20. Utah safety Standard (OSHA), Utah State Industrial Council.
21. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association (SMACNA)
22. Underwriters Laboratories (UL)
23. Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc. (TEMA)
24. Heat Exchanger Institute (HEI)
25. Hydraulic Institute (HI)
26. Thermal Insulation Manufacturer's Association (TIMA)
27. Scientific Apparatus Makers Association (SAMA)

B. Compliance Verification:

1. All items required by code or specified to conform to the ASME code shall be stamped with the ASME seal.
2. Form U-1, the manufacturer's data report for pressure vessels, is to be included in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals. National Board Register (NBR) numbers shall be provided where required by code.
3. Manufactured equipment which is represented by a UL classification and/or listing, shall bear the UL or equivalent ETL label.

## 1.5 UTILITIES & FEES

A. All fees for permits required by this work will be paid by this division. The contractor shall obtain the necessary permits to perform this work. Unless noted otherwise, all systems furnished and or installed by this Contractor, shall be complete with all utilities, components, commodities and accessories required for a fully functioning system. This Contractor shall furnish smoke generators when required for testing, furnish glycol for glycol piping systems furnish cleaners and water treatment additives.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS AND SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Submittals: As soon as possible after the contract is awarded, but in no case more than 45 calendar days thereafter, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect six (6) copies of the descriptive literature covering products and materials to be used in the installation of mechanical systems for this project. The review of the submitted data will require a minimum of 14 days. The first day starts after the day they are received in the engineers office to which the project is being constructed from. If the Contractors schedule requires return of submitted literature in less than the allotted time, the Contractor shall accelerate his submittal delivery date. The Contractor shall resubmit all items requiring re-review within 14 days of returned submittals. Refer to each specification section for items requiring submittal review. Written approval of the Owner's Representative shall be obtained before installing any such equipment or materials for the project. The submittals shall be prepared in an orderly manner, contained in a 3-ring loose-leaf binder with

index and identification tabs each item or group of items and for each specification section. All items shall be submitted at one time except automatic temperature control drawings and seismic restraint drawings which may be submitted separately within 120 days of the contract award date. Partial submittals will not be reviewed until the complete submittal is received.

Submitted literature shall bear the Contractor's stamp, indicating that he has checked all equipment being submitted; that each item will fit into the available space with the accesses shown on the drawings; and, further, that each item conforms to the capacity and quality standards given in the contract documents.

Submitted literature shall clearly indicate performance, quality, and utility requirements; shall show dimension and size of connection points; and shall include derating factors that were applied for each item of equipment to provide capacity at job site elevation. Temperature control submittals shall include piping and wiring diagrams, sequence of operation and equipment. Equipment must fit into the available space with allowance for operation, maintenance, etc. Factory piped and wired equipment shall include shop drawings for all internal wiring and piping furnished with the unit.

Submitted literature shall clearly show all required field install wiring, piping, and accessory installations required by the Contractor to provide a complete operating system.

Review by the Owner's Representative is for general conformance of the submitted equipment to the project specification. In no way does such review relieve this Contractor of his obligation to furnish equipment and materials that comply in detail to the specification nor does it relieve the Contractor of his obligation to determine actual field dimensions and conditions that may affect his work. Regardless of any items overlooked by the submittal review, the requirements of the contract drawings and specifications must be followed and are not waived or superseded in any way by the review.

By description, catalog number, and manufacturer's names, standards of quality have been established by the Architect and the Engineer for certain manufactured equipment items and specialties that are to be furnished by this Division. Alternate products and equipment may be proposed for use only if specifically named in the specifications or if given written prior approval in published addenda. Design equipment is the equipment listed on the drawings or if not listed on the drawings is the equipment first named in the specifications.

If the Engineer is required to do additional design work to incorporate changes caused by submitting equipment or products, different than the design equipment specified, as defined above, the contractor shall reimburse the engineer for additional time and expenses at the engineer's current, recognized, hourly rates.

## 1.7 DRAWINGS AND MEASUREMENTS

A. Construction Drawings: The contract document drawings show the general design, arrangements, and extent of the system. In certain cases, the drawings may include details that show more nearly exact locations and arrangements; however, the locations, as shown diagrammatically, are to be regarded as general.

It shall be the work of this Section to make such slight alterations as may be necessary to make adjustable parts fit to fixed parts, leaving all complete and in proper shape when done. All dimensions given on the drawings shall be verified as related to this work and with the Architect's office before work is started.

This Section shall carefully study building sections, space, clearances, etc., and then provide offsets in piping or ductwork as required to accommodate the building structure without additional cost to the Owner. In any case and at any time during the construction process, a change in location required by obstacles or the installation of other trades not shown on the mechanical plans shall be made without charge.

The drawings shall not be scaled for roughing in measurements nor shall they be used as shop drawings. Where drawings are required for these purposes or where drawings must be made from field measurements, the Contractor shall take the necessary measurements and prepare the drawings. Shop drawings of the various subcontractors shall be coordinated to eliminate all interferences and to provide sufficient space for the installation of all equipment, piping, ductwork, etc.

The drawings and specifications have been prepared to supplement each other and they shall be interpreted as an integral unit with items shown on one and not the other being furnished and installed as though shown and called out on both.

B. Coordination Drawings: The contractor shall provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, fan rooms, equipment rooms, and congested areas to eliminate conflicts with equipment, piping, or work of other trades. The drawings shall be a minimum scale of 1/4 inch= 1 foot and of such detail as may be required by the Engineer to fully illustrate the work. These drawings shall include all piping, conduit, valves, equipment, and ductwork.

Sheet-metal shop drawings will be required for all ductwork in the entire building. These drawings will show all ductwork in the entire building and shall be coordinated with architectural, structural and electrical portions of the project. The contractor shall specifically obtain copies of the structural shop drawings and shall coordinate the ductwork shop drawings with approved structural members. These drawings shall be submitted to the engineer for review prior to any fabrication. The contractor is responsible for all modifications necessary to accommodate duct installation within the structural, architectural and electrical restrictions. These drawings, once reviewed by the engineer, will be made available to all mechanical, electrical, and fire sprinkler subcontractors to coordinate installation of their work.

## 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF BUILDING EQUIPMENT

A. The Contractor may use equipment such as electric motors, fans, heat exchangers, filters, etc., with the written permission of the Owner. As each piece of equipment is used (such as electric motors and fans), maintenance procedures approved by the manufacturer are to be followed. A careful record is to be kept of the length of the time the equipment is used, maintenance procedures followed, and any difficulty encountered. The record is to be submitted to the Owner upon acceptance. All fan belts and filter media (such as bearings) shall be carefully inspected just prior to acceptance. Any excessive wear noted shall require replacement. New filter media shall be installed in air handlers at the time systems are turned over to the owner.

## 1.9 EXISTING CONDITIONS

A. The Contractor shall carefully examine all existing conditions that might affect the mechanical system and shall compare these conditions with all drawings and specifications for work included under this contract. He shall, at such time, ascertain and check all conditions that may affect his work. No allowance shall subsequently be made in his behalf for an extra expense incurred as a result of his failure or neglect to make such examination. This Contractor shall include in his bid proposal all necessary allowances to repair or replace any item that will remain or will be removed, and any item that will be damaged or destroyed by new construction.

B. The Contractor shall remove all abandoned piping, etc., required by new construction and cap or plug openings. No capping, etc., shall be exposed in occupied areas. All openings of items removed shall be sealed to match adjacent surfaces.

C. The Contractor shall verify the exact location of all existing services, utilities, piping, etc., and make connections to existing systems as required or as shown on the drawings. The exact location of each utility line, together with size and elevation, shall be established before any on-site lines are installed. Should elevation or size of existing main utility lines make connections to them impossible as shown on drawings, then notification of such shall immediately be given to the Owners Representative for a decision.

## 1.10 EQUIPMENT CAPACITIES

A. Capacities shown for equipment in the specifications and on the drawings are the minimum acceptable. No equipment shall be considered as an alternate that has capacities or performance less than that of design equipment.

B. All equipment shall give the specified capacity and performance at the job-site elevation. Manufacturers' standard ratings shall be adjusted accordingly. All capacities and performances listed on drawings or in specifications are for job-site conditions.

## 1.11 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS FOR EQUIPMENT

A. All equipment shall be furnished structurally adequate to withstand seismic forces as outlined in the International Building Code. Refer to section Mechanical Vibration Controls and Seismic Restraints. Equipment bases shall be designed for direct attachment of seismic snubbers and/or seismic anchors.

## 1.12 COOPERATION WITH OTHER TRADES

A. The Contractor shall refer to other drawings and parts of this specification that cover work of other trades that is carried on in conjunction with the mechanical work such that all work can proceed without interference resulting from lack of coordination.

B. The Contractor shall properly size and locate all openings, chases, sleeves, equipment bases, and accesses. He shall provide accurate wiring diagrams to the Electrical Contractor for all equipment furnished under this Division.

C. The ceiling cavity must be carefully reviewed and coordinated with all trades. In the event of conflict, the installation of the mechanical equipment and piping shall be in the following order: plumbing, waste, and soil lines; supply, return, and exhaust ductwork; water piping; medical gases; fire protection piping; and pneumatic control piping.

D. The mechanical Contractor shall insure that the installation of all piping, ducts and equipment is in compliance with Articles 110-16 and 384-4 of the National Electrical Code relative to proper clearances in front of and over all electrical panels and equipment. No piping or ductwork will be allowed to run over electrical panel.

## 1.13 RESPONSIBILITY OF CONTRACTOR

A. The Contractor is responsible for the installation of a satisfactory piece of work in accordance with the true intent of the drawings and specifications. He shall provide, as a part of his work and without expense, all incidental items required even though these items are not particularly specified or indicated. The installation shall be made so that its several component parts will function together as a workable system and shall be left with all equipment properly adjusted and in working order. The Contractor shall

familiarize the Owner's Representative with maintenance and lubrication instructions as prepared by the Contractor and shall explain and fully instruct him relative to operating, servicing, and maintenance of them.

B. If a conflict arises between the drawings and the specifications the most stringent procedure/action shall be followed. A clarification to the engineer will help to determine the course of action to be taken. If a conflict arises between specification sections the engineer will determine which course of action is to be followed.

1.14 PIPE AND DUCT OPENINGS AND EQUIPMENT RECESSES

A. Pipe and duct chases, openings, and equipment recesses shall be provided by others only if shown on architectural or structural drawings. All openings for the mechanical work, except where plans and specifications indicate otherwise, shall be provided as work of this Division. Include openings information with coordination drawings.

B. Whether chases, recesses, and openings are provided as work of this Division or by others, this Contractor shall supervise their construction and be responsible for the correct size and location even though detailed and dimensioned on the drawings. This Contractor shall pay for all necessary cutting, repairing, and finishing if any are left out or incorrectly made. All necessary openings thru existing walls, ceilings, floors, roofs, etc. shall be provided by this Contractor unless indicated otherwise by the drawing and/or specifications.

1.15 UNFIT OR DAMAGED WORK

A. Any part of this installation that fails, is unfit, or becomes damaged during construction, shall be replaced or otherwise made good. The cost of such remedy shall be the responsibility of this Division.

1.16 WORKMANSHIP

A. Workmanship shall be the best quality of its kind for the respective industries, trades, crafts, and practices, and shall be acceptable in every respect to the Owner's representative. Nothing contained herein shall relieve the Contractor from making good and perfect work in all details in construction.

1.17 SAFETY REGULATION

A. The Contractor shall comply with all local, Federal, and OSHA safety requirements in performance with this work. (See General Conditions). This Contractor shall be required to provide equipment, supervision, construction, procedures, and all other necessary items to assure safety to life and property.

1.18 ELECTRICAL SERVICES

A. All equipment control wiring and all automatic temperature control wiring including all necessary contacts, relays, and interlocks, whether low or line voltage, except power wiring, shall be furnished and installed as work of this Division unless shown to be furnished by 15. All such wiring shall be in conduit as required by electrical codes. Wiring in the mechanical rooms, fans rooms and inaccessible ceilings and walls shall be installed in conduit as well. Installation of any and all wiring done under Division 15 shall be in accordance with the requirements of Division 16, Electrical.

All equipment that requires an electrical connection shall be furnished so that it will operate properly and deliver full capacity on the electrical service available.

Refer to the electrical control equipment and wiring shown on the diagrams. Any changes or additions required by specific equipment furnished shall be the complete responsibility of the Contractor furnishing the equipment.

The Mechanical Contractor must coordinate with the Electrical Contractor to insure that all required components of control work are included and fully understood. No additional cost shall accrue to the Owner as a result of lack of such coordination.

## 1.19 WORK, MATERIALS, AND QUALITY OF EQUIPMENT

A. Unless otherwise specified, all materials shall be new and of the best quality of their respective kinds and all labor shall be done in a most thorough and workmanlike manner.

B. Products or equipment of any of the manufacturers cited herein or any of the products approved by the Addenda may be used. However, where lists of products are cited herein, the one first listed in the design equipment used in drawings and schedules to establish size, quality, function, and capacity standards. If other than design equipment is used, it shall be carefully checked for access to equipment, electrical and control requirements, valving, and piping. Should changes or additions occur in piping, valving, electrical work, etc., or if the work of other Contractors would be revised by the alternate equipment, the cost of all changes shall be borne as work of this Division.

The Execution portions of the specifications specify what products and materials may be used. Any products listed in the Product section of the specification that are not listed in the Execution portion of the specification may not be used without written approval by the Engineer.

C. The access to equipment shown on the drawings is the minimum acceptable space requirements. No equipment that reduces or restricts accessibility to this or any other equipment will be considered.

D. All major items of equipment are specified in the equipment schedules on the drawings or in these specifications and shall be furnished complete with all accessories normally supplied with the catalog item listed and all other accessories necessary for a complete and satisfactory installation.

E. All welders shall be certified in accordance with Section IX of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, latest Edition.

## 1.20 PROTECTION AGAINST WEATHER AND STORING OF MATERIALS

A. All equipment and materials shall be properly stored and protected against moisture, dust, and wind. Coverings or other protection shall be used on all items that may be damaged or rusted or may have performance impaired by adverse weather or moisture conditions. Damage or defect developing before acceptance of the work shall be made good at the Contractor's expense.

B. All open duct and pipe openings shall be adequately covered at all times.

1.21 INSTALLATION CHECK

A. An experienced, competent, and authorized representative of the manufacturer or supplier of each item of equipment indicated in the equipment schedule and the seismic supplier shall visit the site of the work and inspect, check, adjust if necessary, and approve the equipment installation. In each case, the equipment supplier's representative shall be present when the equipment is placed in operation. The equipment supplier's representative shall revisit the job site as often as necessary until all trouble is corrected and the equipment installation and operation is satisfactory to the Engineer.

B. Each equipment supplier's representative shall furnish to the Owner, through the Engineer, a written report certifying that the equipment (1) has been properly installed and lubricated; (2) is in accurate alignment; (3) is free from any undue stress imposed by connecting piping or anchor bolts; and, (4) has been operated under full load conditions and that it operated satisfactorily.

C. All costs for this work shall be included in the prices quoted by equipment suppliers.

1.22 EQUIPMENT LUBRICATION

A. The Contractor shall properly lubricate all pieces of equipment before turning the building over to the Owner. A linen tag shall be attached to each piece of equipment, showing the date of lubrication and the lubricant used. No equipment shall be started until it is properly lubricated.

B. Necessary time shall be spent with the Owner's Representative to thoroughly familiarize him with all necessary lubrications and maintenance that will be required of him.

C. Detergent oil as used for automotive purposes shall not be used for this work.

1.23 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. No cutting or drilling in structural members shall be done without written approval of the Architect. The work shall be carefully laid out in advance, and cutting, channeling, chasing, or drilling of floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, or other surfaces necessary for the mechanical work shall be carefully done. Any damage to building, piping, or equipment shall be repaired by professional plasterers, masons, concrete workers, etc., and all such work shall be paid for as work of this Division.

B. When concrete, grading, etc., is disturbed, it shall be restored to original condition as described in the applicable Division of this Specification.

1.24 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING

A. All necessary excavations and backfilling for the Mechanical phase of this project shall be provided as work of this Division. Trenches for all underground pipelines shall be excavated to the required depths. The bottom of trenches shall be compacted hard and graded to obtain required fall. Backfill shall be placed in horizontal layers, not exceeding 12 inches in thickness, and properly moistened. Each layer shall be compacted, by suitable equipment, to a density of not less than 95 percent as determined by ASTM D-1557. After pipelines have been tested, inspected, and approved, the trench shall be backfilled with selected material. Excess earth shall be hauled from the job site. Fill materials approved by the Architect shall be provided as work of this Division.

B. No trenches shall be cut near or under any footings without consultation first with the Architect's office.

Any trenches or excavations more than 30 inches deep shall be tapered, shored, covered, or otherwise made absolutely safe so that no vehicle or persons can be injured by falling into such excavations, or in any way be harmed by cave-ins, shifting earth, rolling rocks, or by drowning. This protection shall be extended to all persons approaching excavation related to this work whether or not such persons are authorized to be in the vicinity of the construction.

## 1.25 ACCESS

A. Provide access doors in walls, ceilings and floors by this division unless otherwise noted. For access to mechanical equipment such as valves, dampers, heat pumps, fans, controls, etc. Refer to Division 8 for door specifications. All access doors shall be 24" x 24" unless otherwise indicated or required. Coordinate location of doors with the Architect prior to installation. . If doors are not specified in Division 8, provide the following: Doors in ceilings and wall shall be equal to JR Smith No. 4760 bonderized and painted. Doors in tile walls shall be equal to JR Smith No. 4730 chrome plated. Doors in floors shall be equal to JR Smith No. 4910

B. Valves: Valve must be installed in locations where access is readily available. If access is compromised, as judged by the Mechanical Engineer, these valves shall be relocated where directed at the Contractors expense.

C. Equipment: Equipment must be installed in locations and orientations so that access to all components requiring service or maintenance will not be compromised. If access is compromised, as judged by the Mechanical Engineer, the contractor shall modify the installation as directed by the Engineer at the Contractors expense.

D. It is the responsibility of this division to install terminal boxes, valves and all other equipment and devices so they can be accessed. If any equipment or devices are installed so they cannot be accessed on a ladder a catwalk and ladder system shall be installed above the ceiling to access and service this equipment.

## 1.26 CONCRETE BASES AND INSERTS

A. Bases: The concrete bases shall be provided and installed as work by this divsion. This Division shall be responsible for the proper size and location of bases and shall furnish all required anchor bolts and sleeves with templates to be installed as work of Division 3, Concrete.

All floor-mounted mechanical equipment shall be set on 6-inch high concrete bases, unless otherwise noted or shown on drawings. Such bases shall extend 6 inches beyond equipment or mounting rails on all sides or as shown on the drawings and shall have a 1-inch beveled edge all around.

B. Inserts: Where slotted or other types of inserts required for this work are to be cast into concrete, they shall be furnished as work of this Division

Concrete inserts and pipe support systems shall be equal to Unistrut P3200 series for all piping where more than one pipe is suspended at a common location. Spacing of the inserts shall match the size and type of pipe and of ductwork being supported. The Unistrut insert and pipe support system shall include all inserts, vertical supports, horizontal support members, clamps, hangers, rollers, bolts, nuts, and any other accessory items for a complete pipe-supporting system.

## 1.27 CLEANING AND PAINTING

A. Cleaning: After all tests and adjustments have been made and all systems pronounced satisfactory for permanent operation, this Contractor shall clean all exposed piping, ductwork, insulated members, fixture, and equipment installed under this Section and leave them ready for painting. He shall refinish any damaged finish and leave everything in proper working order. The Contractor shall remove all stains or grease marks on walls, floors, glass, hardware, fixtures, or elsewhere, caused by his workman or for which he is responsible. He shall remove all stickers on plumbing fixtures, do all required patching up and repair all work of others damaged by this division of the work, and leave the premises in a clean and orderly condition.

B. Painting: Painting of exposed pipe, insulated pipe, ducts, or equipment is work of Division 9, Painting.

Mechanical Contractor: All equipment which is to be furnished in factory prefinished conditions by the mechanical Contractor shall be left without mark, scratch, or impairment to finish upon completion of job. Any necessary refinishing to match original shall be done. Do not paint over nameplates, serial numbers, or other identifying marks.

C. Removal of Debris, Etc: Upon completion of this division of the work, remove all surplus material and rubbish resulting from this work, and leave the premises in a clean and orderly condition.

## 1.28 CONTRACT COMPLETION

A. Incomplete and Unacceptable Work: If additional site visits or design work is required by the Engineer or Architect because of the use of incomplete or unacceptable work by the Contractor, then the Contractor shall reimburse the Engineer and Architect for all additional time and expenses involved.

B. Maintenance Instructions: The Contractor shall furnish the Owner complete printed and illustrated operating and maintenance instructions covering all units of mechanical equipment, together with parts lists.

C. Instructions To Owner's Representatives: In addition to any detailed instructions called for, the mechanical Contractor must provide, without expense to the Owner, competent instructors to train the Owner's representatives who will be in charge of the apparatus and equipment, in the care, adjustment, and operation of all parts on the heating, air conditioning, ventilating, plumbing, fire protection, and automatic temperature control equipment. Instruction dates shall be scheduled at time of final inspection. A written report specifying times, dates, and name of personnel instructed shall be forwarded to the Architect. A minimum of four 8-hour instruction periods shall be provided. The instruction periods will be broken down to shorter periods when requested by the Owner. The total instruction hours shall not reduced. The ATC Contractor shall provide 4 hours of instructions. The remaining hours shall be divided between the mechanical and sheet metal Contractor.

D. Guarantee: By the acceptance of any contract award for the work herein described or shown on the drawings, the Contractor assumes the full responsibility imposed by the guarantee as set forth herein and in the General Conditions, and should protect himself through proper guarantees from equipment and special equipment Contractors and from subcontractors as their interests may appear.

The guarantee so assumed by the Contractor and as work of this Section is as follows:

That the entire mechanical system, including plumbing, heating, and air-conditioning system shall be quiet in operation.

That the circulation of water shall be complete and even.

That all pipes, conduit, and connections shall be perfectly free from foreign matter and pockets and that all other obstructions to the free passage of air, water, liquid, sewage, and vent shall be removed.

That he shall make promptly and free of charge, upon notice from the Owner, any necessary repairs due to defective workmanship or materials that may occur during a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion.

That all specialties, mechanical, and patent devices incorporated in these systems shall be adjusted in a manner that each shall develop its maximum efficiency in the operation of the system; i.e., diffusers shall deliver the designed amount of air shown on drawings, thermostats shall operate to the specified limits, etc.

All equipment and the complete mechanical, ductwork, piping and plumbing systems shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date of the Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion, this includes all mechanical, ductwork, piping and plumbing equipment and products and is not limited to boiler, chillers, coils, fans, filters etc. Any equipment supplier not willing to comply with this guarantee period shall not submit a bid price for this project. The Contractor shall be responsible for a 100-percent guarantee for the system and all items of equipment for this period. If the contractor needs to provide temporary heating or cooling to the building and or needs to insure systems are installed properly and or to meet the project schedule the guaranteed of all systems and equipment shall be as indicated above, on year from the date of the Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion.

All filters used during construction shall be replaced just before equipment is turned over to the Owner, and all required equipment and parts shall be oiled. Any worn parts shall also be replaced.

If any systems or equipment is used for temporary heating or cooling the systems shall be protected so they remain clean. I.e. if the ductwork systems are used temporary filters and a filter holder (not duct-taped to ducts or grilles) shall be installed to insure the systems and the equipment remain clean.

1.29 CURBS

A. Unless otherwise noted in these specifications or on the documents all roof curbs for all equipment are to be provided by division 15.

1.30 TEST RUN

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall operate the mechanical system for a minimum of 30 days to prove the operation of the system.

1.31 EQUIPMENT STARTUP AND CHECKOUT:

A. Each major piece of equipment shall be started and checked out by an authorized representative of the equipment manufacturer. A certificate indicating the equipment is operating to the satisfaction of the manufacturer shall be provided and shall be included in the commissioning report.

B. This contractor shall coordinate commissioning procedures and activities with the commissioning agent.

END OF SECTION 15010

**SECTION 15050 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
2. Transition fittings.
3. Dielectric fittings.
4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
5. Sleeves.
6. Escutcheons.
7. Grout.
8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
9. Painting and finishing.
10. Concrete bases.
11. Supports and anchorages.
12. Link-Seal

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.

E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:

1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
2. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.

B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.

B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.

a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Eslon Thermoplastics.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General: Assembly or fitting with insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals, to prevent galvanic action and stop corrosion.

B. Description: Combination of copper alloy and ferrous; threaded, solder, plain, and weld-neck end types and matching piping system materials.

C. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

D. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.

E. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

F. Dielectric-Flange Insulation Kits: Field-assembled, companion-flange assembly, full-face or ring type. Components include neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.

1. Provide separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

G. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

H. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div

## 2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. Calpico, Inc.
c. Metraflex Co.
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.7 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

## 2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.

C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.

1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.

D. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.

2.9 GROUT

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.

1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.10 LINK-SEAL MODULAR SEAL PRESSURE PLATES

A. Link-Seal® modular seal pressure plates shall be molded of glass reinforced Nylon Polymer with the following properties:

1. Izod Impact - Notched = 2.05ft-lb/in. per ASTM D-256
2. Flexural Strength @ Yield = 30,750 psi per ASTM D-790
3. Flexural Modulus = 1,124,000 psi per ASTM D-790
4. Elongation Break = 11.07% per ASTM D-638
5. Specific Gravity = 1.38 per ASTM D-792

B. Models LS200-275-300-315 shall incorporate the most current Link-Seal® Modular Seal design modifications and shall include an integrally molded compression assist boss on the top (bolt entry side) of the pressure plate, which permits increased compressive loading of the rubber sealing element. Models 315-325-340-360-400-410-425-475-500-525-575-600 shall incorporate an integral recess known as a "Hex Nut Interlock" designed to accommodate commercially available fasteners to insure proper thread engagement for the class and service of metal hardware. All pressure plates shall have a permanent identification of the manufacturer's name molded into it.

C. For fire service, pressure plates shall be steel with 2-part Zinc Dichromate Coating.

D. Link-Seal® Modular Seal Hardware: All fasteners shall be sized according to latest Link-Seal® modular seal technical data. Bolts, flange hex nuts shall be:

1. 316 Stainless Steel per ASTM F593-95, with a 85,000 psi average tensile strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

G. Install piping at indicated slopes.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:

1. New Piping:

    a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.

M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.

N. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

    a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:

    a. PVC Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.

c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.

1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.

4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

O. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

P. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

Q. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.

R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

S. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

## 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

## 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

## 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

## 3.5 PAINTING

A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."

B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

## 3.6 CONCRETE BASES

A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.

1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete.

## 3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Refer to Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

## 3.8 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.

B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.

E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.

F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.

G. Place grout around anchors.

H. Cure placed grout.

3.9 LINK SEAL

A. Provide Link Seal at all piping penetrations from the outside.

END OF SECTION 15050

**SECTION 15055 - OPERATIONS & MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

PART 1- GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. All pertinent sections of Division 15 Mechanical General Requirements, are part of the work of this Section. Division 1 is part of this and all other sections of these specifications.

1. Testing and Balancing is specified in section 15975.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Submission of Operating and Maintenance Manuals complete with Balancing reports. (Coordinate with Division 1).

B. Coordination of work required for system commissioning.

C. Provide a hard copy and an electronic copy of the O and M manual fully searchable in PDF format.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data in accordance with Division 1 and Section 15010 Submit the following:

B. Sample of O and M manual outline.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 O & M MANUALS

A. The operating and maintenance manuals shall be as follows:

1. Binders shall be red buckram with easy-view metal for size 8-1/2 x 11-inch sheets, with capacity expandable from 2 inches to 3-1/2 inches as required for the project. Construction shall be rivet-through with library corners. No. 12 backbone and lining shall be the same material as the cover. The front cover and backbone shall be foil-stamped in white as follows: (coordinate with Section 1730)

OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE
MANUAL
FOR THE

(INSERT PROJECT NAME)

(INSERT PROJECT COMPLETION YEAR)

VOLUME No. ( )

VAN BOERUM & FRANK ASSOCIATES, INC.
MECHANICAL ENGINEER

(INSERT ARCHITECT)

Binders shall be a manufactured by Hiller Bookbinding.

PART 3- EXECUTION

3.1 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS:

A. Work under this section shall be performed in concert with the contractor performing the system testing and balancing. Six (6) copies of the manuals shall be furnished to the Architect for distribution to the owner.

B. The "Start-Up and Operation" section is one of the most important in the manual. Information in this section shall be complete and accurately written and shall be verified with the actual equipment on the job, such as switches, starters, relays, automatic controls, etc. A step-by-step start-up procedure shall be described.

C. The manuals shall include water-balancing reports, system commissioning procedures, start-up tests and reports, equipment and system performance test reports, warranties, and certificates of training given to the owner's representatives.

D. An index sheet typed on AICO Gold-Line indexes shall be provided in the front of the binder. The manual shall be include the following:

SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

START-UP PROCEDURE AND OPERATION OF SYSTEM

MAINTENANCE AND LUBRICATION TABLE

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE BULLETINS

AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION, INTERLOCK AND CONTROL DIAGRAMS, AND CONTROL PANELS.

AIR AND WATER SYSTEM BALANCING REPORTS

EQUIPMENT WARRANTIES AND TRAINING CERTIFICATES

SYSTEM COMMISSIONING REPORTS

EQUIPMENT START-UP CERTIFICATES

END OF SECTION 15055

**SECTION 15060 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for HVAC system piping and equipment:

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-protection piping.
3. Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
4. Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.
5. Division 23 Section(s) "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Mechanical Anchors: ICC-ES Evaluation Reports validating 'Cracked Concrete' testing per A.C. 193 must be provided for anchors resisting seismic loads and/or supporting life- safety systems including fire sprinkler systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.

C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel." ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
4. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
5. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.

B. Manufacturers:

1. AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc.
2. Bergen-Power Pipe Supports.

3. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
4. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
5. Empire Industries, Inc.
6. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
7. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.
8. Grinnell Corp.
9. GS Metals Corp.
10. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
11. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
12. PHS Industries, Inc.
13. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
14. Tolco Inc.
15. Simpson Strong-Tie Co.

C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.

D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

## 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.

B. Manufacturers:

1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; ERISTRUT Div.
3. GS Metals Corp.
4. Power-Strut Div.; Tyco International, Ltd.
5. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
6. Tolco Inc.
7. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.

C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish, unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.

D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.

17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18 or Simpson Blue Banger Concrete insert with UL & FM approvals): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

J. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

K. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

L. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

M. Use mechanical-expansion anchors or screw instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction. For anchors resisting seismic loads and/or supporting life-safety systems including fire sprinkler systems, anchors shall have been tested for 'Cracked Concrete' per A.C. 193 and shall have a valid ICC-ES Evaluation Report

## 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

E. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

F. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying. For applications where seismic bracing is required, 'Cracked Concrete' expansion anchors or concrete screws tested per A.C. 193 must be provided for seismic bracing anchorage where post-installed anchors are required.

G. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

H. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

I. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.1 (for power piping) and ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.

J. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

    a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.1 for power piping and ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

    a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.

d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.

## 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

## 3.5 PAINTING

A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 15060

## SECTION 15075 – IDENTIFICATION FOR PIPING & EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes mechanical identification materials and devices.

B. Provide red lettering on the ceiling tiles of the locations of all fire dampers, smoke dampers and fire /smoke dampers. Size of lettering and verbiage is to conform to IBC and NFPA standards.

C. Match existing campus standards on pipe and duct painting and identification.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For identification materials and devices.

B. Samples: Of color, lettering style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems" for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

#### 1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 IDENTIFYING DEVICES AND LABELS

A. General: Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 15 Sections. If more than single type is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.

1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
2. Location: Accessible and visible.

C. Stencils: Standard stencils, prepared with letter sizes conforming to recommendations of ASME A13.1. Minimum letter height is 1-1/4 inches for ducts, and 3/4 inch for access door signs and similar operational instructions.

1. Stencil Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd gloss black enamel, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
2. Identification Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Snap-On Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap-on type. Include color-coding according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers, extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.

F. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, at least 3 times letter height and of length required for label.

G. Lettering: Manufacturer's standard preprinted captions as selected by Engineer.

H. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.

1. Arrows: Either integrally with piping system service lettering, to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit, on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.

I. Plastic Duct Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:

1. Green: Cold-air supply.
2. Yellow: Hot-air supply.
3. Blue: Exhaust, outside, return, and mixed air.
4. Hazardous Material Exhausts: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
5. Terminology: Include direction of airflow; duct service such as supply, return, and exhaust; duct origin, duct destination, and design flow.

J. Plastic Tape: Manufacturer's standard color-coded, pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive, vinyl tape, at least 3 mils thick.

1. Width: 1-1/2 inches on pipes with OD, including insulation, less than 6 inches; 2-1/2 inches for larger pipes.
2. Color: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

K. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch sequenced numbers. Include 5/32-inch hole for fastener.

1. Material: 0.032-inch- thick, polished brass..
2. Size: 1-1/2-inches diameter, unless otherwise required.
3. Indicate valve service and normal position on valve. Example Cold water, N.O.

L. Valve Tag Fasteners: Brass, wire-link or beaded chain; or brass S-hooks.

M. Valve Tag Fasteners: Brass, wire-link chain; beaded chain; or S-hooks.

N. Access Panel Markers: 1/16-inch- thick, engraved plastic-laminate markers, with abbreviated terms and numbers corresponding to concealed valve. Provide 1/8-inch center hole for attachment.

O. Plastic Equipment Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:

1. Green: Cooling equipment and components.
2. Yellow: Heating equipment and components.
3. Brown: Energy reclamation equipment and components.
4. Blue: Equipment and components that do not meet criteria above.
5. Hazardous Equipment: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
6. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible. Include the following:

    a. Name and plan number.
    b. Equipment service.
    c. Design capacity.
    d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.

7. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches for equipment.

P. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in mechanical identification with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, letters, and terms indicated for proper identification, operation, and maintenance of mechanical systems and equipment.

1. Multiple Systems: Identify individual system number and service if multiple systems of same name are indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 LABELING DUCTS AND PIPES

A. Duct and Piping systems shall be identified by:

1. Background color
2. Lettering color, and
3. Flow Direction Arrow

B. Duct and Piping Background Color shall be applied to all exposed piping (either over bare pipe of the insulation) in mechanical rooms. Identifying lettering and arrows shall then be added as indicated above, and as necessary to be visible from anywhere in the room.

1. For duct in mechanical rooms, chases and other exposed areas, as well as piping routed in other exposed airs such as chases, background color shall be applied in a two foot (2'0") wide band with identifying lettering and a flow direction arrow.
2. Background and lettering shall be semi-gloss enamel paint by DeVoe (Mirrolac), Pratt and Lambert, Glidden, Rust-Oleum, Sherwin Williams or approved equal. The colors specified herein shall not be varied.

| Color | Sherwin Williams | Pratt & Lambert | Rust-Oleum |
|---|---|---|---|
| Red | SW4081 Safety Red | 1007 Vibrant Red | 964 Federal Safety Red |
| Orange | SW4083 Safety Orange | S4507 Safety Orange | 956 Federal Safety Orange |
| Yellow | SW4084 Safety Yellow | 1732 Spectrum Yellow | 944 Federal Safety Yellow |
| Green | SW4085 Safety Green | Safety Green | 933 Federal Safety Green |
| Blue | SW4086 Safety Blue | 1228 Anchors Aweigh | 925 Federal Safety Blue |
| Purple | SW4080 Plum | Bright Medium | Bright Medium |
| Silver (Aluminum) | B59S11 Silver Brite | -- | -- |
| Black | Black | Effecto Black | 634 Black |
| White | White | Effecto White | 2766 White |
| Brown | SW4001 Bolt Brown | 2278 Char Brown | -- |

a. Identifying lettering shall be painted or stenciled on duct or pipe over the background color. Self-adhesive or glue-one type labels are acceptable. Letters shall be 2" high for duct and larger piping 3" or more, 1" high for 1-14" to 2-1/2" pipe, and ½" high for 1" pipe and smaller.

b. Arrows to indicate direction of flow shall be painted over the background color in the same color as the lettering. The arrow shall point away from the lettering. On large piping 3" or more in diameter, the "shaft" of the arrow shall be 2" long and 1" wide. Smaller piping, 2-1/2" or less, shall have arrows with a shaft ½" wide and 2" long. Use a double-headed arrow if the flow can be in either direction.

c. Piping shall be identified as follows:

C. PIPE LABEL AND COLOR SCHEDULE

| Medium in Pipe or Duct | | Background Color | Identifying Lettering | Lettering Color |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Refrigerant:** | | | | |
| | Freon | Black | Freon | White |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Water:** | | | | |
| | Boiler Blow-Off | Yellow | Blow-Off Water | Black |
| | | | | |
| | Heat pump Water Supply | Blue | Cooling Water Supply | White |
| | Heat pump Water Return | Blue | Cooling Water Return | Black |
| | Condensate Return | Orange *(Note: One white band required for Steam Condensate Return)* | Condensate Return | Black |
| | Glycol Solution | Purple | Glycol Solution | White |
| | | | | |
| | Secondary Heating Water Supply | Brown | Heating Water Supply | White |
| | Secondary Heating Water Return | Brown | Heating Water Return | White |

3.2 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.

B. Marker Type: Stenciled markers with painted, color-coded bands complying with ASME A13.1.

C. Marker Type: Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on pipe insulation segment where required for hot, noninsulated pipes.

D. Fasten markers on pipes and insulated pipes by one of following methods:

1. Snap-on application of pretensioned, semirigid plastic pipe marker.
2. Adhesive lap joint in pipe marker overlap.
3. Laminated or bonded application of pipe marker to pipe or insulation.
4. Taped to pipe or insulation with color-coded plastic adhesive tape, not less than 3/4 inch wide, lapped a minimum of 1-1/2 inches at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
5. Taped to pipe or insulation with color-coded plastic adhesive tape, not less than 1-1/2 inches wide, lapped a minimum of 3 inches at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.

E. Locate pipe markers and color bands where piping is exposed in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior nonconcealed locations according to the following:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Mark each pipe at branch, where flow pattern is not obvious.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, or nonaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at a maximum of 50-foot intervals along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.

7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings, except omit intermediately spaced markers.

## 3.3 VALVE TAGS

A. Install on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, plumbing fixture supply stops, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. Indicate service and normal position of all tagged valve and control devices. List tagged valves in valve schedule.

B. Tag Material: Brass.

## 3.4 EQUIPMENT SIGNS AND MARKERS

A. Install engraved plastic-laminate signs or equipment markers on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Include signs for the following general categories of equipment:

1. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
2. Fire department hose valves and hose stations.
3. Meters, gages, thermometers, and similar units.
4. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
5. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
6. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
7. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
8. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
9. Tanks and pressure vessels.
10. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.

B. Optional Sign Types: Stenciled signs may be provided instead of engraved plastic, at Installer's option, where lettering larger than 1-inch high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.

1. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
2. Terms on Signs: Distinguish between multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.

C. Duct Systems: Identify air supply, return, exhaust, intake, and relief ducts with duct markers; or provide stenciled signs and arrows showing service and direction of flow.

1. Location: Locate signs near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by work of this or other Divisions.

B. Clean faces of identification devices and glass frames of valve charts.

END OF SECTION 15075

**SECTION 15082 - EQUIPMENT INSULATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes blanket, board, and block insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jackets; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 15 Section "Pipe Insulation" for insulation for piping systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:

1. Field application for each equipment type.
2. Removable insulation sections at access panels.
3. Application of field-applied jackets.
4. Special shapes for cellular-glass insulation.

C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests.

D. Installer Certificates: Signed by the Contractor certifying that installers comply with requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.

2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for insulation application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Calcium Silicate Insulation:

a. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
b. Pabco.
c. Schuller International, Inc.

2. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:

a. CertainTeed Manson.
b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
d. Schuller International, Inc.
e. John Manville.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Calcium Silicate Insulation: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a nonasbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.

B. Mineral-Fiber Board Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IB, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft aluminum foil.

C. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from aluminum foil

2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. General: ASTM C 921, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact, ultraviolet-resistant PVC; 20 mils thick; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
2. PVC Jacket Color: Color-code to match connected piping jackets based on materials contained within the piping system.

C. Aluminum Jacket: Deep corrugated sheets manufactured from aluminum alloy complying with ASTM B 209, and having an integrally bonded moisture barrier over entire surface in contact with insulation. Metal thickness and corrugation dimensions are scheduled at the end of this Section.

1. Finish: Smooth or Stucco-embossed finish.
2. Moisture Barrier: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

## 2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

## 3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; and free of voids throughout the length of equipment.

B. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each equipment system.

C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either the wet or dry state.

D. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

E. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.

H. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.

I. Apply insulation over fittings and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.

J. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

K. Insulation Terminations: For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, seal ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.

L. Apply insulation with integral jackets as follows:

1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.
2. Joints and Seams: Cover with tape and vapor retarder as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
3. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Where vapor retarders are indicated, apply mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent compressing insulation to less than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Install vapor-retarder mastic on equipment scheduled to receive vapor retarders. Overlap insulation facing at seams and seal with vapor-retarder mastic and pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-retarder seal.

O. Insulate the following indoor equipment:

1. Air separators (small tanks).
2. Heating hot-water heat exchangers.
3. Plate & Frame heat exchangers, not factory insulated.
4. Water Heaters.

P. Omit insulation from the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

## 3.4 INDOOR TANK AND VESSEL INSULATION APPLICATION

A. Blankets, Board, and Block Applications for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per square foot, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to the equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joint. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
4. Install adhesive-attached or self-adhesive anchor pins and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:

    a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    b. On tank and vessel, 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
    c. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    d. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and dome heads of tanks and vessels.

5. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
6. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing
7. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel bands.
8. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
9. Apply insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors and other elements that require frequent removal for service.
10. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
11. Apply vapor-retarder mastic to open joints, breaks, and punctures for insulation indicated to receive vapor retarder.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Applications for Tanks and Vessels: Apply insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels according to the manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

## 3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET APPLICATION

A. PVC Jackets: Apply jacket with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels for horizontal applications. Secure and seal seams and end joints with manufacturer's welding adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along the seam and joint edge.

B. Aluminum Jackets: Secure jackets according to jacket manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.6 EQUIPMENT APPLICATIONS

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.

B. Materials and thicknesses for systems listed below are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.

## 3.7 INTERIOR TANK AND VESSEL INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE

A. Equipment: Air separators, expansion tanks and storage tanks.

1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 75 deg F.

2. Insulation Material: Calcium Silicate
3. Insulation Thickness: 1 ½
4. Field-Applied Jacket: PVC OR Aluminum to match piping.
5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.

B. Equipment: Heating hot-water heat exchangers.

1. Operating Temperature: 100 to 450 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Calcium Silicate
3. Insulation Thickness: 2 inches
4. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum.

    a. Aluminum Thickness: 0.032 inch.
    b. Corrugation Dimension: 1-1/4 by 1/4 inch or 2-1/2 by 5/8 inch.

5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
6. Finish: None.

END OF SECTION 15082

**SECTION 15083 - PIPE INSULATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes preformed, rigid and flexible pipe insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jackets; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 7 Section "Firestopping" for firestopping materials and requirements for penetrations through fire and smoke barriers.
2. Division 15 Section "Equipment Insulation" for insulation materials and application for pumps, tanks, hydronic specialties, and other equipment.
3. Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports" for pipe insulation shields and protection saddles.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:

1. Application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at pipe hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Attachment and covering of heat trace inside insulation.
3. Insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
6. Application of field-applied jackets.

C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests.

D. Installer Certificates: Signed by the Contractor certifying that installers comply with requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for insulation application.

## 1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after testing piping systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat-trace tape. Insulation application may begin on segments of piping that have satisfactory test results.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:

a. CertainTeed Manson.
b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
d. Schuller International, Inc.
e. John Manville.

2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:

a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

b. Rubatex Corp.

3. Calcium Silicate Insulation:

a. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
b. Pabco.
c. Schuller International, Inc.
d. John Manville.

## 2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin complying with the following:

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 547, Type 1, with factory-applied, all-purpose, vapor-retarder jacket.
2. Blanket Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing.
3. Fire-Resistant Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C in the following classes and grades:

a. Class 1, Grade A for bonding glass cloth and tape to unfaced glass-fiber insulation, for sealing edges of glass-fiber insulation, and for bonding lagging cloth to unfaced glass-fiber insulation.
b. Class 2, Grade A for bonding glass-fiber insulation to metal surfaces.

4. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Fire- and water-resistant, vapor-retarder mastic for indoor applications. Comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
5. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 195.
6. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 196.
7. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

B. Calcium Silicate Insulation: Preformed pipe sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a nonasbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.

C. Prefabricated Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

## 2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. General: ASTM C 921, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aluminum Jacket: Aluminum roll stock, ready for shop or field cutting and forming to indicated sizes. Comply with ASTM B 209, 3003 alloy, H-14 temper.

1. Finish and Thickness: Smooth finish, 0.010 inch thick.
2. Finish and Thickness: Stucco-embossed finish, 0.016 inch thick.
3. Moisture Barrier: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
4. Elbows: Preformed, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows; same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry pipe and fitting surfaces. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each piping system.

C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Apply insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal pipe runs.

E. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.

H. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

I. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.

K. Apply insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated. Refer to special instructions for applying insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties.

L. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic.

1. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs at least 12 inches from point of attachment to pipe and taper insulation ends. Seal tapered ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.
3. Install insert materials and apply insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect the jacket from tear or puncture by the hanger, support, and shield.

M. Insulation Terminations: For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, taper insulation ends. Seal tapered ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.

N. Apply adhesives and mastics at the manufacturer's recommended coverage rate.

O. Apply insulation with integral jackets as follows:

1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.
2. Circumferential Joints: Cover with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip and spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Longitudinal Seams: Overlap jacket seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Apply insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.

    a. Exception: Do not staple longitudinal laps on insulation having a vapor retarder.

4. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Where vapor retarders are indicated, apply mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to flanges, unions, valves, and fittings.
5. At penetrations in jackets for thermometers and pressure gages, fill and seal voids with vapor-retarder mastic.

P. Roof Penetrations: Apply insulation for interior applications to a point even with top of roof flashing.

1. Seal penetrations with vapor-retarder mastic.
2. Apply insulation for exterior applications tightly joined to interior insulation ends.
3. Extend metal jacket of exterior insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal metal jacket to roof flashing with vapor-retarder mastic.

Q. Exterior Wall Penetrations: For penetrations of below-grade exterior walls, terminate insulation flush with mechanical sleeve seal. Seal terminations with vapor-retarder mastic.

R. Interior Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."

S. Floor Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through floor assembly.

1. For insulation with vapor retarders, seal insulation with vapor-retarder mastic where floor supports

penetrate vapor retarder.

3.4 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION APPLICATION

A. Apply insulation to straight pipes and tubes as follows:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire, tape, or bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor retarders are indicated, seal longitudinal seams and end joints with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply vapor retarder to ends of insulation at intervals of 15 to 20 feet to form a vapor retarder between pipe insulation segments.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by the insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-retarder mastic.

B. Apply insulation to flanges as follows:

1. Apply preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation segment the same as overall width of the flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of the pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Apply canvas jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlapping seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with vapor-retarder mastic.

C. Apply insulation to fittings and elbows as follows:

1. Apply premolded insulation sections of the same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When premolded insulation elbows and fittings are not available, apply mitered sections of pipe insulation, or glass-fiber blanket insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire, tape, or bands.
3. Cover fittings with standard PVC fitting covers.
4. Cover fittings with heavy PVC fitting covers. Overlap PVC covers on pipe insulation jackets at least 1 inch at each end. Secure fitting covers with manufacturer's attachments and accessories. Seal seams with tape and vapor-retarder mastic.

D. Apply insulation to valves and specialties as follows:

1. Apply premolded insulation sections of the same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When premolded insulation sections are not available, apply glass-fiber blanket insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. For check valves, arrange insulation for access to stainer basket without disturbing insulation.
3. Apply insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Use preformed standard PVC fitting covers for valve sizes where available. Secure fitting covers with manufacturer's attachments and accessories. Seal seams with tape and vapor-retarder mastic.
5. Use preformed heavy PVC fitting covers for valve sizes where available. Secure fitting covers with manufacturer's attachments and accessories. Seal seams with tape and vapor-retarder mastic.
6. For larger sizes where PVC fitting covers are not available, seal insulation with canvas jacket and

sealing compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.

## 3.5 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC THERMAL INSULATION APPLICATION

A. Apply insulation to straight pipes and tubes as follows:

1. Follow manufacturer's written instructions for applying insulation.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

B. Apply insulation to flanges as follows:

1. Apply pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation segment the same as overall width of the flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of the pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of the same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

C. Apply insulation to fittings and elbows as follows:

1. Apply metered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

D. Apply insulation to valves and specialties as follows:

1. Apply preformed valve covers manufactured of the same material as pipe insulation and attached according to the manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Apply cut segments of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. For check valves, fabricate removable sections of insulation arranged to allow access to strainer basket.
3. Apply insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

## 3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET APPLICATION

A. Apply PVC jacket where indicated, with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Color for each piping system shall be selected by the Architect.

B. Apply metal jacket where indicated, with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

## 3.7 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of the

insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

3.8 PIPING SYSTEM APPLICATIONS

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:

1. Flexible connectors.
2. Vibration-control devices.
3. Below-grade piping, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings, unless potential for personnel injury.
5. Non-Chilled water air chambers, unions, strainers, check valves, plug valves, and flow regulators.

3.9 INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Refer to insulation application schedules for required insulation materials, vapor retarders, and field-applied jackets.

B. Application schedules identify piping system and indicate pipe size ranges and material, thickness, and jacket requirements.

3.10 INTERIOR INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE

A. Service: Heat Pump supply and return.

1. Operating Temperature: 50 to 200 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Mineral Fiber with reinforced all service jacket
3. Insulation Thickness: See table A.
4. Field-Applied Jacket: PVC (Mechanical Rooms and where exposed)
5. Vapor Retarder Required: No.
6. Finish: None.

B. Service: Domestic and industrial hot and recirculated hot water.

1. Operating Temperature: 60 to 140 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Mineral fiber with reinforced all service Jacket.
3. Insulation Thickness: see table A
4. Field-Applied Jacket: PVC (Mechanical Rooms and where exposed)
5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
6. Finish: None.

C. Service: Domestic and industrial cold water.

1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 60 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Mineral Fiber will reinforced all service jacket.
3. Insulation Thickness: ½ inch for lines 1" and smaller, 1inch for lines 1 1/4" and larger.

4. Field-Applied Jacket: PVC (Mechanical Rooms and where exposed)
5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
6. Finish: None.

D. Service: Rainwater conductors, both primary and secondary systems.

1. Operating Temperature: 32 to 100 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Mineral Fiber with reinforced all service jacket.
3. Insulation Thickness: ½ inch.
4. Jacket: Foil and Paper where concealed; PVC where exposed
5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes
6. Finish: None.

E. Service: Roof drain bodies.

1. Operating Temperature: 32 to 100 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Mineral Fiber
3. Insulation Thickness: 1-1/2 inch.
4. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and Paper.
5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
6. Finish: None.

Table A

Insulation Thickness:

Insulation thicknesses in Table A are based on insulation having thermal resistivity in the range of 4.0 to 4.6 hr. °F square foot/Btu per inch of thickness on a flat surface at a mean temperature of 75°F.

TABLE 'A' - MINIMUM PIPE INSULATION
INSULATION THICKNESS IN INCHES FOR PIPE SIZES

| PIPING SYSTEMS TYPES | TEMPERATURE RANGE °F | RUN OUTS UP TO 2" | 1" AND LESS | 1 ½" TO 2" | 2 ½" TO 4" | 5" TO 10" | 12" AND LARGER |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **HEATING SYSTEMS** | | | | | | | |
| Med. pressure/temp | 251-305 | 1½" | 2½" | 3" | 3" | 3" | 3" |
| Low pressure/temp. | 201-250 | 1½" | 1½" | 2" | 2" | 2" | 2" |
| Low temperature | 50-200 | 1½" | 1½" | 2" | 2" | 2" | 2" |
| *1 Runouts not exceeding 12 inches in length to individual terminal units.<br>*2 For piping exposed to outdoor air, increase thickness by 1/2 inch. | | | | | | | |
| For the purposes of the following Table A the following fluid temperatures and pressures are to be used unless specified otherwise: | | | | | | | |

Heating hot water is 200 °F
Domestic hot water is 140 °F
Recirculating domestic hot is 110 °F

END OF SECTION 15083

## SECTION 15100 – GENERAL PIPING VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes general duty valves common to several mechanical piping systems.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Special purpose valves are specified in Division 15 Sections.
2. Valve tags and charts are specified in Division 15 Section "Identification for HVAC piping and equipment."

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each valve type. Include body material, valve design, pressure and temperature classification, end connection details, seating materials, trim material and arrangement, dimensions and required clearances, and installation instructions. Include list indicating valve and its application.

C. Maintenance data for valves to include in the operation and maintenance manual specified in Division 1. Include detailed manufacturer's instructions on adjusting, servicing, disassembling, and repairing.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single-Source Responsibility: Comply with the requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Materials and Equipment," under "Source Limitations" Paragraph.

B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9 for building services piping and ASME B31.1 for power piping.

C. MSS Compliance: Comply with the various MSS Standard Practice documents referenced.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.

3. Set globe and gate valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store indoors and maintain valve temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use a sling to handle large valves. Rig to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels and stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Center Line
2. Conbraco Industries, Inc., Apollo Division
3. Cla-Val Company
4. Grinnell Corporation
5. Hammond Valve Corporation
6. Keystone Valve USA, Inc.
7. Metraflex Company
8. Milwaukee Valve Company, Inc.
9. NIBCO, Inc.
10. Stockham Valves & Fittings, Inc.
11. Val-Matic Valve & Mfg. Corporation
12. Victaulic Company of America
13. Bray

### 2.2 BASIC, COMMON FEATURES

A. Design: Rising stem or rising outside screw and yoke stems, except as specified below.

1. Nonrising stem valves may be used only where headroom prevents full extension of rising stems.

B. Pressure and Temperature Ratings: As indicated in the "Application Schedule" of Part 3 of this Section and as required to suit system pressures and temperatures.

C. Sizes: Same size as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Operators: Use specified operators and handwheels, except provide the following special operator features:

1. Handwheels: For valves other than quarter turn.
2. Lever Handles: For quarter-turn valves 6 inches and smaller, except for plug valves, which shall have square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves.

3. Chain-Wheel Operators: For valves 4 inches and larger, installed 120 inches or higher above finished floor elevation.
4. Gear-Drive Operators: For quarter-turn valves 8 inches and larger.

E. Extended Stems: Where insulation is indicated or specified, provide extended stems arranged to receive insulation.

F. Bypass and Drain Connections: Comply with MSS SP-45 bypass and drain connections.

G. Threads: ASME B1.20.1.

H. Flanges: ASME B16.1 for cast iron, ASME B16.5 for steel, and ASME B16.24for bronze valves.

I. Solder Joint: ASME B16.18.

1. Caution: Where soldered end connections are used, use solder having a melting point below 840 deg F for gate, globe, and check valves; below 421 deg F for ball valves.

## 2.3 GATE VALVES

A. No gate valves will be used on this project.

## 2.4 BALL VALVES, HYDRONIC

A. Ball Valves, 4 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-110, 600-psi CWP, ASTM B 584 ,B 61 or B 62 bronze body (containing no more than 15% zinc), 2-piece construction; chrome-plated, full port, brass ball; blowout proof; silicon- bronze or silicon-brass stem; teflon seats and seals; threaded or soldered end connections, valves for HVAC.
1. Operator: Vinyl-covered steel lever handle for sizes 2-1/2" and smaller.
2. Operator: Lever operators with lock for sizes 3" and larger.
3. Valves shall be equipped with 2" extended handles of non-thermal conductive material. Also provide a protective sleeve that allows operation of the valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing the insulation. Supply with memory stops, which are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
4. Memory Stop: For operator handles.

## 2.5 PLUG VALVES

A. Plug Valves: MSS SP-78, 175-psi CWP, ASTM A 126 cast-iron body and bonnet, cast-iron plug, Viton, or teflon packing, flanged or grooved end connections:

1. Operator: Square head with 1 wrench for every 10 valves.
2. Operator: Worm and gear with handwheel, sizes 6 inches and larger.
3. Operator: Worm and gear with chain wheel, sizes 6 inches and larger, 120 inches or higher above floor.

## 2.6 GLOBE VALVES

A. Globe Valves, 2-1/2 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-80; Class 150, 300-psi CWP; ASTM B 62 cast-bronze body and screwed bonnet, rubber, bronze, or teflon disc, silicon bronze-alloy stem, teflon-impregnated

packing with bronze packing nut, threaded or soldered end connections; and with aluminum or malleable-iron handwheel.

B. Globe Valves, 3 Inches and Larger: MSS SP-85, Class 125, 200-psi CWP, ASTM A 126 cast-iron body and bolted bonnet with bronze fittings, renewable bronze seat and disc, brass-alloy stem, outside screw and yoke, teflon-impregnated packing with cast-iron follower, flanged end connections; and with cast-iron handwheel.

## 2.7 BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Butterfly Valves: MSS SP-67 200/250 CWP, ASTM A536 Ductile Iron, full lug body, 2 inch extended neck, 316 stainless steel or aluminum-bronze disc, slide through one piece 400 series stainless steel stem design with geometric connection to disc no taper pins, molded-in EPDM seat liner. Valves must be suitable for bi-directional dead end service at valves dead and rated pressure service with out the need for downstream flanges. The disk can be made of stainless steel for chilled water valves.

Operator for sizes 2-1/2" to 6": Lever handle with latch lock.
Operator for sizes 8" to 24": Weather-proof Handwheel gear operator.
Operator for 8" and larger, 120 " or higher above floor: Cain-wheel operator assembly.

B. Butterfly Valves for high pressure applications:
Valves shall meet the requirements of MSS SP-68, High Pressure Butterfly Valves with Offset Design. Unless otherwise indicated, full lug type valves suitable for bi-directional end of line service at full rated pressure, without the need of a downstream flange. ANSI Class 150 or 300, Carbon Steel Body, Stainless Steel Disc, Stainless Steel or Duplex Steel Stem, PTFE Seats, PTFE or Graphite Seals. Permanently lubricated bearings of 316 Stainless Steel with Graphite. 2 ½" to 6" shall have lever lock operator, 8" and larger shall have gear operators or Pneumatic/Electric Actuators.

NIBCO Figure Number LCS6822 (Class 150)
NIBCO Figure Number LCS7822 (Class 300)

## 2.8 CHECK VALVES

A. Swing Check Valves, 2-1/2 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-80; Class 150, 300-psi CWP; horizontal swing, Y-pattern, ASTM B 62 cast-bronze body and bonnet cap, rotating bronze disc with rubber seat or composition seat, threaded or soldered end connections:

B. Swing Check Valves, 3 Inches and Larger: MSS SP-71 Type 1, Class 125, 200-psi CWP, ASTM A 126 cast-iron body and bolted bonnet cap, horizontal-swing bronze disc, flanged or grooved end connections.

1. On sumppump discharge use swing check valve with external spring or lever and weight.

C. Wafer Check Valves: Class 125, 200-psi CWP, ASTM A 126 cast-iron body, bronze disc/plates, stainless-steel pins and springs, Buna N seals, installed between flanges.

1. On grooved piping systems use grooved by grooved check valve in lieu of flanged or wafer with grooved flange adapters.

D. Lift Check Valves: Class 125, ASTM B 62 bronze body and cap (main components), horizontal or vertical pattern, lift-type, bronze disc or Buna N rubber disc with stainless-steel holder threaded or soldered end connections.

2.9 DRAIN VALVES

A. Full port bronze ball valves with ¾" hose thread outlet and hose cap and chain.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine piping system for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of valves. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

C. Operate valves from fully open to fully closed positions. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operation.

D. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

E. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Check gasket material for proper size, material composition suitable for service, and freedom from defects and damage.

F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install valves as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

C. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow servicing, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

D. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the center of the pipe.

F. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.

G. For chain-wheel operators, extend chains to 78 inches above finished floor elevation.

H. Installation of Check Valves: Install for proper direction of flow as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: Horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Wafer Check Valves: Horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valve: With stem upright and plumb.

Note – Install all checks a minimum of 5 pipe diameters downstream of pump discharge or elbow to avoid flow turbulence. Flow straighteners may be needed in extreme cases.

3.3 SOLDERED CONNECTIONS

A. Cut tube square and to exact lengths.

B. Clean end of tube to depth of valve socket with steel wool, sand cloth, or a steel wire brush to a bright finish. Clean valve socket.

C. Apply proper soldering flux in an even coat to inside of valve socket and outside of tube.

D. Open gate and globe valves to fully open position.

E. Remove the cap and disc holder of swing check valves having composition discs.

F. Insert tube into valve socket, making sure the end rests against the shoulder inside valve. Rotate tube or valve slightly to ensure even distribution of the flux.

G. Apply heat evenly to outside of valve around joint until solder melts on contact. Feed solder until it completely fills the joint around tube. Avoid hot spots or overheating valve. Once the solder starts cooling, remove excess amounts around the joint with a cloth or brush.

3.4 THREADED CONNECTIONS

A. Note the internal length of threads in valve ends and proximity of valve internal seat or wall to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.

B. Align threads at point of assembly.

C. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to the external pipe threads, except where dry seal threading is specified.

D. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Wrench on valve shall be on the valve end into which the pipe is being threaded.

3.5 FLANGED CONNECTIONS

A. Align flange surfaces parallel.

B. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly with a torque wrench.

C. For dead-end service, all butterfly valves, except for the NIBCO LD2000 / 3000, require flanges both upstream and downstream for proper shutoff and retention. NIBCO LD2000 / 3000 series butterfly valves are suitable for bubbletight dead-end service with out the need for a downstream flange.

3.6 VALVE END SELECTION

A. Select valves with the following ends or types of pipe/tube connections:

1. Copper Tube Size, 2-1/2 Inches and Smaller: Steel Pipe Sizes, 2-1/2 Inches and Smaller: Threaded or grooved end.
2. Steel Pipe Sizes, 3 Inches and Larger: Grooved end or flanged.

3.7 APPLICATION

A. General Application: Use gate, ball, and butterfly valves for shutoff duty; globe, ball, and butterfly for throttling duty. Refer to piping system Specification Sections for specific valve applications and arrangements.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if leak persists.

END OF SECTION 15100

**SECTION 15122 - METERS AND GAGES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Thermometers.
2. Gages.
3. Test plugs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.

B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated; include performance curves.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL-CASE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, are limited to, the following:

1. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
4. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.

B. Case: Die-cast aluminum or brass, 9 inches long.

C. Tube: Red or blue reading, organic-liquid filled, with magnifying lens.

D. Tube Background: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.

E. Window: Glass.

F. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.

G. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.

H. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

## 2.2 THERMOWELLS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, are limited to, the following:

1. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge Div.
2. Ashcroft Commercial Instrument Operations; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
3. Ernst Gage Co.
4. Marsh Bellofram.
5. Miljoco Corp.
6. NANMAC Corporation.
7. Noshok, Inc.
8. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
9. REO TEMP Instrument Corporation.
10. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
11. Trerice, H. O. Co.
12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
13. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
14. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
15. Winters Instruments.

B. Manufacturers: Same as manufacturer of thermometer being used.

C. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type metal fitting made for insertion into piping and of type, diameter, and length required to hold thermometer.

## 2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, are limited to, the following:

1. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge Div.
2. Ashcroft Commercial Instrument Operations; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
3. Ernst Gage Co.
4. Eugene Ernst Products Co.
5. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc.
6. Marsh Bellofram.
7. Miljoco Corp.
8. Noshok, Inc.
9. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
10. REO TEMP Instrument Corporation.
11. Trerice, H. O. Co.
12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
13. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
14. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

15. Winters Instruments.

B. Direct-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: Indicating-dial type complying with ASME B40.100.

1. Case: Liquid-filled type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch diameter.
2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4, bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
6. Pointer: Red or other dark-color metal.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Ring: Stainless steel.
9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half scale.
10. Vacuum-Pressure Range: 30-in. Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.
11. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.

C. Pressure-Gage Fittings:

1. Valves: NPS 1/4 brass or stainless-steel needle type.
2. Syphons: NPS 1/4 coil of brass tubing with threaded ends.
3. Snubbers: ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 brass bushing with corrosion-resistant, porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.

2.4 TEST PLUGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [are limited to, the following:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. MG Piping Products Co.
3. National Meter, Inc.
4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Co.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Twin City Hose.
8. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

B. Description: Corrosion-resistant brass or stainless-steel body with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap, with extended stem for units to be installed in insulated piping.

C. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

D. Core Inserts: One or two self-sealing rubber valves.

1. Insert material for air, water, oil, or gas service at 20 to 200 deg F shall be CR.
2. Insert material for air or water service at minus 30 to plus 275 deg F shall be EPDM.

E. Test Kit: Furnish one test kit(s) containing one pressure gage and adaptor, one thermometer(s), and carrying case. Pressure gage, adapter probes, and thermometer sensing elements shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

1. Pressure Gage: Small bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be 0 to 200 psig.

2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 25 to 125 deg F.
3. High-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 0 to 220 deg F.
4. Carrying case shall have formed instrument padding.

## 2.5 WAFER-ORIFICE FLOWMETERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, are limited to, the following:

1. ABB, Inc.; ABB Instrumentation.
2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
3. Badger Meter, Inc.; Industrial Div.
4. Bell & Gossett; ITT Industries.
5. Meriam Instruments Div.; Scott Fetzer Co.

B. Description: Differential-pressure-design orifice insert for installation between pipe flanges; with calibrated flow-measuring element, separate flowmeter, hoses or tubing, valves, fittings, and conversion chart compatible with flow-measuring element, flowmeter, and system fluid.

C. Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.

D. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

E. Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.

F. Range: Flow range of flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.

G. Permanent Indicators: Suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch- diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

H. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 THERMOMETER APPLICATIONS

A. Install liquid-in-glass thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone and heat pumps.

B. Provide the following temperature ranges for thermometers:

1. Heating Hot Water: 30 to 240 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
2. Heat pump systems: 0 to 160 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
3. Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.

4. Domestic Hot Water: 30 to 240 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
5. Domestic Cold Water: 0 to 100 deg F, with 2 degree scale divisions.
6. In and out of Domestic water heater.

## 3.2 PRESSURE GAGE INSTALLATION

A. Install pressure gages in the following locations;

1. Discharge of each pressure reducing valve.
2. Building water service entrance.

## 3.3 GAGE APPLICATIONS

A. Install dry-case-type pressure gages for discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.

B. Install liquid-filled-case-type pressure gages at chilled- and condenser-water inlets and outlets of chillers.

C. Install liquid-filled-case-type pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump.

## 3.4 INSTALLATIONS

A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of diameter of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees where thermometers are indicated.

B. Install direct-mounting pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at most readable position.

C. Install needle-valve and snubber fitting in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).

D. Install needle-valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.

E. Install test plugs in tees in piping.

F. Install flow indicators, in accessible positions for easy viewing, in piping systems.

G. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters as prescribed by manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance for meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

END OF SECTION 15122

# SECTION 15170 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems.

### 1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.

B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

C. Basic requirements apply to mechanical equipment motors, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Motors 3/4 HP and Larger: Polyphase.

E. Motors Smaller than 3/4 HP: Single phase.

F. Frequency Rating: 60 Hz.

G. Voltage Rating: Determined by voltage of circuit to which motor is connected.

H. Service Factor: According to NEMA MG 1 – 2003, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Rated for continuous duty and sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, in indicated environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

J. Enclosure: Open drip-proof, unless otherwise indicated.

K. All motors shall have ASTM Grade 5 hardware that is Yellow Zinc-dichromate plated.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Motors Used in Across the Line Starters or with Reduced-Inrush Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for the indicated controller. Motor leads connections that are brought to motor terminal box shall be suitable with controller or starting method.

Description: EPACT NEMA MG 1, Low Voltage Induction Motor – Single Speed Application.

1. Design Characteristics: NEMA MG 1, Design B, unless otherwise indicated.
2. EPACT Energy-Efficient Design: As indicated by application.
3. Stator: Copper windings, unless otherwise indicated. Multispeed motors shall have separate winding for each speed.
4. Rotor: Squirrel cage, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Design Classification: NEMA Design B
6. Temperature Rise: Class F rise, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Insulation: Class F, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Minimum vibration: Each motor shall not exceed 0.5 G vibration peek/peek.
9. Bearings: Motor bearings shall be rated for an L-10 life 40,000 hours with an external load per NEMA MG 1-14 and an L-10 life of 100,000 hours in direct coupled applications for continuous duty and shall be of the regreasable type with grease relief fitting or Double-shielded, pre-lubricated ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading Per the motor manufactures standards.

B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers shall meet the following: Current Ratings, characteristics, and features shall be rated for a minimum of 10:1 turndown ratio and the motor that is provided will be coordinated and approved by controller manufacturer. A Variable Frequency driven motor shall have the following characteristics:

1. Critical vibration frequencies shall be minimized so that motor will operate throughout the range of controller output based on the system requirements.
2. Temperature Rise: Class B rise.
3. Insulation: Class F.
4. Thermal Protection: Where indicated, conform to NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors and inverter duty rated for NEMA MG-1-31 1998.
5. Bearings: Motor bearings shall be rated for an L-10 life 50,000 hours with an external load per NEMA MG 1-14 and an L-10 life of 100,000 hours in direct coupled applications for continuous duty and shall be of the regreasable type with automatic grease relief valve.

6. Motors shall be sized with respect to horsepower rating without using the service factor. All motors being operated by adjustable or variable frequency drives shall have a service factor 1.15 at equipments elevation.
7. The winding insulation system shall have an insulation rating of 1860 volt, peak with a 0.1 micro second rise time.
8. Motor stator and rotor steel shall be low-loss C-5 electrical grade silicon steel with interlaminated insulation system capable of withstanding a minimum 1000°F burnout.
9. Motors are to be of the NEMA Premium efficiency Design
10. All motor nameplates shall have raised letters stamped on stainless steel and be fastened to the motor frame with four stainless steel drive pins. Name plate shall meet applicable Nema MG1standards.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Where indicated, motors are (TEFC) totally enclosed with 1.15 minimum service factors at altitude, and shall have greased bearings, integral condensate drains, and capped relief vents. Windings shall be insulated with non-hygroscopic material class H insulation. External finish shall be chemical-resistant paint over corrosion-resistant primer. The minimum performance and construction requirements are outline in part B of this specification.

D. Source Quality Control: Perform the following routine tests according to NEMA MG 1-12 and shall consist of:

1. No load watts input, current and speed (RPM).
2. Winding resistance test.
3. High-potential test.
4. Locked rotor watts input and current.
5. Stator insulation resistance test.
6. Visual inspection and factory approval.
7. Each motor shall have a factory certified test report forwarded with each motor and included in O&M Manual.

## 2.4 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Type: As indicated or selected by manufacturer from one of the following, to suit starting torque and other requirements of specific motor application.

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split-phase start, capacitor run.
3. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
4. Capacitor start, inductor run.

B. Shaded-Pole Motors: Do not use, unless motors are smaller than 1/20 hp.

C. Thermal Protection: Where indicated or required, internal protection automatically opens power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal protection device automatically resets when motor temperature returns to normal range, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Bearings: Ball-bearing type for belt-connected motors and other motors with high radial forces on motor shaft. Sealed, prelubricated sleeve bearings for other single-phase motors.

E. Motors are to have the ECM label where variable speed with variable input (0-5vDC) is indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 15170

**SECTION 15185 - HYDRONIC PUMPS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following categories of hydronic pumps for hydronic systems:
   1. End-suction pumps.

B. Related Sections include the following:

   1. Division 15 Section "Motors" for general motor requirements.
   2. Division 15 Section "Vibration Isolation and Seismic Restraints" for inertia pads, isolation pads, spring supports, and spring hangers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; final impeller dimensions; and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

B. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include Setting Drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.

   1. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

C. Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label pumps to comply with UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps," for construction requirements.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, connections, and dimensional requirements of pumps and are based on the specific types and models indicated. Other manufacturers' pumps with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."

C. Regulatory Requirements: Fabricate and test steam condensate pumps to comply with HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation," and HI 1.6, "Centrifugal Pump Tests."

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.

B. Store pumps in dry location.

C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.

D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.

E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. End-Suction Pumps:

a. Aurora
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett ITT; Div. of ITT Fluid Technology Corp.
d. PACO Pumps.
e. Patterson
f. Taco; Fabricated Products Div.

2.2 GENERAL PUMP REQUIREMENTS

A. Pump Units: Factory assembled and tested.

B. Motors: Include built-in, thermal-overload protection and grease-lubricated ball bearings. Select each motor to be nonoverloading over full range of pump performance curve.

C. Motors Indicated to Be Energy Efficient: Minimum efficiency as indicated according to IEEE 112, Test Method B. Include motors with higher efficiency than "average standard industry motors" according to IEEE 112, Test Method B, if efficiency is not indicated.

## 2.3 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION PUMPS

A. Description: Centrifugal, close-coupled, end-suction, single-stage, bronze-fitted, back-pull-out, radially split case design; rated for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

1. Casing: Cast iron, with flanged piping connections, drain plug at low point of volute, and threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet connections.

    a. Connection Option: Unions at connections for casings that are not available with threaded companion flanges.

2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, overhung, single suction, keyed to shaft, and secured by locking cap screw.
3. Shaft and Sleeve: Steel shaft extension with bronze sleeve and neoprene slinger.
4. Seals: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and flexible bellows and gasket.
5. Motor: Directly mounted to pump casing and with supporting legs as integral part of motor enclosure.

## 2.4 FLEXIBLE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION PUMPS

A. Description: Base-mounted, centrifugal, flexible-coupled, end-suction, single-stage, bronze-fitted, back-pull-out, radially split case design; rated for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

1. Casing: Cast iron, with flanged piping connections, drain plug at low point of volute, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet connections, and integral feet or other means on volute to support weight of casing and attached piping. Casing shall allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, overhung, single suction, keyed to shaft, and secured by locking cap screw.
3. Shaft and Sleeve: Steel shaft with bronze sleeve.
4. Seals: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and flexible bellows and gasket.
5. Coupling: Flexible-spacer type, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment; with flange and sleeve section that can be disassembled and removed without removing pump or motor.
6. Coupling Guard: Steel, removable, and attached to mounting frame.
7. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate for mounting pump casing, coupling guard, and motor. Field-drill motor-mounting holes for field-installed motors.
8. Motor: Secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment.

2.5 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting; with bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers; bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes; drain plug; and factory- or field-fabricated support.

B. Triple-Duty Valve: Not allowed

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation.

1. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
2. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Install pumps according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install pumps according to HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."

B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance, including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Support pumps and piping separately so piping is not supported by pumps.

D. Suspend in-line pumps using continuous-thread hanger rod and vibration-isolation hangers. Install seismic bracing as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Set base-mounted pumps on concrete foundation. Disconnect coupling halves before setting. Do not reconnect couplings until alignment operations have been completed.

1. Support pump baseplate on rectangular metal blocks and shims, or on metal wedges with small taper, at points near foundation bolts to provide a gap of 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches between pump base and foundation for grouting.
2. Adjust metal supports or wedges until pump and driver shafts are level. Check coupling faces and suction and discharge flanges of pump to verify that they are level and plumb.

3.3 ALIGNMENT

A. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting them on foundations, after grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and after piping connections have been made.

B. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."

D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

## 3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are the same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install check valve and throttling valve on discharge side of in-line circulators.

F. Install nonslam check valve and globe valve on discharge side of vertical in-line pumps.

G. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of vertical in-line pumps.

H. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of base-mounted pumps.

I. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

J. Install temperature and pressure-gage connector plugs in suction and discharge piping around each pump.

K. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.

L. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.

M. Electrical power and control wiring and connections are specified in Division 16 Sections.

N. Ground equipment.

1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

## 3.5 COMMISSIONING

A. Verify that pumps are installed and connected according to the Contract Documents.

B. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written instructions and the Contract Documents.

C. Perform the following preventive maintenance operations and checks before starting:

1. Lubricate bearings.
2. Remove grease-lubricated bearing covers, flush bearings with kerosene, and clean thoroughly. Fill with new lubricant according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Disconnect coupling and check motor for proper rotation that matches direction marked on pump casing.
4. Verify that pumps are free to rotate by hand and that pumps for handling hot liquids are free to rotate with pumps hot and cold. Do not operate pumps if they are bound or drag, until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
5. Check suction piping connections for tightness to avoid drawing air into pumps.
6. Clean strainers.
7. Verify that pump controls are correct for required application.

D. Starting procedure for pumps with shutoff power not exceeding safe motor power is as follows:

1. Prime pumps by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pumps for operation.
2. Open cooling water-supply valves in cooling water supply to bearings, where applicable.
3. Open cooling water-supply valves if stuffing boxes are water cooled.
4. Open sealing liquid-supply valves if pumps are so fitted.
5. Open warm-up valves of pumps handling hot liquids if pumps are not normally kept at operating temperature.
6. Open circulating line valves if pumps should not be operated against dead shutoff.
7. Start motors.
8. Open discharge valves slowly.
9. Observe leakage from stuffing boxes and adjust sealing liquid valve for proper flow to ensure lubrication of packing. Let packing "run in" before reducing leakage through stuffing boxes; then tighten glands.
10. Check general mechanical operation of pumps and motors.
11. Close circulating line valves once there is sufficient flow through pumps to prevent overheating.

E. When pumps are to be started against closed check valves with discharge shutoff valves open, steps are the same, except open discharge valves before starting motors.

F. Refer to Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for detailed requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing hydronic systems.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps as specified below:

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining pumps.
2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section Contract Closeout.
4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 15185

## SECTION 15241-SEISMIC RESTRAINT AND VIBRATION ISOLATION

All isolation materials, flexible connectors and seismic restraints shall be of the same vendor and shall be selected and certified using published or factory certified data. Any variance or non-compliance with these specification requirements shall be corrected by the contractor in an approved manner.

PART 1 - SEISMIC DESIGN

1.1 DESCRIPTION

The work in this section consists of furnishing engineering and materials necessary for the required seismic design of supports and attachments for systems and equipment contained herein for the project.

Other sections of DIVISION 15 form a part of this section. Refer to all sections for a complete description of the work.

Unless otherwise specified, all mechanical, electrical, fire protection and plumbing equipment, pipe, and duct shall be restrained to resist seismic forces. Restraints shall maintain equipment, piping, and duct work in a captive position.

The 2006 IBC/ASCE 7-05 requires that mechanical & electrical components be assigned a component importance factor. This importance factor is used to determine which equipment may or may not be exempt from seismic design force requirements. The component importance factor is determined as follows:

$I_p = 1.5$ Life-safety component is required to function after an earthquake.

$I_p = 1.5$ Component contains hazardous or flammable material.

$I_p = 1.5$ Storage racks in occupancies open to the general public (e.g., warehouse retail stores).

$I_p = 1.0$ All other components.

In addition, for structures in Occupancy Category IV (Buildings having essential facility required for post earthquake recovery, and those containing substantial quantities of hazardous substances as designated by local building officials),

$I_p = 1.5$ For components needed for continued operation of the facility or whose failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.

SEE PROJECT DOCUMENTS FOR COMPONENT AND SYSTEM Ip's AND ALL OTHER DESIGN INFORMATION.

1.2 GENERAL SEISMIC DESIGN REQUIREMENTS:

Per IBC 1613.1, the seismic restraint of nonstructural components shall meet the requirements of ASCE 7. If the component in question is exempted by Section 13.1.4 of ASCE 7, a submittal noting that seismic restraint of that particular component is not required.

The seismic restraint design must meet the requirements listed in Table 13.2-1 of ASCE 7. These requirements may be met by providing a project-specific design prepared by a registered design professional in the state were the project is being constructed, and a manufacturer's certification that the component is seismically qualified.

On projects with Seismic Design Category A or B, seismic design or restraint is not required.

On projects with Seismic Design Category C:

Components with Ip = 1.0 do not require seismic design or restraint.

Duct: Where duct Ip>1.0, brace all duct > 5 lb/lf

Pipe: Where pipe Ip>1.0, brace all pipe > 2" diameter.

Equipment: Where equipment Ip>1.0, provide anchorage or restraint design for all floor, wall mounted or suspended equipment.

On projects with Seismic Design Category D:

Seismic anchorage design is not required for floor mounted mechanical, electrical, and plumbing components where I p = 1.0 and flexible connections between the components and associated duct work, piping and conduit are provided, the components are mounted at 4 feet (1219 mm) or less above a floor level and they weigh 400 pounds (1780 N) or less.

Seismic anchorage or bracing is not required for hanging, wall mounted, and flexibly supported mechanical, plumbing and electrical components that weigh 20 pounds (89 N) or less, where I p = 1.0 and flexible connections are provided between the components and associated duct work, piping and conduit.

Where equipment Ip>1.0, provide anchorage or restraint design for all floor, wall mounted or suspended equipment.

Duct: Where duct Ip=1.0, brace all rectangular duct > and equal 6 sqft, all round duct > 33" diameter.

Where duct Ip>1.0, brace all duct > 5 lb/lf

Pipe: Where pipe Ip=1.0, brace all pipe > 3" diameter.

Where pipe Ip>1.0, brace all pipe > 1" diameter.

Equipment items installed in-line and rigidly mounted at the inlet and outlet to the duct system (e.g, fans, heat exchangers and humidifiers) with an operating weight less than 75 pounds (334 N) need not be braced if the duct run it is attached to is braced. Equipment with an operating weight greater than 75 lbs must be braced and supported independent of the duct.

Regardless of Seismic Design Category:

Seismic restraints are not required on piping supported by individual clevis hangers where the distance, as measured from the top of the pipe to the supporting structure, is less than 12 inches (305mm) for the entire pipe run and the pipe can accommodate the expected deflections. Trapeze or double rod hangers, where the distance from the top of the trapeze or support to the structure is less than 12 inches for the entire run. HVAC ducts suspended from hangers that are 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the top of the duct to the supporting structure and the hangers are detailed to avoid significant bending of the hangers and their connections. Duct must be positively attached to hanger with minimum #10 screws within 2" from the top of the duct. Hanger rods shall not be constructed in a manner that would subject the rod to bending moments (swivel, eye bolt, or vibration isolation hanger connection to structure are required to prevent bending moments when utilizing this exclusion). Displacement of the component shall not cause damaging impact with other utilities or the structure. Flexible connections are required between unbraced systems and equipment to accommodate differential displacements. Where HVAC systems Ip>1.0, this exclusion shall not apply (per ASCE 7, 13.6.7).

Brace spacing for low deformability piping and duct (e.g., cast iron, PVC, fiberglass, glass, etc.) shall not exceed one half of the brace spacing of high deformability piping or duct.

Wherever systems or components are vibration isolated, seismic restraints must be designed to prevent short circuiting of the isolation systems.

ANCHORAGE REQUIREMENTS:

All post installed anchors utilized in the seismic design must be qualified for use in cracked concrete and approved for use with seismic loads.

Expansion anchors shall not be used for anchorage of equipment with motors rated over 10hp with the exception of undercut expansion anchors. Spring or internally isolated equipment are exempt from this requirement.

All beam clamps utilized for vertical support must also incorporate retention straps.

All seismic brace arm anchorages to include concrete anchors, beam clamps, truss connections, etc., must be approved for use with seismic loads.

Calculations and restraint device submittal drawings shall specify anchor bolt type, embedment, concrete compressive strength, minimum spacing between anchors, and minimum distances of anchors from concrete edges. Concrete anchor locations shall not be near edges, stress joints, or an existing fracture. All bolts shall be ASTM A307 or better.

Gravity supports must be designed by a licensed engineer in the project state for systems subject to seismic requirements as listed above. Gravity supports include primary support and anchorage of all distributed systems, riser supports, and supports for floor mounted utilities. Design is to include seismic loads in conjunction with dead loads as required by the IBC/ASCE 7.

See Part 2 for additional seismic restraint requirements associated with vibration isolated systems and components.

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S RESPONSIBILITIES:

The following seismic restraint manufacturers are accepted: International Seismic Application Technology (ISAT), Amber / Booth, Mason Industries Inc. (M.I.), Kinetics Noise Control Inc. (K.N.C.), Vibration Mounting & Controls, Inc. (V.M.C.) and Vibro Acoustics.

Determine vibration isolation and seismic restraint sizes and locations.

Provide installation instructions and shop drawings for all materials supplied under this section of the specifications.

Provide calculations to determine restraint loads resulting from seismic forces presented in local building code or IBC, Chapter 16 latest edition. Seismic calculations shall be certified by the manufacturers engineer licensed in the state of Utah

Seismic restraint load ratings must be certified and substantiated by testing or calculations under direct control of a registered professional engineer. Copies of testing and calculations must be submitted as part of submittal documents. OSHPD pre-approved restraint systems are exempt from this requirement if their pre-approval is current and based upon the IBC 2006 (i.e. OPA-07 pre-approval numbers).

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

All seismic restraint components exposed to the weather shall be zinc or cadmium-plated, epoxy coat or PVC coated, and/or galvanized steel. Nuts, bolts and washers may be zinc-electroplated. Restraints for outdoor mounted components shall provide adequate restraint for the greater of either wind or seismic loads required by local codes or withstand a minimum of 30 lb. / sq. ft. applied to any exposed surface of the equipment.

Seismic restraint designer must provide, in writing, the special inspection requirements for all Designated Seismic Systems as indicated in Chapter 17 of the IBC.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Each contractor responsible for the installation of Designated Seismic Systems (systems with component Ip>1.0) must submit a "Statement of Responsibility" as required by Section 1706.1 of the IBC 2006, prior to beginning work on the system or component.

Submittal documents must include a "Basis for Design" or "Design Criteria" which includes a statement from the registered design professional that the design complies with the requirements of the ASCE 7-05, Chapter 13 and IBC 2006 chapter 1912/ACI 318 (concrete anchors).

Submittals must include seismic bracing layout drawings indicating the location of all seismic restraints. The submittal package must include seismic restraint details providing specific information relating to the materials, type, size, and locations of anchorages; materials used for bracing; attachment requirements of bracing to structure and component; and locations of transverse and longitudinal sway bracing and rod stiffeners.

Catalog cut sheets and installation instructions shall be included for each type seismic restraint used on equipment or components being restrained.

Submit special inspection requirements as required under 1.4 at time of seismic submittals.

Submittal drawings and calculations must be stamped by a registered professional engineer in the State were the project is being constructed who is responsible for the seismic restraint design. All seismic restraint submittals not complying with this certification will be rejected.

1.6 SEISMIC CERTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT

For equipment or components where Ip = 1.0.

Submittal documents must include a "Basis for Design" or "Design Criteria" which includes a statement from the registered design professional that the design complies with the requirements of the ASCE 7-05, Chapter 13 and IBC 2006 chapter 1912/ACI 318 (concrete anchors). In addition, the basis for compliance must also be noted, as listed below:

- Project specific design documentation prepared and submitted by a registered design professional (ASCE 7, 13.2.1.1)
- Submittal of the manufacturer's certification that the equipment is seismically qualified by:
    - An engineered analysis conforming to the requirements of Chapter 13 of ASCE 7.
    - Testing by a nationally recognized testing standard procedure such as ICC-ES AC 156. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.

- Experience data conforming to a nationally recognized procedure. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.

- The equipment and components listed below are considered rugged and shall not require Special Seismic Certification:

  - Valves (not in cast-iron housings, except for ductile cast iron).
  - Pneumatic operators.
  - Hydraulic operators.
  - Motors and motor operators.
  - Horizontal and vertical pumps (including vacuum pumps).
  - Air compressors
  - Refrigerators and freezers.
  - Elevator cabs.
  - Underground tanks.
  - Equipment and components weighing not more than 20 lbs. supported directly on structures (and not mounted on other equipment or components) with supports and attachments in accordance with Chapter 13, ASCE 7-05.

  Exemptions in this section are for factory assembled discrete equipment and components only and do not apply to site assembled or field assembled equipment or equipment anchorage. The list is based in part on OSHPD Code Application Notice 2-1708A.5.

Special Certification requirements for Designated Seismic Systems (i.e. Ip > 1.0):

Seismic Certificates of Compliance supplied by manufacturers shall be submitted for all components that are part of Designated Seismic Systems. In accordance with the ASCE 7, certification shall be via one of the following methods:

For active mechanical and electrical equipment that must remain operable following the design earthquake:

- Testing as detailed by part c above.
- Experience data as detailed by part c above.
- Equipment that is considered "rugged" per part c above.

Components with hazardous contents shall be certified by the manufacturer as maintaining containment following the design earthquake by:

- Testing as detailed by part c above.
- Experience data as detailed by part c above.

- Engineering analysis utilizing dynamic characteristics and forces. Tanks (without vibration isolators) designed by a registered design professional in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, 2004 (BPVC 2004), and satisfying the force and displacement requirements of Sections 13.3.1 and 13.3.2 of ASCE 7-05 having an importance factor, I = 1.5 and reviewed by DFCM shall be considered to satisfy the Special Seismic Certification requirements on the basis of ASCE 7-05 Section 13.6.9.

1.7 INSTALLATION

Comply with manufacturer/engineer's instructions for the installation of seismic restraint materials and products.

PART 2 - VIBRATION ISOLATION

See Part 1 for seismic design requirements. Additional seismic design requirements are outlined below where they pertain specifically to vibration isolated components or systems.

2.1 DESCRIPTION

The work in this section consists of furnishing engineering and materials necessary for vibration isolation for systems and equipment contained herein for the project.

Other sections of DIVISION 15 form a part of this section. Refer to all sections for a complete description of the work.

All mechanical equipment .75 HP and over listed in the equipment schedule shall be mounted on vibration isolators to prevent the transmission of objectionable vibration and vibration induced sound to the building structure.

All isolation materials, flexible connectors and seismic restraints shall be of the same vendor and shall be selected and certified using published or factory certified data. Any variance or non-compliance with these specification requirements shall be corrected by the contractor in an approved manner.

The contractor and vendor of the isolation and seismic restraints for floor mounted equipment shall refer to the isolator and seismic restraint schedule which lists isolator types, isolator deflections and seismic restraint type. Vibration isolators shall be selected in accordance with the equipment, pipe or duct weight distribution so as to produce reasonably uniform deflections.

2.2 MANUFACTURER'S RESPONSIBILITIES:

Manufacturer of vibration and seismic restraint products shall have the following responsibilities:

Determine vibration isolation and seismic restraint sizes and locations.

Provide installation instructions and shop drawings for all materials supplied under this section of the specifications.

Provide calculations to determine equipment restraint loads resulting from seismic forces presented in local building code or IBC, Chapter 16 latest edition. Seismic calculations shall be certified by the manufacturers engineer licensed in the state of Utah.

Seismic restraint load ratings must be certified and substantiated by testing or calculations under direct control of a registered professional engineer.

Calculations and restraint device submittal drawings shall meet the requirements of Part 1, Seismic Design.

## 2.3 QUALITY CONTROL

The isolators and seismic restraint systems listed herein are as manufactured by International Seismic Application Technology (ISAT), Amber / Booth, Mason Industries Inc. (M.I.), Kinetics Noise Control Inc. (K.N.C.), California Dynamics (CalDyn), Vibration Mounting & Controls, Inc. (V.M.C.) and Vibro Acoustics.

Steel components shall be cleaned and painted with industrial enamel. All nuts, bolts and washers shall be zinc-electroplated. Structural steel bases shall be thoroughly cleaned of welding slag and primed with zinc-chromate or metal etching primer.

All isolators, bases and seismic restraints exposed to the weather shall utilize weather resistant plating, epoxy coat or PVC coated springs and galvanized steel components. Nuts, bolts and washers may be zinc-electroplated. Isolators for outdoor mounted equipment shall provide adequate restraint for the greater of either wind loads required by local codes or withstand a minimum of 30 lb. / sq. ft. applied to any exposed surface of the equipment.

Vibration isolation designer must provide a written special inspection plan as indicated in Chapter 17 of the IBC.

## 2.4 SUBMITTALS

Submit shop drawings of all isolators, seismic restraints and calculations provided.

The manufacturer of vibration isolation products shall submit the following data for each piece of isolated equipment: clearly identified equipment tag, quantity and size of vibration isolators and seismic restraints for each piece of rotating isolated equipment. Submittals for mountings and hangers incorporating springs shall include spring diameter and free height, rated deflections, and solid load. Submittals for bases shall clearly identify locations for all mountings as well as all locations for attachment points of the equipment to the mounting base. Submittals shall include seismic calculations signed and checked by a qualified licensed engineer in the state where the project is being constructed. Catalog cut sheets and installation instructions shall be included for each type of isolation mounting or seismic restraint used on equipment being isolated.

Submit special inspection requirements as required under 2.4 at time of isolator/seismic submittals. Submittal must be stamped by a registered Utah professional engineer who is responsible for the vibration isolation and seismic restraint design. All vibration isolation not complying with this certification will be rejected.

Submittal documents must include a "Basis for Design" or "Design Criteria" which includes a statement from the registered design professional that the design complies with the requirements of the ASCE 7-05, Chapter 13 and IBC 2006 chapter 1912/ACI 318 (concrete anchors). In addition, the basis for compliance must also be noted, as listed below:

- Project specific design documentation prepared and submitted by a registered design professional (ASCE 7, 13.2.1.1)

- Submittal of the manufacturer's certification that the isolation equipment is seismically qualified by:

- An engineered analysis conforming to the requirements of Chapter 13 of ASCE 7.
- Testing by a nationally recognized testing standard procedure such as ICC-ES AC 156. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.
- Experience data conforming to a nationally recognized procedure. The substantiated seismic design capacities shall exceed the seismic demands determined by Section 13.3 of ASCE 7.

## 2.5 VIBRATION ISOLATION PRODUCTS

### ISOLATORS

Specification W: a pad type mounting consisting of two layers of ribbed elastomeric pads with a ½" poro-elastic vibration absorptive material bonded between them. Pads shall be sized for approximate deflection of 0.10" to 0.18". Pads shall be Amber / Booth Type NRC or equal.

Specification A: an elastomeric mounting having a steel baseplate with mounting holes and a threaded insert at top of the mounting for attaching equipment. All metal parts shall be completely embedded in the elastomeric material. Mountings shall be designed for approximately 1/2" deflection, and incorporate a steel seismic snubber with all directional restraint. Mountings shall be Amber/Booth Type SRVD or equal.

Specification B: an adjustable, freestanding, open spring mounting with combination leveling and equipment fastening bolt. The spring shall be welded to the spring mounting baseplate and compression plate for stability. The isolator shall be designed for a minimum kx/ky (horizontal-to-vertical spring rate) of 1.0. An elastomeric pad having a minimum thickness of 1/4" shall be bonded to the baseplate. Nuts, adjusting bolts and washers shall be zinc-electroplated to prevent corrosion. This type isolator must be used with specification SL seismic restraint (section 2.3.1). Isolators shall be Amber/Booth Type SW or equal.

Specification C: a unitized adjustable, stable open spring isolator with a seismic restraint housing which serves as a blocking device during equipment installation. The spring package shall include an elastomeric pad for high frequency absorption at the base of the spring. The springs shall be designed for a minimum kx/ky (horizontal-to-vertical spring rate) of 1.0. Nuts, adjusting bolts and washers shall be zinc-electroplated to prevent corrosion. The spring assembly shall be removable with equipment in place and shall fit within a welded steel enclosure consisting of a top plate and rigid lower housing. Isolated seismic restraint bolts shall connect top plate to lower housing to resist seismic and wind forces in all directions and limit motion to a maximum of 1/4" movement before engaging. Surfaces that engage under seismic motion shall be cushioned with a resilient elastomeric pad or grommet to protect equipment. Top plate shall have adequate means for fastening to the equipment, and baseplate shall have adequate means for bolting to structure. Entire assembly shall be rated to exceed the applied seismic load (para 1.3.4.). Seismic isolator shall be Amber/Booth Type CTER or equal.

Specification D: an elastomeric hanger consisting of a rectangular steel box capable of 200% minimum overload without visible deformation, 30 degree rod misalignment and an elastomeric isolation element designed for approximately 1/2" deflection. Hangers shall be Amber/Booth Type BRD or equal.

Specification E: a combination spring and elastomeric hanger consisting of a rectangular steel box capable of 200% minimum overload without visible deformation, 30 degree rod misalignment, coil spring, spring retainers and elastomeric element designed for approximately 1/2" deflection. The spring shall be designed for a minimum kx/ky (horizontal-to-vertical spring rate) of 1.0. Spring hangers shall be Amber/Booth Type BSRA or equal.

Specification F: a set (two or more) of spring thrust resisting assemblies, which consist of coil springs, spring retainer, isolation washer, angle mounting brackets, and elastomeric tubing for isolating thrust resister rod from fan discharge. Thrust restraints shall be Amber / Booth Type TRK or equal.

Specification SB: a unitized adjustable open spring isolator and a welded steel housing designed to resist seismic forces in all directions. Restraint surfaces which engage under seismic motion shall be cushioned with a resilient elastomer to protect equipment. Restraints shall allow a maximum of 1/4" movement before engaging and shall allow for the spring to be changed if required. Isolator shall be a stable spring with a minimum ky/ky of 1.0. The spring package shall include an elastomeric pad for high frequency absorption at the base of the spring. Nuts and bolts shall be zinc-electroplated to prevent corrosion. Bolting equipment to isolator with bolts smaller than main adjusting bolt will not be allowed.

Base plate shall provide means for bolting to the structure. Entire assembly shall be rated to exceed the applied seismic load. Mountings shall be Amber/Booth Type SWSR or equal.

BASES

Specification G: a welded integral structural steel fan and motor base with NEMA standard motor slide rails and holes drilled to receive the fan and motor slide rails. The steel members shall be adequately sized to prevent distortion and misalignment of the drive, and specifically, shall be sized to limit deflection of the beam on the drive side to 0.05" due to starting torque. Snubbers to prevent excessive motion on starting or stopping shall be furnished if required; however, the snubbers shall not be engaged under steady running conditions. Bases shall be Amber/Booth Type SFB or equal.

Specification H: a welded WF (main member) structural steel base for increasing rigidity of equipment mounted thereon or for unitizing belt driven fans. Fan bases shall have holes drilled to match fan and located to provide required center distance between fan and supplied NEMA standard motor slide rails. The steel members shall have minimum depth of 1/12" of the longest span, but not less than 6" deep. Junior beams and junior channels shall not be used. Cross members shall be provided where necessary to support the equipment or to prevent twisting of the main members. Where height restrictions prevent the use of members having a depth of 1/12 of the longest span, beams of less depth may be used provided they have equal rigidity. Provide height-saving brackets for side mounting of the isolators. Brackets for use with Specification type B isolators having 2.5" deflection or greater shall be of the precompression type to limit exposed bolt length. Bases shall be Amber/Booth Type WSB or equal.

Specification J: a concrete inertia base consisting of perimeter structural steel concrete pouring form (CPF), reinforcing bars welded in place, bolting templates with anchor bolts and height-saving brackets for side mounting of the isolators. Brackets for use with Specification type B isolators having 2.5" deflection or greater shall be of the pre-compression type to limit exposed bolt length. The perimeter steel members shall have a minimum depth of 1/12 of the longest span, but not less than 6" deep. The base shall be sized with a minimum overlap of 4" around the base of the equipment and, in the case of belt-driven equipment, 4" beyond the end of the drive shaft. Fan bases are to be supplied with NEMA standard motor slide rails. The bases for pumps shall be sized to support the suction elbow of end suction pumps and both the suction and discharge elbows of horizontal split-case pumps. The bases shall be T-shaped where necessary to conserve space. Inertia bases shall be Amber/Booth Type CPF or equal.

FLOOR MOUNTED EQUIPMENT SEISMIC RESTRAINTS:

Specification SL: a restraint assembly for floor mounted equipment consisting of welded steel interlocking assemblies welded or bolted securely to the equipment or the equipment bases and to the supporting structure. Restraint assembly surfaces which engage under seismic motion shall be lined with a minimum ¼" thick resilient elastomeric pad to protect equipment. Restraints shall be field adjustable and be positioned for 1/4" clearance as required to prevent interference during normal operation. Restraint

assembly shall have minimum rating of 2 times the catalog rating at 1 G as certified by independent laboratory test. Restraint shall be Amber/Booth Type ER or equal.

FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTIONS

Specification K: Water Service: For flanged connection – a double sphere arch rubber expansion joint constructed of molded reinforced neoprene with integral steel floating flanges, and designed to be suitable for pressures up to 225 PSI (4 to 1 safety factor) and temperatures up to 225 °F. Connectors shall have minimum movement capabilities of 1.77" compression, 1.18" lateral and 1.18" extension. Connectors shall provide a minimum 35° angular movement up to 6", minimum 30° up to 12" and minimum 20°up to 24". Spring-loaded control units shall be furnished to limit movement to within allowables. Amber/Booth Type 2600 or equal.

Water Service: For threaded type – A double spherical rubber hose connector, minimum 8" long, constructed of molded neoprene, nylon cord reinforced, with female pipe unions each end. Connectors shall have a minimum movement capability of 7/8" compression, 7/8" lateral, 1/4" extension and 20° angular through 1-1/4", 13° through 2", and 9° through 3". Connectors shall be suitable for a maximum working pressure (4 to 1 safety factor) of 150 psi and 225 degree F. Connectors shall have cable control units to limit extension to1/4". Amber/Booth Type 2655 or equal.

## 2.6 EXECUTION

Isolator and seismic restraints shall be installed as recommended by the manufacturer. Isolate all mechanical equipment 0.75 hp and over per the isolation schedule and these specifications.

PIPING ISOLATION

Horizontal Pipe Isolation: all HVAC pumped water, pumped condensate, glycol, and refrigerant piping size 1-1/4" and larger within mechanical rooms shall be isolated. Outside equipment rooms this piping shall be isolated for the greater of 50' or 100 pipe diameters from rotating equipment. For the first 3 support locations from externally isolated equipment provide specification E hangers or specification SB or SX floor mounts with the same deflection as equipment isolators (max 2"). All other piping within the equipment rooms shall be isolated with the same specification isolators with a 3/4" minimum deflection. Steam piping size 1-1/4" and larger which is within an equipment room and connected to rotating equipment shall be isolated for three (3) support locations from the equipment. Provide specification E or SB (SX) isolators with the same deflection as the equipment but a minimum of ¾"

All plumbing pumped water, pumped condensate, and steam piping size 1-1/4" and larger within mechanical rooms shall be isolated the same as HVAC piping (para. 3.2.1). Isolators are not required for any plumbing pumped water, pumped condensate, and steam piping outside of mechanical rooms unless listed in the isolation schedule (para. 3.5.5.)

Pipe Riser Isolation: All variable temperature vertical pipe risers 1-1/4" and larger, riser piping requiring isolation per para. 3.2.1 or 3.2.2 or where specifically shown and detailed on riser drawings shall be fully supported by specification B mounts with precompression plates. Steel spring deflection shall be 3/4-inch minimum except in those locations where added deflection is required due to pipe expansion and contraction. Spring deflection shall be a minimum of 4 times the anticipated deflection change. Springs shall be selected to keep the riser in tension. Pipe risers up through 16" shall be supported at intervals of every third floor of the building. Pipe risers 18" and over, every second floor. Wall sleeves for take-offs from riser shall be sized for insulation O.D. plus two times the anticipated movement to prevent binding. Horizontal take-offs and at upper and lower elbows shall be supported with spring isolators as required to

accommodate anticipated movement. In addition to submittal data requirements previously outlined, riser diagrams and calculations shall be submitted for approval. Calculations must show anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on the building structure, and spring deflection changes. Submittal data shall include certification that the riser system has been examined for excessive stresses and that none will exist if installed per design proposed. Riser supports shall be Amber/Booth Type SWP or equal.

DUCT ISOLATION:

Isolate all duct work with a static pressure 2" W.C. and over in equipment rooms and to minimum of 50 feet from the fan or air handler. Use specification type E hangers or type SB (SX) floor mounts or equal.

2.7 INSTALLATION

Comply with manufacturer's instructions for the installation and load application of vibration isolation materials and products. Adjust to ensure that units do not exceed rated operating deflections or bottom out under loading, and are not short-circuited by other contacts or bearing points. Remove space blocks and similar devices (if any) intended for temporary support during installation or shipping.

Locate isolation hangers as near the overhead support structure as possible.

Adjust leveling devices as required to distribute loading uniformly on isolators. Shim units as required where leveling devices cannot be used to distribute loading properly.

Install isolated inertia base frames and steel bases on isolator units as indicated so that a minimum of 2 inch clearance below base will result when supported equipment has been installed and loaded for operation.

Roof curbs shall be installed directly to building structural steel or concrete roof deck. Installation on top of steel deck or roofing material is not acceptable.

APPLICATION OF SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

All floor mounted isolated equipment shall be protected with type SB or type C unitized isolator and restraint or with separate type SL restraints (minimum of 4) in conjunction with type B isolators. For equipment with high center of gravity additional cable restraints shall be furnished, as required by isolation manufacturer, to limit forces and motion caused by rocking.

Floor mounted which are exempt (section 2.2.) shall be protected by properly sized anchor bolts with elastomeric grommets provided by the isolation manufacturer

Where riser pipes pass through cored holes, core diameters to be a maximum of 2" larger than pipe O.D. including insulation. Cored holes must be packed with resilient material or firestop as provided by other sections of this specification or local codes. Restrained isolators type C or SB shall support risers and provide longitudinal restraint at floors where thermal expansion is minimal and will not bind isolator restraints.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

Representative of vibration isolation system manufacturer to walk the project and provide documentation indicating conformance to vibration isolation design intent (see example below)

| EQUIPMENT ISOLATION SCHEDULE (1)(4) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | LOCATION | | | | | | | | |
| | A' CRITICAL (35'-50' SPAN) | | | B' UPPER STORY (20'-35' SPAN) | | | C' GRADE | | |
| EQUIPMENT | ISOLATOR TYPE | MINIMUM DEFLECTION (IN) | BASE (1) TYPE | ISOLATOR TYPE | MINIMUM DEFLECTION (IN) | BASE (1) TYPE | ISOLATOR TYPE | MINIMUM DEFLECTION (IN) | BASE (1) TYPE |
| CENTRIFUGAL FANS | | | | | | | | | |
| CL. I & II UP TO *54-112"* W.D. | | | | | | | | | |
| UPT015HP | SWISWSR | 1.5 | SFB | SWISWSR | 0.75 | SFB | SWISWSR | 0.75 | SFB |
| 20-50 HP | SW | 2.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 1.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 0.75 | SFB |
| 60 HP & OVER | SW | 3.5 | CPF | SW | 2.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 1.5 | SFB |
| CL. I & II 60" W.D. & OVERI ALL CL. III FANS | | | | | | | | | |
| UPT015HP | SW | 2.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 1.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 0.75 | CPF |
| 20-50 H P | SW | 2.5 | CPF | SW | 2.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 1.5 | CPF |
| 60 HP & OVER | SW | 3.5 | CPF | SW | 2.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 1.5 | CPF |
| PUMPS | | | | | | | | | |
| FLOOR MTD. | | | | | | | | | |
| UP TO 15 HP | SWISWSR | 0.75 | CPF | SWISWSR | 0.75 | CPF | SRVD | 0.4 | CPF |
| *7-112* HP & OVER | SWISWSR | 1.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 1.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 0.75 | CPF |
| SUSPENDED INLINE | PBSRA | 1.75 | | PBSRA | 1.75 | | PBSRA | 1 | |
| REFRIGERATION UNITS/ HEAT PUMPS | | | | | | | | | |
| RECIPROCATING COMPRESSORS | SW | 2.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 1.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 0.75 | CPF |
| RECIPROCATING CONDo UNITS & CHILLERS | SW | 2.5 | CPF | CTER | 1.5 | | SWSR | 0.75 | |
| HERMETIC CENTRIFUGALS | CTER | 2.5 | | CTER | 1.5 | | NRC | 0.15 | |
| OPEN CENTRIFUGALS | SW | 2.5 | CPF | SWISWSR | 1.5 | CPF | NRC | 0.15 | |
| ABSORPTION MACHINES | CTER | 1.5 | | CTER | 0.75 | | NRC | 0.15 | |

NOTES:

1) WITH TYPE ER SEISMIC SNUBBERS IF SW ISOLATORS ARE USED. NO ADDITIONAL SNUBBER IS REQUIRED FOR SWSR ISOLATORS.
2) TYPE TRK THRUST RESISTORS REQUIRED ON ALL HIGH PRESSURE FAN SECTIONS, SUSPENDED AXIAL FLOW FANS AND ON FLOOR MOUNTED AXIAL FANS OPERATING AT 3" S.P. OR GREATER.
3) WITH STEEL BASE TYPE WSB IF REQUIRED FOR SUPPORT.

END OF SECTION 15241

# SECTION 15411 - WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes water distribution piping from locations indicated to fixtures and equipment inside building.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Water Systems" for exterior water service piping.
2. Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages" for meters, thermometers, pressure gages, and fittings.
3. Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for water distribution piping specialties.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Water Service Piping: Water piping outside building that conveys water to building.

B. Service Entrance Piping: Water piping at entry into building between water service piping and water distribution piping.

C. Water Distribution Piping: Water piping inside building that conveys water to fixtures and equipment throughout the building.

### 1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide components and installation capable of producing piping systems with the following minimum working-pressure ratings, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Combined Fire-Protection and Domestic, Service Entrance Piping: 250 psig.
2. Service Entrance Piping: 160 psig.
3. Water Distribution Piping: 125 psig.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Water Samples, Test Results, and Reports: Specified in "Field Quality Control" and "Cleaning" articles.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking on piping made to specified standards.

B. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

C. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components–Health Effects," Sections 1 through 9 for potable-water piping and components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES AND TUBES

A. General: Applications of the following pipe and tube materials are indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types K and L, water tube, annealed temper.

C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M, water tube, drawn temper.

D. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, 250-psig minimum pressure rating with mechanical- or push-on-joint bell, plain spigot end, and AWWA C104 cement-mortar lining. Include AWWA C111 ductile-iron gland, rubber gasket, and steel bolts with mechanical-joint pipe. Include AWWA C111 rubber gasket with push-on-joint pipe.

E. Flanged, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C115 ductile-iron barrel with 250-psig pressure rating and AWWA C104 cement-mortar lining. Include Class 150 or 300, iron-alloy threaded flanges that match piping.

2.2 PIPE AND TUBE FITTINGS

A. General: Applications of the following pipe and tube fitting materials are indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Copper, Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18 cast-copper alloy or ASME B16.22 wrought copper.

C. Copper, Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.

D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.

E. Copper Unions: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket joint, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint, threaded, or solder-joint and threaded ends. Include threads conforming to ASME B1.20.1 on threaded ends.

F. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical- or Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern; or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern; with 250-psig minimum pressure rating and AWWA C104 cement-mortar lining. Include AWWA C111 ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts with mechanical-joint fittings. Include AWWA C111 rubber gaskets with push-on-joint fittings.

G. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings: Compound coupling fitting with sleeve and flexing sections for up to 20-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends conforming to AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include 250-psig minimum working-pressure rating and AWWA C104 cement-mortar lining or AWWA C550 epoxy interior coating. Include AWWA C111 ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

H. Ductile-Iron Flanged Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern; with 250-psig minimum pressure rating and AWWA C104 cement-mortar lining.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. General: Applications of the following piping joining materials are indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for commonly used joining materials.

C. Solder: ASTM B 32, Alloy Sn95, Sn94, or E; lead free.

D. Brazing Filler Metal: AWS A5.8, BCuP, copper phosphorus or BAg, silver classification.

E. Copper, Keyed Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for hot water, and bolts and nuts.

F. Ductile-Iron, Keyed Couplings: AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for hot water, and bolts and nuts.

G. Transition Couplings: Coupling or other manufactured fitting same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and with ends compatible with piping to be joined.

2.4 VALVES

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Valves" for general-duty valves.

B. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for special-duty valves.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges may be used on aboveground piping, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Underground, Service Entrance Piping: Do not use flanges or valves underground. Use the following:

1. 2-Inch NPS and Smaller: Soft copper tube, Type K; copper, solder-joint pressure fittings; and soldered joints.

2. 2-1/2- to 3-1/2-Inch NPS: Soft copper tube, Type K; copper, solder-joint pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
3. 4- to 8-Inch NPS: Ductile-iron pipe and fittings, and mechanical or push-on joints.
4. 10- and 12-Inch NPS: Ductile-iron pipe and fittings, and mechanical or push-on joints.

D. Aboveground, Water Distribution Piping: Use the following:

1. 2-Inch NPS and Smaller: Hard copper tube, Type M or L; copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints or Hard copper tube, Type L with grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; and copper, keyed couplings..
2. 2-1/2- to 3-1/2-Inch NPS: Hard copper tube, Type L; copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints or Hard copper tube, Type L with grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; and copper, keyed couplings.
3. 4- to 6-Inch NPS: Hard copper tube, Type L with grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; and copper, keyed couplings.
4. 8- to 12-Inch NPS: Flanged, ductile-iron pipe and flanged, ductile-iron fittings.

E. Underground, Water Distribution Piping: Do not use flanges or valves underground.

## 3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Shutoff Duty: Use gate, ball, or butterfly valves.
2. Throttling Duty: Use globe, ball, or butterfly valves.

B. Grooved-end butterfly valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

## 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for basic piping installation.

## 3.5 SERVICE ENTRANCE PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Extend service entrance piping to exterior water service piping in sizes and locations indicated for service entrances into building.

B. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside building at each service entrance pipe.

C. Install water-pressure regulators downstream from shutoff valves. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for water-pressure regulators.

D. Ductile-Iron, Service Entrance Piping: Comply with AWWA C600. Install buried piping between shutoff valve and connection to water service piping with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor at entrance. Include thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets. Encase piping with polyethylene film according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

E. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service entrance pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals.

## 3.6 WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install piping with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain.

## 3.7 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for basic piping joint construction.

B. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Sectional Valves: Install sectional valves close to main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, and where indicated. Use gate or ball valves for piping 2-inch NPS and smaller. Use gate or butterfly valves for piping 2-1/2-inch NPS and larger.

B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each water supply to equipment, on each supply to plumbing fixtures without supply stops, and where indicated. Use gate or ball valves for piping 2-inch NPS and smaller. Use gate or butterfly valves for piping 2-1/2-inch NPS and larger.

C. Drain Valves: Install drain valves for equipment, at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.

1. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
2. Install stop-and-waste drain valves where indicated.
3. Provide permanently affixed chains and caps.

D. Calibrated Balancing Valves: Install in each hot-water circulation return branch, discharge side of each pump and circulator, and where indicated. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

## 3.9 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports" for pipe hanger and support devices. Install the following:

1. Riser clamps, MSS Type 8 or Type 42, for vertical runs.
2. Adjustable steel clevis hangers, MSS Type 1, for individual, straight, horizontal runs 100 feet and less.
3. Adjustable roller hangers, MSS Type 43, for individual, straight, horizontal runs longer than 100 feet.
4. Spring cushion rolls, MSS Type 49, if indicated, for individual, straight, horizontal runs longer than 100 feet.
5. Pipe rolls, MSS Type 44, for multiple, straight, horizontal runs 100 feet or longer. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
6. Spring hangers, MSS Type 52, for supporting base of vertical runs.

B. Install supports according to Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:

| Pipe Size | Rod Diameter | Maximum Spacing |
|---|---|---|
| 1 1/4 in. and smaller | ½ in. | 6 ft. |
| 1-1/2 in. and 2 in. | ½ in. | 9 ft. |
| 2-1/2 in. and 2 in. | 5/8 in. | 10 ft. |
| 4 in. and 6 in. | 3/4 in. | 10 ft. |
| 8 in. and 10 in. | 7/8 in. | 10 ft. |
| 12 in. and 14 in. | 1 in. | 10 ft. |
| 16 in. through 24 in. | (2)-1in | 10 ft. |

In addition to the spacing listed, an additional hanger shall be provided 1 foot 0 inches from each pipe drop, rise or turn.

F. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.10CONNECTIONS

A. Connect service entrance piping to exterior water service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

B. Connect water distribution piping to service entrance piping at shutoff valve, and extend to and connect to the following:

1. Booster Systems: Connect cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Connect cold-water supply and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect hot- and cold-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing Fixtures."
4. Equipment: Connect hot- and cold-water supply piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections 2-1/2-inch NPS and larger.

## 3.11FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect service entrance piping and water distribution piping as follows:

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

    a. Roughing-In Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    b. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Test service entrance piping and water distribution piping as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
3. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for 4 hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

## 3.12CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable service entrance piping and water distribution piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing water piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed, procedure described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or as described below:

    a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
        1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
        2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours.

    c. Flush system with clean, potable water until chlorine is no longer in water coming from system after the standing time.
    d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows contamination.

B. Prepare and submit reports for purging and disinfecting activities.

C. Clean interior of piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

## 3.13COMMISSIONING

A. Fill water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.

B. Perform the following steps before putting into operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.

4. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and plugs used for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
5. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
6. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and that cartridges are clean and ready for use.

C. Check plumbing equipment and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation. Do not operate water heaters before filling with water.

D. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

1. Water-Pressure Regulators: Set outlet pressure at 80 psig maximum, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Energize pumps and verify proper operation.

END OF SECTION 15411

# SECTION 15420 - DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes sanitary drainage and vent piping, and storm drainage piping inside building and to locations indicated.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Sewerage Piping: Building sewer piping outside building that conveys sanitary sewage from building.

B. Drainage Piping: Building sewer piping outside building that conveys storm drainage from building.

C. Service Entrance Piping: Drainage piping at entry into building between outside building sewer piping and inside drainage piping.

D. Drainage and Vent Piping: Piping inside building that conveys waste water and vapors from fixtures and equipment throughout the building.

E. Force-Main Piping: Drainage piping, under pressure.

F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic and other piping materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene polymer, rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

### 1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide components and installation capable of producing piping systems with the following minimum working-pressure ratings, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Systems: 15-foot head of water.
2. Storm Drainage Systems: 15-foot head of water.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Test Results and Reports: Specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking on piping made to specified standards.

B. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES AND TUBES

A. General: Applications of the following pipe and tube materials are indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy classes. Include ASTM C 564 rubber gasket, with dimensions required for pipe class, for each hub.

C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

D. Galvanized Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Schedule 40.

E. Galvanized, Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53 or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, seamless, steel pipe.

H. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2665, Schedule 40.

I. Cellular-Core, PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.

2.2 PIPE AND TUBE FITTINGS

A. General: Applications of the following pipe and tube fitting materials are indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Threaded-Fitting, End Connections: ASME B1.20.1.

C. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron, Soil-Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy classes, hub and spigot. Include ASTM C 564 rubber gasket, with dimensions required for pipe class, for each hub.

D. Hubless, Cast-Iron, Soil-Pipe Fittings: CISPI 301.

E. Cast-Iron Sovent Fittings: ASME B16.45 drainage-pattern aerator and deaerator.

F. Cast-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, standard pattern.

G. Cast-Iron, Threaded Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, recessed, drainage pattern.

H. Cast-Iron, Threaded Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.

I. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M, water tube, drawn temper.

J. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

M. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311 drain, waste, and vent pipe patterns.

N. PVC Plastic, Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409 drainage pattern, with ends as required for application.

## 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. General: Applications of the following piping joining materials are indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for commonly used joining materials.

C. Hubless, Cast-Iron, Soil-Piping Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and ASTM C 564 rubber sleeve or gasket with integral, center pipe stop. Include the following:

1. Stainless-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 666, Type 301, stainless-steel housing or shield; and stainless-steel clamps. Include gasket.

   a. Clamp Width: 2-1/8 inches wide with 2 clamps, for piping 1-1/2- to 4-inch NPS.
   b. Clamp Width: 3 inches wide with 4 clamps, for piping 5- to 10-inch NPS.

2. Heavy-Duty, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48, 2-piece, cast-iron housing; and stainless-steel bolts and nuts. Include gasket.

D. Copper, Keyed Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.

E. Ductile-Iron, Keyed Couplings: AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.

F. Transition Couplings: Coupling or other manufactured fitting same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and with ends compatible with piping to be joined.

G. Flexible, Transition Couplings for Underground, Nonpressure Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve. Include ends same sizes as piping to be joined and include corrosion-resistant metal band on each end. Coupling to be equal to EBAA Iron Flex-Tend Coupler.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXCAVATION

A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

## 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges may be used on aboveground piping, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Aboveground, Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: Use the following:

1. 1-1/2-Inch NPS: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe; hubless, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings; and one of the following hubless, cast-iron, soil-piping couplings:

a. Couplings: Type 301, stainless steel.

2. 2- to 8-Inch NPS: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe; hubless, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings; and one of the following hubless, cast-iron, soil-piping couplings:

a. Couplings: Type 301, stainless steel.

D. Underground, Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: Use the following:

1. PVC plastic pipe, PVC socket fittings and solvent-cemented joint.

E. Aboveground, Storm Drainage Piping: Use the following:

1. 4- to 10-Inch NPS: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe; hubless, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings; and one of the following hubless, cast-iron, soil-piping couplings:

a. Couplings: Type 301, stainless steel.

F. Underground, Storm Drainage Piping: Use the following:

1. PVC plastic pipe, PVC socket fittings and solvent-cemented joint.

## 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for basic piping installation.

## 3.4 SERVICE ENTRANCE PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Sewerage and Drainage" for sanitary and storm sewer piping.

B. Extend building sanitary drain piping and connect to sanitary sewer piping in sizes and locations indicated for service entrances into building. Install cleanout and extension to grade at connections of building sanitary drains with building sanitary sewers.

C. Extend building storm drain piping and connect to storm sewer piping in sizes and locations indicated for service entrances into building. Install cleanout and extension to grade at connections of building storm drains and building storm sewers.

D. Extend building storm drain, force-main piping and connect to storm sewer piping in size and location indicated for service entrance into building. Install cleanout, fitting with closure plug or equivalent, inside building.

E. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service entrance pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation

watertight. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals.

F. Install wall penetration system at each service entrance pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for wall penetration systems.

G. Install two way flexible transitions coupling where pipe penetrates soils. Soil conditions at this project are expansive.

## 3.5 DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

B. Make changes in direction for drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not make change in direction of flow greater than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if different sizes of piping are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

C. Lay buried building drain piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

D. Install drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Sanitary Building Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping 3-inch NPS and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping 4-inch NPS and larger.
2. Horizontal, Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
3. Storm Building Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow.
4. Horizontal, Storm Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
5. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

E. Install engineered, sanitary drainage and vent systems in locations indicated and as follows:

1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Cast-Iron, Sovent, Single Stack: Comply with ASSE 1043 and sovent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.

F. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slab on grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.

## 3.6 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for basic piping joint construction.

B. Cast-Iron, Soil-Piping Joints: Make joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

1. Compression Joints: Make with rubber gasket matching class of pipe and fittings.
2. Hubless Joints: Make with rubber gasket and sleeve or clamp.

## 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports" for pipe hanger and support devices. Install the following:

1. Riser clamps, MSS Type 8 or Type 42, for vertical runs.
2. Adjustable steel clevis hangers, MSS Type 1, for individual, straight, horizontal runs 100 feet and less.
3. Adjustable roller hangers, MSS Type 43, for individual, straight, horizontal runs longer than 100 feet.
4. Spring cushion rolls, MSS Type 49, if indicated, for individual, straight, horizontal runs longer than 100 feet.
5. Pipe rolls, MSS Type 44, for multiple, straight, horizontal runs 100 feet or longer. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
6. Spring hangers, MSS Type 52, for supporting base of vertical runs.

B. Install supports according to Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. 1-1/2- and 2-Inch NPS: Maximum horizontal spacing, 60 inches with 1/2-inch minimum rod diameter; maximum vertical spacing, 15 feet.
2. 3-Inch NPS: Maximum horizontal spacing, 60 inches with 5/8-inch minimum rod diameter; maximum vertical spacing, 15 feet.
3. 4- and 5-Inch NPS: Maximum horizontal spacing, 60 inches with 3/4-inch minimum rod diameter; maximum vertical spacing, 15 feet.
4. 6-Inch NPS: Maximum horizontal spacing, 60 inches with 3/4-inch minimum rod diameter; maximum vertical spacing, 15 feet.
5. 8- through 12-Inch NPS: Maximum horizontal spacing, 60 inches with 7/8-inch minimum rod diameter; maximum vertical spacing, 15 feet.
6. 15-Inch NPS: Maximum horizontal spacing, 60 inches with 1-inch minimum rod diameter; maximum vertical spacing, 15 feet.
7. Spacing for horizontal pipe in 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

F. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.8 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect service entrance piping to exterior sewerage and drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

B. Connect drainage piping to service entrance piping, and extend to and connect to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing Fixtures."
2. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties."
3. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections 2-1/2-inch NPS and larger.

## 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect drainage and vent piping as follows:

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

    a. Roughing-In Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    b. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Test drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedure, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
3. Roughing-In Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10 feet of head. Water level must not drop from 15 minutes before inspection starts through completion of inspection. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects using new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

## 3.10CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Clean interior of piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

END OF SECTION 15420

# SECTION 15425 - PLUMBING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes plumbing specialties for the following:

1. Water distribution systems.
2. Soil, waste, and vent systems.
3. Storm drainage systems.

### 1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide components and installation capable of producing piping systems with following minimum working-pressure ratings, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Water Distribution Piping: 125 psig.
2. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
3. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each plumbing specialty indicated. Include rated capacities of selected equipment and shipping, installed, and operating weights. Indicate materials, finishes, dimensions, required clearances, and methods of assembly of components; and piping and wiring connections for the following plumbing specialty products:

1. Backflow preventers.
2. Water regulators.
3. Balancing valves.
4. Strainers.
5. Thermostatic water mixing valves.
6. Water hammer arresters.
7. Cleanouts.
8. Vent caps, vent terminals, and roof flashing assemblies.
9. Grease interceptors and oil interceptors.
10. Sleeve penetration systems.

B. Reports: Specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.

C. Maintenance Data: For specialties to include in the maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Include the following:

1. Backflow preventers.
2. Water regulators.
3. Thermostatic water mixing valves.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, dimensional requirements, and characteristics of plumbing specialties and are based on the specific types and models indicated. Other manufacturers' products with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."

B. Provide listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking on plumbing specialties made to specified standards.

C. Listing and Labeling: Provide electrically operated plumbing specialties specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.

1. Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in National Electrical Code, Article 100.
2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.

D. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

E. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code," for electrical components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Backflow Preventers:

a. Ames Co., Inc.
b. B & K Industries, Inc.
c. Cla-Val Co.
d. CMB Industries; Febco Div.
e. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
f. FLOMATIC Corp.
g. Grinnell Corp.; Mueller Co. Marketing Group for Hersey Products Div.
h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
i. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.

2. Water Regulators:

a. Cla-Val Co.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
c. Spence Engineering Co., Inc.
d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

3. Calibrated Balancing Valves:

a. Amtrol, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.

c. Flow Design, Inc.
d. ITT Fluid Technology Corp.; ITT Bell & Gossett Div.
e. Taco, Inc.
f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

4. Thermostatic Water Mixing Valves:

a. Lawler Manufacturing Co., Inc.
b. Leonard Valve Co.
c. Mark Controls Corp.; Powers Process Controls.
d. Symmons Industries, Inc.
e. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.

5. Water Hammer Arresters:

a. Amtrol, Inc.
b. Enpoco, Inc.
c. Josam Co.
d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
f. Smith: Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
g. Sparco, Inc.
h. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
i. Watts Industries, Inc.; Ancon Drain Div.
j. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
k. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Hydromechanics Div.

6. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

a. Elmdor/Stoneman Manufacturing Co.

7. Sleeve Penetration Systems:

a. ProSet Systems, Inc.

## 2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. General: ASSE standard, backflow preventers, of size indicated for maximum flow rate and maximum pressure loss indicated.

1. 2-Inch NPS and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
2. 2-1/2-Inch NPS and Larger: Bronze, cast-iron, steel, or stainless-steel body with flanged ends.

a. Interior Lining: AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating for backflow preventers having cast-iron or steel body.

3. Interior Components: Corrosion-resistant materials.
4. Exterior Finish: Polished chrome-plate if used in chrome-plated piping system.
5. Strainer on inlet.

B. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001, with floating disc and atmospheric vent.

C. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011, nickel plated, with nonremovable and manual drain features, and ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads on outlet with permanently affixed chain and cap.. Units attached to rough-bronze-finish hose connections may be rough bronze.

D. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1012, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include inlet screen and 2 independent check valves with intermediate atmospheric vent.

E. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1013, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include outside screw and yoke gate valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet; test cocks; and pressure-differential relief valve with ASME A112.1.2 air-gap fitting located between 2 positive-seating check valves.

1. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle one-third of flow range.

F. Antisiphon-Pressure-Type Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1020, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include shutoff valves, spring-loaded check valve, spring-loaded floating disc, test cocks, and atmospheric vent.

1. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle one-third of flow range.

G. Dual-Check-Valve-Type Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1024, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include union inlet and 2 independent check valves.

H. Dual-Check-Valve-Type Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1032, suitable for continuous pressure application for carbonated beverage dispensers. Include stainless-steel body; primary and secondary checks; ball check; intermediate atmospheric-vent port for relieving carbon dioxide; and threaded ends, 3/8-inch NPS.

I. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1052, suitable for at least 3-gpm flow and applications with up to 10-foot head back pressure. Include 2 check valves; intermediate atmospheric vent; and nonremovable, ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose thread on outlet with permanently affixed chain and cap..

J. Back-Siphonage Backflow Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1056, suitable for continuous pressure and backflow applications. Include shutoff valves, check valve, test cocks, and vacuum vent.

## 2.3 WATER REGULATORS

A. General: ASSE 1003, water regulators, rated for initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum, of size, flow rate, and inlet and outlet pressures indicated. Include integral factory-installed or separate field-installed Y-pattern strainer.

1. 2-Inch NPS and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
2. 2-1/2-Inch NPS and Larger: Bronze or cast-iron body with flanged ends. Include AWWA C550 or FDA-approved interior epoxy coating for regulators with cast-iron body.
3. Interior Components: Corrosion-resistant materials.
4. Exterior Finish: Polished chrome-plate if used in chrome-plated piping system.

B. Single-seated, direct-operated type.

## 2.4 BALANCING VALVES

A. Calibrated Balancing Valves: Adjustable, with 2 readout ports and memory setting indicator. Include manufacturer's standard hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

1. 2-Inch NPS and Smaller: Bronze body with brass ball, adjustment knob, calibrated nameplate, and threaded or solder-joint ends.
2. 2-1/2-Inch NPS and Larger: Cast-iron, Y-pattern body with bronze disc and flanged or grooved ends.

## 2.5 THERMOSTATIC WATER MIXING VALVES

A. General: ASSE 1017, manually adjustable, thermostatic water mixing valve with bronze body. Include check stop and union on hot- and cold-water-supply inlets, adjustable temperature setting, and capacity at pressure loss as indicated.

1. Bimetal Thermostat, Operation and Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.

B. Thermostatic Water Mixing Valves: Unit, with the following:

1. Piping, of sizes and in arrangement indicated. Include valves and unions.
2. Piping Component Finish: Polished chrome-plate.
3. Cabinet: Stainless-steel box with stainless-steel hinged door.
4. Cabinet Mounting: Recessed.
5. Thermometer: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.6 STRAINERS

A. Strainers: Y-pattern, unless otherwise indicated, and full size of connecting piping. Include ASTM A 666, Type 304, stainless-steel screens with 3/64-inch round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Pressure Rating: 125-psig minimum steam working pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
2. 2-Inch NPS and Smaller: Bronze body, with female threaded ends.
3. 2-1/2-Inch NPS and Larger: Cast-iron body, with interior AWWA C550 or FDA-approved epoxy coating and flanged ends.
4. Y-Pattern Strainers: Screwed screen retainer with centered blowdown.
   a. Drain: Factory- or field-installed, hose-end drain valve with permanently affixed chain and cap.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Water Hammer Arresters: ASME A112.26.1M, ASSE 1010, or PDI-WH 201, bellows or piston type with pressurized cushioning chamber. Sizes are based on water-supply fixture units, ASME A112.26.1M sizes A through F and PDI-WH 201 sizes A through F.

B. Roof Flashing Assemblies: Manufactured assembly made of 4-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch- thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 8 inches from pipe with galvanized steel boot reinforcement, and counterflashing fitting.

1. Vent Cap: Open top, without cap.

## 2.8 SLEEVE PENETRATION SYSTEMS

A. Description: UL 1479, through-penetration firestop assembly consisting of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.

1. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
2. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48, cast-iron, hubless-pattern, wye-branch stack fitting with neoprene O-ring at base and cast-iron plug in thermal-release harness in branch. Include PVC protective cap for plug.

## 2.9 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Use: 4 lb/sq. ft. or 0.0625-inch thickness.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3 lb/sq. ft. or 0.0469-inch thickness.
3. Burning: 6 lb/sq. ft. or 0.0937-inch thickness.

B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft..
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft..

C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.

E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PLUMBING SPECIALTY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install plumbing specialty components, connections, and devices according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated, at each water-supply connection to mechanical equipment and systems, and to other equipment and water systems as indicated. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment. Install air-gap fitting on units with atmospheric-vent connection and pipe relief outlet drain to nearest floor drain. Do not install bypass around backflow preventer.

C. Install pressure regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and balance valve bypass. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

D. Install strainers on supply side of each control valve, pressure regulator, and solenoid valve, and where indicated.

E. Install hose bibbs with integral or field-installed vacuum breaker.

F. Install wall hydrants with integral or field-installed vacuum breaker.

G. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping as indicated, and where not indicated, according to the following:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to 4-inch NPS. Use 4-inch NPS for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping 4-inch NPS and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

H. Install cleanout deck plates, of types indicated, with top flush with finished floor, for floor cleanouts for piping below floors.

I. Install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall, for cleanouts located in concealed piping.

J. Install flashing flange and clamping device with each stack and cleanout passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

K. Install vent flashing sleeves on stacks passing through roof. Secure over stack flashing according to manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor or as indicated. Size outlets as indicated.

M. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:

1. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
2. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to one percent slope.
3. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.

N. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

O. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.

P. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.

Q. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Size outlets as indicated.

R. Install roof-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.

S. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.

T. Install interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.

U. Fasten wall-hanging plumbing specialties securely to supports attached to building substrate if supports are specified and to building wall construction if no support is indicated.

V. Fasten recessed, wall-mounting plumbing specialties to reinforcement built into walls.

W. Secure supplies to supports or substrate.

X. Install individual stop valve in each water supply to plumbing specialties. Use ball, gate, or globe valve if specific valve is not indicated.

Y. Install water-supply stop valves in accessible locations.

Z. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

AA. Locate drainage piping as close as possible to bottom of floor slab supporting fixtures and drains.

BB. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

CC. Include steel backing for recessed and wall-mounting plumbing specialties.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. The following are specific connection requirements:

1. Install piping connections between plumbing specialties and piping specified in other Division 15 Sections.
2. Install piping connections indicated between appliances and equipment specified in other Sections; connect directly to plumbing piping systems.
3. Install piping connections indicated as indirect wastes from appliances and equipment specified in other Sections, to spill over receptors connected to plumbing piping systems.

B. Install hoses between plumbing specialties and appliances as required for connections.

C. Arrange for electric-power connections to plumbing specialties and devices that require power. Electric power is specified in Division 16 Sections.

D. Supply Runouts to Plumbing Specialties: Install hot- and cold-water-supply piping of sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Drainage Runouts to Plumbing Specialties: Install drainage and vent piping, with approved trap, of sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Ground electric-powered plumbing specialties.

1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

G. Arrange for electric-power connections to plumbing specialties and devices that require power. Electric power, wiring, and disconnect switches are specified in Division 16 Sections.

## 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing manufactured from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.

B. Burn joints of lead sheets where required.

C. Solder joints of copper sheets where required.

D. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.

E. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

F. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

G. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

H. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

I. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes as required. Install drain connection as required.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Provide services of factory-authorized service representative to supervise the field assembly of components and installation of grease recovery units, including piping and electrical connections, and to report results in writing.

1. Test and adjust plumbing specialty controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and components.

## 3.5 COMMISSIONING

A. Before startup, perform the following checks:

1. System tests are complete.
2. Damaged and defective specialties and accessories have been replaced or repaired.
3. Clear space is provided for servicing specialties.

B. Before operating systems, perform the following steps:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open general-duty valves to fully open position.
3. Remove and clean strainers.
4. Verify that drainage and vent piping are clear of obstructions. Flush with water until clear.

C. Startup Procedures: Follow manufacturer's written instructions. If no procedures are prescribed by manufacturer, proceed as follows:

1. Energize circuits for electrically operated units. Start and run units through complete sequence of operations.

D. Adjust operation and correct deficiencies discovered during commissioning.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Startup Services: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup services and train Owner's maintenance personnel as specified below:

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup of and servicing interceptors.
2. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup of and servicing grease recovery units.
3. Review data in the maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
4. Review data in the maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
5. Schedule training with Owner with at least 7 days' advance notice.

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 15425

# SECTION 15440 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL:

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. All pertinent sections of Division 15, Mechanical General Requirements are a part of the work described in this section. Division 1 is a part of this and all other sections of these specifications.

### 1.2 SCOPE OF WORK:

A. This work shall include all plumbing fixtures, fixture trim specialties, drains, etc., required for the complete plumbing system.

B. All electrical wiring not specified in other sections but required for a complete operation system, shall be work of this section.

### 1.3 RELATED WORK:

A. Concrete equipment bases for this work are included in Division 3, Concrete. Final adjustment or installation of lead pans and drain flashings on roof is included in Division 7, Roofing.

### 1.4 CODES AND STANDARDS:

A. All work included in the scope of this specification shall conform to the latest adopted versions of applicable codes and standards, including the following:

International Plumbing Code, 2006 (IPC)

International Building Code, 2006.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.

1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities" Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; about plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.

D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS), 1985-494-187" about plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.

E. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.

F. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.

G. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.

H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:

1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
2. Hand Sinks: NSF 2 construction.
3. Plastic Shower Enclosures: ANSI Z124.2.
4. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
5. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.
6. Stainless-Steel Fixtures Other Than Service Sinks: ASME A112.19.3M.
7. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
8. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
9. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.

I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:

1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
4. Faucet Hose: ASTM D 3901.
5. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1M.
6. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
7. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
8. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
9. NSF Materials: NSF 61.
10. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
11. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
12. Supply and Drain Fittings: ASME A112.18.1M.

J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for bathtub and shower faucets:

1. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
2. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
3. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1M.
4. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
5. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
7. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
8. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
9. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
11. Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.

K. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:

1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.

2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1M.
3. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
4. Plastic Tubular Fittings and Piping: ASTM F 409.
5. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
6. Tubular Brass Drainage Fittings and Piping: ASME A112.18.1M.

L. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:

1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
2. Floor Drains: ASME A112.21.1M.
3. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
4. Hot-Water Dispensers: ASSE 1023 and UL 499.
5. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
6. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
7. Plastic Shower Receptors: ANSI Z124.2.
8. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
10. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 SUBMITTALS:

A. Submit product data in accordance with Division 1 and Section 15050. Submit the following:

Plumbing Fixtures and Accessories

1.7 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

A. Connections to Equipment:

1. The Plumbing Contractor shall rough in all utility lines to the cabinets, tables, hoods, and terminate utilities with shutoff valve and waste and vent lines with caps. All such rough-ins shall be labeled. Plumbing contractor shall supply all stops and supply tubing, as well as P-traps to complete the installation. Final connections to be by the Plumbing Contractor.

2. The cabinet supplier shall provide complete roughing in drawings showing the exact location of all stub-ups in floors and walls. It shall be the responsibility of the Plumbing Contractor to install all sleeves through walls and floors and to make all final connections. Piping through floors shall be sleeved, caulked, and flashed water tight to prevent leakage should a leak occur.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate roughing-in and final plumbing fixture locations, and verify that fixtures can be installed to comply with original design and referenced standards.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
3. Faucet, Laminar-Flow Fittings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed, but not less than 2 of each type and size.
4. Faucet, Flow-Control Fittings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
5. Supply, Flow-Control Fittings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
6. Shower, Flow-Control Fittings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
7. Flushometer Valve, Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but not less than 12 of each type.
8. Flushometer Tank, Repair Kits: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but not less than 2 of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS:

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. List of manufacturers and their products or manufacturers only, the following requirements apply for product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the products specified in other Part 2 articles.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified in other Part 2 articles.
3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified in other Part 2 articles.
4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified in other Part 2 articles.

### 2.2 PLUMBING FIXTURES:

A. This Contractor shall furnish and install all fixtures shown on the drawings or specified hereinafter, shall make all parts complete, and shall leave the entire system in perfect working order. He shall clean and adjust all fixtures before leaving the job. Any damaged or cracked fixtures shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense.

B. The fixtures shall be all new and complete as shown or described in catalog or as required for the work. The fixtures shall include accessible loose key compression stops above the floor in supplies to all fixtures and cast brass P-traps unless otherwise shown. Trim for all fixtures shall be chrome plated and all trim shall match in design. All exposed piping in occupied spaces shall be chrome plated. Supply faucets shall have renewable seats and barrels.

C. Fixtures shall be the water-saver type with maximum usage of 1.6 gallons per flush for water closets, 2.5 gallons per minute for showers and 1.5 gallons per minute for lavatories.

D. All spouts, including gooseneck type, must have a union type connection on the inlet and must be readily convertible from rigid to swing or swing to rigid without disturbing the faucet or fitting body.

E. Faucet operating handles must be interchangeable, replaceable seat.

F. Faucets shall be Chicago Faucets, T & S Brass, Sloan, Speakman, Symmons, or Zurn.

G. Loose key stops shall be provided in all water lines to individual sinks, roughed-in locations, etc., as part of the plumbing contract. All fixtures shall be caulked to the floor or a wall with water-resistant white butyl rubber caulking compound.

H. All parts or surfaces of plumbing items connected to the acid drainage added to original systems shall be acid resistant. All parts of floor drains connecting to the acid drainage system shall be acid resistant. Acid resistant P-traps shall be polypropylene by Enfield, R&G Sloan, Orian.

I. Fixtures shall be Kohler, American-Standard, or an approved equivalent.

J. Carriers shall be Zurn, Josam, J.R. Smith, Wade, Mifab, or Watts.

K. Flush valves shall have a nonhold-open feature with backcheck stop and a vacuum breaker, shall be diaphragm type with effective inside diameter of 2-5/8-inches, shall be water conservation type with nominal 1.6-gallon flush and shall be Sloan, Delaney or Zurn.

L. Toilet seat manufacturers shall be Beneke, Church, Lustra, Stasco, Olsenite, or Bemis.

M. Chair-carriers with floor supports and hangers shall be provided for all wall mounted fixtures. Carrier and wall hydrant manufacturers shall be J.R. Smith, Zurn, Wade, Mifab, Josam or Watts.

N. Stainless-steel sink manufacturers shall be 18 gauge, Just, Elkay or Advanced Tabco.

O. Electric Water Cooler manufacturers shall be Elkay, Halsey Taylor, Haws, Oasis or Sunroc.

P. Pressure balance mixing valves piston operated shall be Leonard, Symmons, Chicago Faucets.

Q. Thermostatic mixing valves shall be Leonard, Symmons, Powers, or Watts All thermostatic mixing valves shall have an additional set of double check valves on hot and cold supply lines.

R. Water closets shall be the height specified on the Architectural drawings. Water closets shall be supported on floor mounted, horizontal or vertical carrier.

S. Supplies and stops shall be Frost, Brasscraft, Kohler, Robert Mfr. or approved equal. P-traps shall be Frost, Kohler, Watts Brass and Tubular, McGuire, EBC or approved equal.

T. Grid strainers shall be Chicago Faucets, T & S Brass, Kohler, American Standard, Symmons.

U. Electric water coolers shall be the height specified on the Architectural drawings. Coolers shall be hung on an integral mounting frame and receptor hanger furnished with the fountain. Carrier for wall mounted water cooler shall be Smith, Zurn, Wade, Josam, Mifab, or Watts.

V. Lavatories shall be the height specified on the Architectural drawings. Lavatories shall be supported on Smith, Zurn, Wade, Josam, Mifab, or Watts Carriers.

W. Floor drains and floor sinks shall be furnished with clamping collars where a waterproof membrane is provided. Membranes will be required for all drains installed above occupied spaces. See architectural drawings for additional locations of membranes. Use 40 mil pvc liner or 4# lead.

X. Lavatory tempered water mixing valve box shown on drawings. Leonard, Symmons, Bradley or Acorn cabinet assembly, steel, baked white enamel, recessed.

AA. Faucets with single lever handles shall be Chicago Faucets, Kohler, American Standard, Symmons.

BB. Emergency Drench Shower/Eye wash, shall be Bradley, Encon, Chicago Faucets, Gaurdian, Haws.

CC. Drains shall be J.R. Smith, Zurn, Wade, Josam, Mifab or Watts.

DD. ADA Compliant p-trap & supply covers, McGuire, EBC, Buckeroo, Tuebro.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FIXTURE SCHEDULE (see Schedules on the drawings).

END OF SECTION 15440

# SECTION 15445 - WATER DISTRIBUTION PUMPS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes pumps for the building potable-water systems.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 15 Section "HVAC Pumps" for hydronic system pumps.
2. Division 16 Sections for power-supply wiring, field-installed disconnects, electrical devices, and motor controllers.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities of selected models; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories for each type and size of pump specified. Indicate pumps' operating point on curves.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain same type of pumps through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, connections, and dimensional requirements of pumps and are based on specific manufacturer types and models indicated. Other manufacturers' pumps with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Compact Circulators:

   a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   b. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
   c. ITT Fluid Technology Corp.; ITT Bell & Gossett Div.
   d. Taco, Inc.

2. In-Line Circulators:

   a. Amtrol, Inc.
   b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   c. Crane Pumps & Systems, Inc.; Weinman Div.
   d. ITT Fluid Technology Corp.; ITT Bell & Gossett Div.
   e. Taco, Inc.

## 2.2 PUMPS, GENERAL

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, single-stage, centrifugal pump units; complying with UL 778; suitable for potable-water service; with all-bronze or stainless-steel construction and components in contact with water made of corrosion-resistant materials.

B. Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Motors" with built-in thermal-overload protection appropriate for motor size and duty.

C. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded. Pumps available only with flanged ends may be furnished with threaded companion flanges.

D. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested units before shipping.

F. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles.

## 2.3 COMPACT CIRCULATORS

A. Description: Horizontal, in-line, replaceable-cartridge-design circulator; rated for 125-psig minimum working pressure and minimum continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

1. Pump and Motor Assembly: On common shaft in hermetically sealed unit without stuffing box or mechanical seal, and with manufacturer's standard cooling and lubrication system.
2. Impeller: Corrosion-resistant material.
3. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 IN-LINE CIRCULATORS

A. Description: Horizontal in-line circulator, rated for 125-psig minimum working pressure and minimum continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

1. Construction: Radially split, all-bronze casing.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 36/B 36M, rolled brass; or ASTM B 584, cast bronze; overhung, single suction, and keyed to shaft.
3. Seal: Mechanical.

4. Shaft and Sleeve: Steel shaft, with oil-lubricated copper sleeve.
5. Pump Bearings: Oil-lubricated, bronze-journal or thrust type.
6. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
7. Motor: Single speed, with oil-lubricated bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and resiliently mounted to pump casing.

    a. Motor Size: For motors larger than 1/2 hp, select motor size that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.

## 2.5 HORIZONTAL IN-LINE PUMPS

A. Description: Horizontal, in-line, separately coupled pump; rated for 175-psig minimum working pressure and minimum continuous water temperature of 225 deg F; and complying with HI 1.1-1.5 for in-line centrifugal pumps.

1. Construction: Radially split, all-bronze casing.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, closed, overhung, single suction, and keyed to shaft.
3. Shaft and Sleeve: Steel shaft, with oil-lubricated copper sleeve.
4. Shaft and Sleeve: Stainless-steel shaft, with oil-lubricated copper sleeve.
5. Mechanical Seal: Carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
6. Pump Bearings: Oil-lubricated, bronze-journal or ball type.
7. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
8. Motor: Energy-efficient design; single speed, with built-in thermal-overload protection; grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently mounted to pump casing.

    a. Motor Size: For motors larger than 1/2 hp, select motor size that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.

## 2.6 VERTICAL IN-LINE PUMPS

A. Description: Vertical, in-line, separately coupled pump; rated for 175-psig minimum working pressure and minimum continuous water temperature of 225 deg F; and complying with HI 1.1-1.5 for in-line centrifugal pumps.

1. Construction: Radially split, all-bronze casing.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, closed, overhung, single suction, and keyed to shaft.
3. Shaft and Sleeve: Steel shaft, with oil-lubricated copper sleeve.
4. Shaft and Sleeve: Stainless-steel shaft, with oil-lubricated copper sleeve.
5. Mechanical Seal: Carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
6. Pump Bearings: Oil-lubricated, bronze-journal or ball type.
7. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
8. Motor: Energy-efficient design; single speed, with built-in thermal-overload protection; grease-lubricated ball bearings; and directly mounted to pump casing.

    a. Motor Size: For motors larger than 1/2 hp, select motor size that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
    b. Lifting and Supporting Lug: Directly mounted in top of motor enclosure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water distribution piping to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install pumps according to manufacturer's written instructions and with access for periodic maintenance, including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

B. Support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps.

C. Suspend horizontal in-line pumps independent of piping. Use continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation hangers of sufficient size to support pump weight. Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Refer to Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports" for materials.

D. Suspend vertical in-line pumps independent of piping. Use continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation hangers of sufficient size to support pump weight. Refer to Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports" for materials.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties. The following are specific connection requirements:

1. Connect water distribution piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge pipe equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles. Refer to Division 15 Section "Water Distribution Piping."
2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of pumps, and check valve and throttling valve on discharge side of pumps. Install valves same size as connected piping. Refer to Division 15 Section "Valves" for general-duty valves and Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for strainers.

B. Electrical wiring and connections are specified in Division 16 Sections.

C. Ground equipment.

1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 COMMISSIONING

A. Check suction piping connections for tightness.

B. Clean strainers on suction piping.

C. Controls: Set for automatic starting and stopping operation.

D. Final Checks before Starting: Perform the following preventive maintenance operations:

1. Lubricate oil-lubricated-type bearings.
2. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquids is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. Do not operate pump if it is bound or drags, until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
3. Verify that pump controls are correct for required application.

E. Starting procedure for pumps is as follows:

1. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
2. Open circulating line valve if pump should not be operated against dead shutoff.
3. Start motor.
4. Open discharge valve slowly.
5. Check general mechanical operation of pump and motor.
6. Close circulating line valve once there is sufficient flow through pump to prevent overheating.

## 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain pumps as specified below:

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining pumps.
2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section Contract Closeout.
3. Schedule training with Owner, through architect, with at least seven day's advance notice.

END OF SECTION 15445

# SECTION 15486 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
   2. Thermostat-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
   3. Domestic-water heater accessories.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Commercial domestic-water heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 subparagraph below to define the term "withstand" as it applies to this Project. Definition varies with type of building and occupancy and is critical to valid certification. Option is used for essential facilities where equipment must operate immediately after an earthquake.

   1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

   1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For commercial domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial, electric, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.

C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

## 1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
   b. Faulty operation of controls.
   c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

   a. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

      1) Storage Tank: Five years.
      2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.

   b. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters: Five year(s).
   c. Compression Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, domestic-WATER HEATERS

A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. American Water Heaters.
   b. Bradford White Corporation.
   c. Lochinvar Corporation.
   d. PVI Industries, LLC.
   e. RECO USA.
   f. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
   g. State Industries.

2. Standard: UL 1453.
3. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.

   a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.

      1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

   b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
   c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
   d. Lining: Glass.

4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:

   a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
   b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
   c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
   d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
   f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.

g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

5. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.

2.2 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL Inc.
b. Honeywell International Inc.
c. Pentair Pump Group (The); Myers.
d. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
e. State Industries.
f. Taco, Inc.

2. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:

a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

4. Capacity and Characteristics: see drawings.

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.

D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

E. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and calibrated balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.

1. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Division 15 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASSE 1003 for water. Set at 25-psig- maximum outlet pressure unless otherwise indicated.

G. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

H. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.

I. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.

J. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

K. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.

L. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.

C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Division 01 Section "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Division 03 Section ".

1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.

5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

B. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters at least 18 inches above floor on wall bracket.

1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

C. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters with seismic-restraint devices. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

F. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

G. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

H. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

I. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of residential, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

J. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple electric, domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each electric, domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and

throttling valve in each electric, domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

K. Install pressure-reducing valve with integral bypass relief valve in electric, domestic-water booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping. Set pressure-reducing valve for outlet pressure of 25 psig. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves and water hammer arresters specified in Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

L. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.

M. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.

N. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 15 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Division 01 Section "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 15486

**SECTION 15510 - HYDRONIC PIPING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes piping, special-duty valves, and hydronic specialties for hot-water heating, heat pump; makeup water for these systems; blowdown drain lines; and condensate drain piping.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of special-duty valve indicated. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for diverting fittings, calibrated balancing valves, and automatic flow-control valves.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, special pipe support assemblies, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and their attachment to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

C. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

D. Field Test Reports: Written reports of tests specified in Part 3 of this Section. Include the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Failed test results and corrective action taken to achieve requirements.

E. Maintenance Data: For hydronic specialties and special-duty valves to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of hydronic piping and suspension system components with other construction, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

B. Coordinate pipe sleeve installations for foundation wall penetrations.

C. Coordinate piping installation with roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. Roof specialties are specified in Division 7 Sections.

D. Coordinate pipe fitting pressure classes with products specified in related Sections.

E. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into base. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3 Sections.

F. Coordinate installation of pipe sleeves for penetrations through exterior walls and floor assemblies. Coordinate with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for fire and smoke wall and floor assemblies.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Water Treatment Chemicals: Furnish sufficient chemicals for initial system startup and for preventive maintenance for one year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:

   a. Gruvlok Corporation.
   b. Tyco-Grinnell
   c. Victaulic Company of America.

2. Calibrated Balancing Valves:

   a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   b. Flow Design, Inc.
   c. Gerand Engineering Company.
   d. Griswold Controls.
   e. ITT Bell & Gossett; ITT Fluid Technology Corp.
   f. Taco, Inc.
   g. Tyco-Grinnell

3. Pressure-Reducing Valves:

   a. Amtrol, Inc.
   b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   c. ITT Bell & Gossett; ITT Fluid Technology Corp.

d. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Watts Regulators.

4. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

a. Flow Design, Inc.
b. Griswold Controls.

5. Air Vents (automatic):

a. Armstrong Machine Works.
b. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
c. Hoffman Specialty ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
d. Spirax Sarco.
e. Honeywell-Baukman.

6. Air Separators:

a. Armtrol, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
d. Taco, Inc.

7. Compression Tanks:

a. Armtrol, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
d. Taco, Inc.

8. Diaphragm-Type Compression Tanks:

a. Armtrol, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
d. Taco, Inc.

9. Pump Suction Diffusers:

a. Armtrol, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
d. Taco, Inc.
e. Tyco-Grinnell
f. Victaulic Company of America

10. Diverting Fittings:

a. Armtrol, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett ITT; Fluid Handling Div.
d. Taco, Inc.

11. Y-Pattern Strainers:

a. Armstrong Machine Works.
b. Hoffman Specialty ITT; Fluid Handling Div
c. Metraflex Co.
d. Spirax Sarco
e. Trane Co.
f. Tyco-Grinnell
g. Victaulic Co. of America
h. Watts Regulator Co.

12. Flexible Connectors:

a. Amber-Booth
b. Mason Industries
c. Metraflex Co.

## 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

A. General: Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe and fitting materials.

## 2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L

## 2.4 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe, NPS 2) and Smaller: ASTM A 53, Type S (seamless) or F, Grade B, Schedule 40, black steel, plain ends.

B. Steel Pipe, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12): ASTM A 53, Type E (electric-resistance welded), Grade B, Schedule 40, black steel, plain ends.

C. Steel Pipe, NPS 14 through NPS 18): ASTM A 53, Type E (electric-resistance welded) or Type S (seamless), Grade B, Schedule 30, black steel, plain ends.

D. Steel Pipe, NPS 20: ASTM A 53, Type E (electric-resistance welded) or Type S (seamless), Grade B, Schedule 30, black steel, plain ends.

1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53, Schedule 40, black steel; seamless for NPS 2) and smaller and electric-resistance welded for NPS 2-1/2) and larger.

E. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250.

F. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300.

G. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300.

H. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced.

I. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

J. Flanges and fittings below are available in several classes, materials, facings, and end connections. Coordinate with Project requirements.

K. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

L. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47), Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders designed to accept grooved end couplings.

M. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

N. Combinations of grooved mechanical-joint couplings and short nipples may also be used. Refer to Victaulic Company of America's technical information.

O. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors: Fiber-reinforced rubber body with steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges; operating temperatures up to 250 deg F) and pressures up to 150 psig).

P. Welding Materials: Comply with Section II, Part C, of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and for chemical analysis of pipe being welded.

Q. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled; and design temperatures and pressures.

## 2.5 VALVES

A. Globe, check, ball, and butterfly valves are specified in Division 15 Section "Valves."

B. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of each valve.

C. Calibrated Balancing Valves, NPS 2) and Smaller: Bronze body, ball type, 125-psig) working pressure, 250 deg F) maximum operating temperature, and having threaded ends. Valves shall have calibrated orifice or venturi, connections for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, and be equipped with a memory stop to retain set position.

D. Calibrated Balancing Valves, NPS 2-1/2) and Larger: Cast-iron or steel body, ball type, 125-psig) working pressure, 250 deg F) maximum operating temperature, and having flanged or grooved connections. Valves shall have calibrated orifice or venturi, connections for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, and be equipped with a memory stop to retain set position.

E. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Diaphragm-operated, bronze or brass body with low inlet pressure check valve, inlet strainer removable without system shutdown, and noncorrosive valve seat and stem. Select valve size, capacity, and operating pressure to suit system. Valve shall be factory set at operating pressure and have capability for field adjustment.

F. Automatic Flow-Control Valves: Gray-iron body, factory set to maintain constant flow with plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations, and equipped with a readout kit including flow

meter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case. Each valve shall have an identification tag attached by chain, and be factory marked with the zone identification, valve number, and flow rate. Valve shall be line size and one of the following designs:

1. Gray-iron or brass body, designed for 175 psig) at 200 deg F) with stainless-steel piston and spring.
2. Brass or ferrous-metal body, designed for 300 psig) at 250 deg F) with corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning, piston-spring assembly easily removable for inspection or replacement.
3. Combination assemblies, including bronze ball valve and brass alloy control valve, with stainless-steel piston and spring, fitted with pressure and temperature test valves, and designed for 300 psig) at 250 deg F).

## 2.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES

A. Manual Air Vent: Bronze body and nonferrous internal parts; 150-psig) working pressure; 225 deg F) operating temperature; manually operated with ball valve in the down position) discharge connection and NPS 1/2) inlet connection.

B. Automatic Air Vent: Designed to vent automatically with float principle; bronze body and nonferrous internal parts; 150-psig) working pressure; 240 deg F) operating temperature; with NPS 1/4) discharge connection and NPS 1/2) inlet connection.

C. Expansion Tanks: Welded carbon steel, rated for 125-psig) working pressure and 240 deg F) maximum operating temperature. Separate air charge from system water to maintain design expansion capacity by a flexible diaphragm securely sealed into tank. Include drain fitting and taps for pressure gage and air-charging fitting. Support vertical tanks with steel legs or base; support horizontal tanks with steel saddles. Factory fabricate and test tank with taps and supports installed and labeled according to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1.

D. Tangential-Type Air Separators: Welded black steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig) minimum working pressure and 240 deg F) maximum operating temperature; perforated stainless-steel air collector tube designed to direct released air into expansion tank; tangential inlet and outlet connections; threaded connections for NPS 2) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2) and larger; threaded blowdown connection. Provide units in sizes for full-system flow capacity.

E. In-Line Air Separators: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir designed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation at a working pressure up to 150 psig) and liquid temperature up to 240 deg F).

F. Diverting Fittings: 125-psig) working pressure; 250 deg F) maximum operating temperature; cast-iron body with threaded ends, or wrought copper with soldered ends. Indicate flow direction on fitting.

G. Y-Pattern Strainers: 125-psig) working pressure; cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B), flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2) and larger, threaded connections for NPS 2) and smaller, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection.

H. Combinations of grooved mechanical-joint couplings and short nipples may also be used. Refer to Victaulic Company of America's technical information.

I. Flexible Connectors: Shall be Spherical Rubber flexible connectors. The body shall be Fiber-reinforced rubber body. The end connections shall be steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges. The CWR Rating shall be 150 Psig. The maximum operating temperature shall be 250 deg f.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Hydronic heating & heat pump piping, NPS 2) and Smaller: Aboveground, use Type L) drawn-temper copper tubing with soldered joints or Schedule 40 steel pipe with threaded joints. Belowground or within slabs, use Type K) annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints belowground and within floor slabs. Provide dielectric fittings at junctions of copper & steel piping.

B. Hydronic heating & heat pump NPS 2-1/2 to 8": Schedule 40 steel pipe with welded and flanged joints or grooved mechanical-joint couplings.

C. Condensate Drain Lines: Type L drawn-temper copper tubing with soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. General-Duty Valve Applications: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following valve types:

1. Shutoff Duty: Ball, and butterfly valves.
2. Throttling Duty: Globe, ball, and butterfly valves.

B. Install shutoff duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, at supply connection to each piece of equipment, unless only one piece of equipment is connected in the branch line. Install throttling duty valves at each branch connection to return mains, at return connections to each piece of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

C. Install calibrated balancing valves in the return water line of each heating or cooling element and elsewhere as required to facilitate system balancing.

D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

E. Install safety valves on hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install safety-valve discharge piping, without valves, to floor. Comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

F. Install pressure-reducing valves on hot-water generators and elsewhere as required to regulate system pressure.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for basic piping installation requirements.

B. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

C. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

D. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

E. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the takeoff coming out the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, install the takeoff coming out the top of the main pipe.

G. Install strainers on supply side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4) nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2).

H. Anchor piping for proper direction of expansion and contraction.

I. Install unions in pipes 2-inch NPS and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connections of each piece of equipment, at each coil on all sides of automatic valves where valves do not have union connections, elsewhere as indicated and wherever necessary to prevent undue difficulty in making repairs or replacement. Unions are not required at flanged connections.

J. Install flanges on valves, apparatus, and equipment having 2-1/2-inch NPS and larger connections.

K. Install flexible connectors at inlet and discharge connections to pumps (except in-line pumps) and other vibration-producing equipment.

L. Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

M. No piping shall be run above any electrical panels, electrical equipment, or access clearances for electrical panels or equipment. No piping shall be run through any electrical rooms.

N. Provide valving for complete drainage of system.

O. All piping systems shall be installed so that they can be easily drained by means of drainage of low points of all piping without disconnecting pipe. If not specifically indicated on the drawings, the frequency of draining shall determine whether drain caps, plugs, cocks, or valves are to be used.

All installed pipe lines shall be straight, free from dents, scars, and burrs, with ends reamed smooth, and shall remain straight against strains tending to cause distortion during system operation. The Contractor shall make proper allowance for pipe line expansion and contraction so that no unsightly distortion, noise, damage, or improper operation results therefrom.

Piping shall run only parallel or at right angles to the walls or axes of the building and shall be neatly organized. The Contractor shall study the architectural, structural, mechanical, electrical, and other drawings to eliminate conflict of piping with other structure lighting or other services. Unless specified otherwise, no piping shall be exposed in a finished room, except in shop or storage areas. All changes in direction shall be made with fittings.

No piping shall be run above any electrical panels, electrical equipment or access clearances for electrical for electrical panels or equipment. No piping shall be allowed to run through any electrical rooms.

All piping shall be clean and free from acids and loose dirt when installed and shall be kept clean during the completion of the installation.

Plugs of rags, wools, cottons, waste, or similar materials may not be used in plugging. All piping shall be so arranged to not interfere with removal of other equipment or devices; and to not block access to manholes, access openings, etc. Piping shall be arranged to facilitate equipment maintenance. Flanges or unions, as applicable for the type of piping specified, shall be provided in the piping at connections to all items of equipment. Piping shall be placed and installed so that there will be no interference with the installation of the air-conditioning equipment, ducts, etc. All piping shall be so installed to insure noiseless circulation. All valves and specialties shall be so placed to permit easy operation and access, and all valves shall be regulated and packed, and the glands shall be adjusted at the completion of the work and before final acceptance. All piping shall be erected to insure proper draining. Cooling and heating piping mains may be run level, with traps avoided where possible. No bushings, short nipples, or street-type fittings shall be used.

Drain valves shall be installed at all low points in all piping systems to allow for complete drainage of piping systems.

When insulated pipes are supported by a roller hanger they shall be protected from damage by suitable pipe covering protection saddles. Saddles shall support pipe on roller and shall be packed with insulation.

## 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports." Comply with requirements below for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet) long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet) or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following minimum rod sizes and maximum spacing:

| Pipe Size | Rod Diameter | Maximum Spacing |
|---|---|---|
| 1 1/4 in. and smaller | ½ in. | 6 ft |
| 1-1/2 in. and 2 in. | ½ in. | 9 ft. |
| 2-1/2 in. and 2 in. | 5/8 in. | 10 ft. |
| 4 in. and 6 in. | 3/4 in. | 10 ft. |
| 8 in. and 10 in. | 7/8 in. | 10 ft. |
| 12 in. and 14 in | 1 in. | 10 ft. |
| 16 in. through 24 in. | (2)-1in | 10 ft. |

In addition to the spacing listed, an additional hanger shall be provided 1 foot 0 inches from each pipe drop, rise or turn.

D. Support vertical runs at each floor.

Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

## 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for joint construction requirements for soldered and brazed joints in copper tubing; threaded, welded, and flanged joints in steel piping; and solvent-welded joints for PVC and CPVC piping.

## 3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Automatic air vents may cause damage to ceilings and other finished surfaces. Air vents aid in system filling. Air removal after initial startup is accomplished by air separator or boiler dip-tube. Manual air vents may be a better solution.

## 3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Size for supply and return piping connections shall be same as for equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If multiple, parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure and temperature gages at coil inlet connections.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush system with clean water. Clean strainers.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release trapped air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of liquid.
3. Check expansion tanks to determine that they are not air bound and that system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does

not exceed either 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A of ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."

5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

## 3.9 ADJUSTING

A. Mark calibrated nameplates of pump discharge valves after hydronic system balancing has been completed, to permanently indicate final balanced position.

B. Perform these adjustments before operating the system:

1. Open valves to fully open position. Close coil bypass valves.
2. Check pump for proper direction of rotation.
3. Set automatic fill valves for required system pressure.
4. Check air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Check operation of automatic bypass valves.
7. Check and set operating temperatures of boilers to design requirements.
8. Lubricate motors and bearings.

## 3.10 CLEANING

A. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water. Remove and clean or replace strainer screens. After cleaning and flushing hydronic piping systems, but before balancing, remove disposable fine-mesh strainers in pump suction diffusers.

## 3.11 COMMISSIONING

A. Fill system and perform initial chemical treatment.

B. Check expansion tanks to determine that they are not air bound and that system is completely full of water.

C. Perform these steps before operating the system:

1. Open valves to fully open position. Close coil bypass valves.
2. Check pump for proper direction of rotation.
3. Set automatic fill valves for required system pressure.
4. Check air vents at high points of systems and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type) or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Check operation of automatic bypass valves.
7. Check and set operating temperatures of boilers, and cooling towers to design requirements.
8. Lubricate motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 15510

## SECTION 15545 - CHEMICAL WATER TREATMENT

### PART 1 -GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division I Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes water-treatment systems for the following:

1. Heating & Cooling System.
2. Fluid Cooler.
3. Methanol Solution

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Supplier Qualifications: A recognized chemical water treatment supplier with warehousing facilities in the Project's vicinity and that is or employs an experienced consultant, available at reasonable times during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about water treatment.

B. Chemical Standards: Meet state and local pollution-control regulations.

C. Comply with NFPA 70 for components and installation.

D. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.

1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the National Electrical Code, Article 100.

2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for each type of product specified. Include manufacturer's technical product data, rated capacities of selected equipment clearly indicated, water-pressure drops, weights (shipping, installed, and operating), furnished specialties, accessories, and installation and startup instructions.

C. Shop drawings from manufacturer detailing equipment assemblies and indicating dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Chemical Water Treatment Products:

a. WEST, Inc.
b. Power Engineering Co.

2.2 WATER TREATMENT

A complete water treatment system shall be provided under these plans and specifications. The mechanical contractor is responsible for all costs. The chemical supplier shall supply field supervision for the pre-startup flushing and cleaning of all equipment and field supervision for the installation of feeders and equipment. The Contractor shall install or arrange to have installed all required chemical feeding equipment, including blowdown and bleed-off systems and all necessary piping, valves, fittings, controls, control wiring, motors, and starters.

The Contractor shall retain the Water Treatment Service Organization (chemical supplier) during the first year from startup of the chemical feed equipment.

The Water Treatment Service Organization to be so retained shall do the following:

Recommend and provide treatment procedures, chemicals, chemical feeding equipment, and a chemical analysis of a representative sample of the water supply. For all systems indicated, fluid cooler, heat pump (Heating & Cooling).

Furnish instructions for the handling, usage, storage, and procurement of all chemicals to Owner's operating personnel to insure continuation of proper water treatment methods and controls.

All applicable water analyses to be conducted on the Owner's premises at the time of each service call, with a written report of the findings to be left with the Owner and a copy of such report to be forwarded to the Consulting Engineer.

Service calls to be effective as follows:

Geothermal: Control or corrosion.

Service calls to be made at the following intervals while the equipment is operating:

Geothermal Closed water system(s): 6 months

The Contractor shall inform the chemical supplier of the date of startup of the equipment. If the Contractor's warranty period extends beyond 1 year from chemical feed equipment startup, the Contractor shall negotiate an additional service retainer to cover remainder of the warranty period.

Arrangements shall be made by the Water Treatment Service Organization directly with the Owner for yearly service after the Contractor's warranty period has expired.

Geothermal Water Systems:

Chemicals: PECO 5483 Liquid Cleaner

PECO 8668 molybdate based corrosion inhibitor. Do not use nitrite based inhibitors with methanol antifreeze.
Equipment: To be mounted as shown on drawings.

One (1) PECO Type A Bypass Feeder for each system

Cleaning: Cleaning shall be performed by the Contractor under the supervision of the chemical supplier at the time of startup.

The system shall be filled with water and checked for leakage and debris. The proper dosage of PECO 5843 Liquid Cleaner shall be added and circulated for 48 hours at the required temperature. Piping shall be drained and flushed. Strainers shall be cleaned. The system shall be flushed until the pH is no more than 8.

Control: A nitrate test kit shall be provided for checking and maintaining the corrosion inhibitor in the system.

The water treatment contractor shall provide the cleaning chemicals and methanol for the entire GLHE system including loop field outside and system inside of the building.

Provide 5% by weight of methanol/potable water solution as the final loop circulating fluid. The loop shall be flushed and purged in accordance with IGSHPA standards by the loop field contractor. The water treatment contractor and loop field contractor shall coordinate their efforts.

I. The flash point shall not be lower than 150deg. F, determined in accordance with ASTM D-92.

II. Five day Biological Oxygen Demand at 10 deg. C shall not exceed .2 gram oxygen per gram nor be less than .1 gram oxygen per gram.

III. The freeze point shall not exceed +28 deg. F (-8 deg. C), determined in accordance with ASTM D-1177.

IV. The toxicity shall not be less than LD-50 (oral rats) of 5 grams per kilogram. The NFPA hazardous rating for health shall not be more than 1 (slight).

V. The HEF, tested in accordance with ASTM F-1105, shall show neither separation from exposure to heat or cold, nor show an increase in turbidity.

Methanol Solution

The ground loop heat exchanger and building piping systems a 5% methanol solution.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install treatment equipment level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions, rough-in drawings, the original design, and referenced standards.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. The Drawings indicate the general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. The following are specific connection requirements:

1. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow servicing and maintenance.

B. Electrical: Conform to applicable requirements of Division 16 Sections for connecting electrical equipment.

1. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Sample boiler water at 1-week intervals after boiler startup for a period of 5 weeks and prepare certified test report for each required water performance characteristic. Where applicable, comply with ASTM D 3370 and the following standards:

1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067
3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.
5. Particulate and Dissolved Matter: ASTM D 1888.

## 3.4 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris; repair damaged finishes, including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

B. Ensure that system is operational, filled, started, and vented prior to cleaning. Place terminal control valves in OPEN position during cleaning. Use water meter to record capacity in each system.

C. Add cleaning chemicals as recommended by manufacturer.

1. Heating and Cooling System: Apply heat while circulating, slowly raising system to design temperature; maintain for a minimum of 12 hours. Remove heat and allow to cool; drain and refill with clean water. Circulate for 6 hours at design temperature, then drain. Refill with clean water and repeat until system cleaner is removed.

## 3.5 COMMISSIONING

A. Startup Services: Provide the services of a factory-authorized service representative to provide startup service and to demonstrate and train Owner's maintenance personnel as specified below.

B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Startup Procedures: During boiler system startup, operate boiler water treatment system (after charging with specified chemicals) to maintain required steady-state characteristics of feedwater.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Provide services of supplier's technical representative for half a day to instruct Owner's personnel in operation, maintenance, and testing procedures of boiler water treatment system.

B. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance.

C. Review data in the operation and maintenance manuals. Refer to Division I Section "Contract Closeout."

D. Schedule training with Owner, through the Architect, with at least 7 days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 15545

N:\06\06400\06499 New Davis Elementary (Heritage Repeat)\Secretary\Specifications\15545 Chem Water Treat.doc

**SECTION 15714 - LOUVERS AND VENTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. Furnish and install louvers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Louvers:

1. General:

a. Extruded aluminum, with blades welded or screwed into frames.
b. Frames shall have mitered corners.
c. Louvers shall be recessed, flanged, stationary, or removable as noted on Drawings.
d. Finish:

1) Polyvinyledene Fluoride ($PVF_2$) Resin-base finish (Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000) containing 70 percent minimum $PVF_2$ in resin portion of formula. Thermo-cured two coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and top coat factory applied over properly pre-treated metal.
2) Color as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's custom colors.

2. Louvers Connected To Ductwork:

a. 1/2 inch mesh 16 ga aluminum bird screen.
b. Approved Products.

1) Air Control Products.
2) Airolite.
3) American Warming & Ventilating.
4) Arrow United Industries.
5) FKDA by Carnes.
6) Ruskin.

c. Aluminum bug screen.
d. Approved Products.

1) Airolite.
2) American Warming & Ventilating.

B. Exterior Sidewall Louvers:

1. Rectangular Louvers:

    a. 12 ga extruded aluminum blades and frames.
    b. 45 degree blade angle with water baffle at center and return bends at upper edge.
    c. All welded construction. Screws or rivets will not be allowed.

2. Bird Screen: 1/2 inch square mesh 16 ga aluminum in extruded aluminum, rewirable frame on interior of louvers.
3. Finish: Powder-coated finish, custom color as selected by Architect.
4. Approved Products.

    a. Airolite.
    b. Industrial Louvers.
    c. Vent Products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Anchor securely into openings.

B. Where louvers touch masonry or dissimilar metals, protect with heavy coat of asphaltum paint.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 15745 - HEAT PUMPS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of water-source heat pumps:

1. Concealed horizontal or vertical units, 6 tons and smaller. (See schedule for configurations.)
2. Refrigerant is to be R-410.
3. Unit shall be provided with factory installed 2 position motorized valve unless otherwise noted.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. First three paragraphs below are defined in Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures" as "Action Submittals."

B. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each model.

C. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which heat pumps will be attached.
3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

a. Lighting fixtures.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of unit indicated.

F. Product Certificates: For each type of water-source heat pump, signed by product manufacturer.

G. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that water-source heat pumps, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

   a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
   b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

H. Field quality-control test reports.

I. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water-source heat pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

J. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of water-source heat pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. ASHRAE 15.
2. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Comply with safety requirements in UL 484 for assembly of free-delivery water-source heat pumps.

G. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct-system connections.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of water-source heat pumps and suspension components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system components, and partition assemblies.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water-source heat pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, refrigeration components.
2. Warranty Period: 18 month parts warranty

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. One set(s) of filters for each unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products by one of the following.

2.2 CONCEALED WATER-SOURCE HEAT PUMPS, 6 TONS AND SMALLER

A. Manufacturers:

1. Carrier Corporation.
2. ClimateMaster, Inc.
3. FHP Manufacturing Inc.
4. Trane.

B. Description: Packaged water-source heat pump with temperature controls; factory assembled, tested, and rated according to ARI-ISO-13256-1.

2.3 INDOOR WATER TO AIR HEAT PUMPS (See drawings for configurations)

A. The ground source heating and cooling units shall be reverse cycle vertical type with horizontal air inlet and vertical discharge or horizontal type with horizontal air inlet and discharge. Units shall be ground

source closed loop performance certified and listed by a nationally recognized safety testing laboratory or agency, such as ETL Testing Laboratory or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Ground source units shall be designed to operate with entering liquid temperature between 25 - 110 degrees Fahrenheit. Each unit shall be factory run tested and computer verified prior to shipping from factory. Each unit shall be separately palletized and shipped in a corrugated container from the factory.

B. Each unit shall have a minimum COP of 3.5 in the heating mode and a minimum EER of 18.1 in the cooling mode at ARI-ISO 13256-1 GSHP conditions of the following; heating EWT = 32 deg; heating EAT = 68 deg db; cooling EWT = 77 deg; cooling EAT = 80.6 deg db, 66.2 deg wb.

C. The manufacturer shall warrant entire unit for a period of one year for all parts only. The installing contractor shall be responsible to perform service and administrate the warranty.

D. The cabinet shall be fabricated from heavy gauge no-lead galvanized steel. The interior shall be insulated with ½" thick multi-density, coated glass fiber with edges sealed or tucked under flanges to prevent the introduction of glass fibers into the discharge air stream. One or two blower compartment and three compressor compartment access panels shall be provided as standard and shall be removable with all duct work in place. The internal component layout shall provide for major service with the unit in place for restricted access installations. A duct collar shall be provided on the supply air duct opening. The units shall have a totally insulated divider panel between the air handling section and the compressor section to minimize the transmission of compressor noise, and to permit operational service testing without air bypass.

E. All units shall contain a sealed refrigerant circuit including a hermetic motor-compressor, bi-directional thermal expansion valve, finned tube air-to-refrigerant heat exchanger, reversing valve, coaxial tube water-to refrigerant heat exchanger DX coil and service ports factory installed and tested. Compressors shall be high-efficiency scroll types designed for ground source duty and mounted on vibration isolators. Compressor motors shall be single or three phase with internal overload protection. The finned tube coil shall be designed for low face velocity and constructed of lanced aluminum fins bonded to rifled copper tubes in a staggered pattern not less than three rows deep. R-410, Refrigerant.

F. The coaxial water-to-refrigerant heat exchanger shall be designed for close approach temperatures and be constructed of cupronickel or copper inner tube and a steel outer tube, and capable of 300psi water and 600 psi refrigerant working pressures. The thermal expansion valve shall provide proper superheat over the entire liquid temperature range with minimal "hunting". The valve shall operate bi-directionally without the use of check valves. The water-to-refrigerant heat exchanger and refrigerant suction lines shall be insulated to prevent condensation at low liquid temperatures.

G. The fan shall be a direct drive centrifugal type with a dynamically balanced wheel. The housing and wheel shall be designed for quiet, low outlet velocity operation. The fan housing shall be of galvanized steel construction and shall be removable from the unit without disconnecting the supply air ductwork for servicing of the fan motor. The fan motor shall be provided with a variable speed ECM controller for capacity adjustment. The ECM fan motor shall be soft-starting, shall maintain constant CFM over its operating static range, and shall provide 12 CFM settings. The fan motor shall be isolated from the housing by rubber grommets. The motor shall be permanently lubricated and have thermal overload protection. Motors shall be long-lie ball bearing type.

H. A microprocessor-based controller or manufacturer's standard electromechanical controls shall be provided that communicates with a thermostat to monitor and control unit operation. The control shall provide operational sequencing, fan speed controller for ECM fan motors, high and low pressure switch monitoring, general lockout, freeze protection, condensate overflow sensing that will turn off the unit if water in the pan is above ½" (adjustable), hot water limit thermister sensing, auxiliary heat staging, hot water and LED status and fault indicators, felid selectable options, and accessory output . A terminal block with screw terminals shall be provided for field low voltage wiring. A 75 VA low voltage transformer shall be provided. Line voltage box lugs shall be provided for unit wiring. Units shall have

knockouts for entrance of low and line voltage wiring. The fan motor and control box shall be harnessed plug-connected for easy removal. Each heat pump shall have a pump relay connection for interlocking with the geothermal circulation pumps.

I. Each unit shall have a single point power connection. Each unit shall be wired and tested at the factory before shipment. Wiring shall comply with NEC requirements and shall conform to all applicable U.L. Standards. All wiring shall be number coded per the electrical wiring diagrams. All electrical components shall be labeled according to the electrical diagram and be U.L. recognized where applicable. Each unit shall have a 24 volt control circuit transformer and control circuit fuse.

J. The supply air fan, compressor branch circuits shall be furnished for each compressor and fan motor branch circuits shall be furnished for each compressor and fan motor. The supply air fan motors shall have contactors and overload protection.

K. A terminal board shall be provided for the low voltage control wiring. Knockouts shall be provided in the bottom of the main control panel for field wiring entrance.

L. A field installed disconnect switch by the electrical contractor shall be provided to cut power to the entire unit for servicing.

M. Each unit shall be furnished with a factory installed starter

N. Supply and return water connection shall be 1" swivel FPT factory installed eliminating the need for back up wrenches when making field hose kit connections. The condensate connection shall be field switchable between ¾" PVC socket or ½" copper sweat.

O. Hanger kit (field installed-horizontal units only) - The hanger kit shall consist of galvanized steel brackets, bolts, lock washers, and isolators and shall be designed to fasten to the unit bottom panel for suspension from 3/8" threaded rods. Rods shall be supplied by the contractor at the time of installation.

P. Wiring diagrams with details of wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring shall be provided with the units.

Q. Coordinate layout and installation of water-source heat pumps and suspension components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system components, and partition assemblies.

R. Filter housings shall be 2", factory fabricated with removable access door. Filter housing may be factory installed, or field installed by the contractor.

S. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.

T. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

U. All vertical and horizontal heat pumps shall all be the same manufacturer.

## 2.4 WATER TO WATER HEAT PUMP

A. The ground source heating and cooling units shall be reverse cycle suspended type. Multiple units shall be piped as shown to operate as a single unit. Units shall be ARI 330 (ground source closed loop) performance certified and listed by a nationally recognized safety testing laboratory or agency, such as ETL Testing Laboratory or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Ground source units shall be designed to operate with entering liquid temperature between 20 - 110 degrees Fahrenheit. Each unit shall

be factory run tested and computer verified prior to shipping from factory. Each unit shall be separately palletized and shipped in a corrugated container from the factory.

B. Each unit shall have a minimum COP of 2.7 in the heating mode and a minimum EER of 11.3 in the cooling mode at ARI-ISO 13256-1 GSHP conditions.

C. The manufacturer shall warranty entire unit for a period of one year for all parts and labor. The installing contractor shall be responsible to perform service and administrate the warranty. There shall be a standard five years parts and labor warranty on the compressor(s).

D. The cabinet shall be fabricated from heavy gauge no-lead galvanized steel. The interior shall be insulated with ½" thick multi-density, coated glass fiber with The internal component layout shall provide for major service with the unit in place for restricted access installations.

E. All units shall contain a sealed refrigerant circuit including a hermetic motor-compressor, bi-directional thermal expansion valve, finned tube air-to-refrigerant heat exchanger, reversing valve, two coaxial tube water-refrigerant heat exchangers, and service ports factory installed and tested.

F. Compressors shall be high-efficiency rotary, reciprocating or scroll types designed for ground source duty and mounted on spring vibration isolators and wrapped with an acoustic blanket to minimize compressor sound. Compressor motors shall be single or three phase with internal overload protection.

G. The coaxial water-to-refrigerant heat exchangers shall be designed for close approach temperatures and be constructed of copper inner tube and a steel outer tube, and capable of 300psi water and 450psi refrigerant working pressures. The thermal expansion valve shall provide proper superheat over the entire liquid temperature range with minimal "hunting". The valve shall operate Bi-directionally without the use of check valves.

H. The water-to-refrigerant heat exchangers and refrigerant suction lines shall be insulated to prevent condensation at low liquid temperatures.

I. Heat pumps are to be provided with factory installed freeze stats.

J. A microprocessor-based controller or manufacturer's standard electromechanical controls shall be provided that communicates with a multi-stage electronic thermostat to monitor and control unit operation. The control shall provide operational sequencing, high and low pressure switch monitoring, general lockout, freeze protection and condensate overflow sensing. A terminal block with screw terminals shall be provided for field low voltage wiring. A 75 VA low voltage transformer shall be provided. Line voltage box lugs shall be provided for unit wiring. Units shall have knockouts for entrance of low and line voltage wiring. Each heat pump shall have a pump relay connection for interlocking with the geothermal circulation pumps.

K. Supply and return water connection shall be 2" swivel FPT factory installed eliminating the need for back up wrenches when making field hose kit connections. The condensate connection shall be field switchable between ¾" PVC socket or ½" copper sweat. Hanger kit (field installed-horizontal units only) - The hanger kit shall consist of galvanized steel brackets, bolts, lock washers, and isolators and shall be designed to fasten to the unit bottom panel for suspension from 3/8" threaded rods. Rods shall be supplied by the contractor at the time of installation.

L. Thermostats shall be provided, installed and wired by section 15900.

M. Wiring diagrams with details of wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring shall be provided with the units.

N. Coordinate layout and installation of water-source heat pumps and suspension components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system components, and partition assemblies.

O. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, other specific conditions, and other conditions affecting performance of water-source heat pumps. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Examine piping and electric rough installations for water-source heat pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation. Install water-source heat pumps according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated, and maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.

P. Piping Connections: Drawings indicate the general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

Q. Connect supply and return piping to heat pump with unions and shutoff valves.

R. Connect heat-pump drain pan to nearest indirect waste connection, or as indicated.

S. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.

T. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

U. Manufacturer's Field Service: Provide services of a factory-authorized service representative to supervise the field assembly of components and installation of water-source heat pumps, including piping and electrical connections. Report results in writing.

V. Test and adjust controls and safeties.

W. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

X. Startup Services: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup services. The factory startup is to be performed competent personal trained specifically by the manufacturer of the installed equipment. The credentials of the personal who will be actually doing the startup shall be submitted with the submittals for approval. The contractor is not assumed to be qualified as the factory-authorized service representative unless he can provide adequate credentials. A start up report must be submitted for review by the owner and engineer. Start up report shall include gpm measurements, COP, EER, Amp readings, temperature readings, etc. Operate controls and verify proper response to control inputs. Operate controls and verify proper response to control inputs.

Y. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel as specified below:

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance. Review data in the maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least 7 days' advance notice. The contractor shall notify & coordinate with the school prior to training so that the school district can arrange to have the training sessions video taped.

Z. Acceptable manufacturers of non-custom built are Climate Master, Trane or Florida Heat Pump.

AA. All water to water heat pumps shall all be the same manufacturer.

2.5 HEAT PUMP CONTROLS COORDINATION:

A. The heat pumps shall be provided with random start relays, interlocks, safeties, controllers, etc, necessary to make the units compatible with the sequence of controls described in the control section. The heat pump manufacturer shall review the sequence of controls prior to the bid and immediately bring to the engineers attention in writing any conflicts, difficulties, etc. Once the bid is over any control items which could be normally supplied with the heat pumps and are necessary to facilitate the control sequences will be required to be provided installed at no additional costs to the project.

B. The thermostats are to be provided by the ATC contractor as specified in the controls section. Heat pumps shall be configured and wired capable of running off terminations compatible with conventional thermostat wiring.

2.6 HOSE KITS FOR HEAT PUMPS:

A. Piping Connections: Drawings indicate the general arrangement of piping, fittings and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Ball Valves: Full opening ball valves shall be included in the hose kit package on both supply and return lines to the loop.
2. Hoses: Hoses shall consist of stainless steel outer braid with an inner core of tube made of a nontoxic synthetic polymer material. The hoses shall be suitable for fluid temperatures ranging between 27°F and 211°F. Hoses shall be 24" in length.
3. Automatic Flow Devices: The automatic self-balancing device shall automatically limit the rate of flow to within 5-percent of the specified amount. For the ½- through 2-inch configuration, the cartridge shall be removable from the Y-body housing without the use of special tools to provide access for regulator change-out, inspection and cleaning without breaking the main piping. (Similar to that provided for removal of a Y-strainer screen). True operating ranges of 2 -32 psig of 5 -60 psig shall be required. Each valve shall have two pressure/temperature ports to verify differential pressure and flow rate. The internal wear surfaces of the valve cartridge shall be constructed of electroless nickel or stainless steel for long wear.
4. An in-line strainer shall be provided with each hose kit for installation on the supply line.
5. Provide crossover piping with ball valves between supply and return line at each heat pump to allow circulation of the main supply and return lines without pumping through the heat pumps for initial cleaning and testing.
6. Hose kits shall be Armstrong, Griswold, Flow Design, Hayes, Trane, or Water Furnace.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of water-source heat pumps.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electric installations for water-source heat pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections and electrical conduit before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Suspend water-source heat pumps from structure with threaded steel rods and minimum 0.25-inch static deflection rubber-in-shear vibration isolators and seismic restraints. Vibration isolators are specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."

B. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, other specific conditions, and other conditions affecting performance of water-source heat pumps. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Examine piping and electric rough installations for water-source heat pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation. Install water-source heat pumps according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated, and maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.

C. Test and adjust controls and safeties.

D. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Connect supply and return hydronic piping to heat pump with unions and shutoff valves hose kits.
2. Connect heat-pump condensate drain pan to indirect waste connection with condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against the pressure of fan. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.

B. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Connect supply and return ducts to water-source heat pumps with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.

D. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

E. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

F. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables." Connect supply and return piping to heat pump with unions and shutoff valves.

G. Connect heat-pump drain pan to nearest indirect waste connection, or as indicated. The pan shall be 304 SS or HDPE to inhibit corrosion.

H. Duct Connections: Connect supply and return ducts to heat pumps with flexible duct connections. Provide transitions to match unit duct-connection size.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing water-source heat pumps and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

## 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. The factory startup is to be performed competent personal trained specifically by the manufacturer of the installed equipment. The credentials of the personal who will be actually doing the startup shall be submitted with the submittals for approval. The contractor is not assumed to be qualified as the factory-authorized service representative unless he can provide adequate credentials. A start up report must be submitted for review by the owner and engineer. Start up report shall include gpm measurements, COP, EER, Amp readings, temperature readings, etc. Operate fan motors and verify proper rotation and connections. Operate controls and verify proper response to control inputs.

C. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:

1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
2. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
3. Inspect internal insulation.
4. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
5. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
6. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
7. Verify that filters are installed.
8. Adjust vibration isolators.
9. Inspect operation of barometric dampers.
10. Verify bearing lubrication on fan.
11. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
12. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
13. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
14. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
15. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
16. Verify thermostat and humidistat calibration.
17. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
18. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following:

    a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.

b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.

19. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.

a. Supply-air volume.
b. Return-air volume.
c. Relief-air volume.
d. Outdoor-air intake volume.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

## 3.7 CLEANING

A. Replace filters used during construction prior to air balance or substantial completion.

B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished water-source heat pumps, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

## 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water-source heat pumps. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

B. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance. Review data in the maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least 7 days' advance notice. The contractor shall notify & coordinate with the school prior to training so that the school district can arrange to have the training sessions video taped.

END OF SECTION 15745

**SECTION 15810 - COMMON DUCT REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. General procedures and requirements for ductwork.
2. Repair leaks in ductwork, as identified by smoke test, at no additional cost to Owner.
3. Soundproofing procedures for duct penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors in mechanical equipment rooms.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Samples: Sealer and gauze proposed for sealing ductwork.

B. Quality Assurance / Control:

1. Manufacturer's installation manuals providing detailed instructions on assembly, joint sealing, and system pressure testing for leaks.
2. Specification data on sealer and gauze proposed for sealing ductwork.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Requirements: Construction details not specifically called out in Contract Documents shall conform to applicable requirements of SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards.

B. Pre-Installation Conference: Schedule conference immediately before installation of ductwork.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. Finishes, Where Applicable: Colors as selected by Architect.

B. Duct Hangers:

1. One inch by 18 ga galvanized steel straps or steel rods as shown on Drawings, and spaced not more than 96 inches apart. Do not use wire hangers.
2. Attaching screws at trusses shall be 2 inch No. 10 round head wood screws. Nails not allowed.
3. Attach threaded rod to steel joist with Grinnell Steel washer plate Fig. 60 - ph-1. Double nut connection.

C. Penetration Soundproofing Materials:

1. Insulation for Packing: Fiberglass.
2. Calking: Polysulphide.
3. Escutcheon Frame: 22 ga galvanized iron 2 inches wide.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. During installation, protect open ends of ducts by covering with plastic sheet tied in place to prevent entrance of debris and dirt.

B. Make necessary allowances and provisions in installation of sheet metal ducts for structural conditions of building. Revisions in layout and configuration may be allowed, with prior written approval of Architect. Maintain required airflows in suggesting revisions.

C. Hangers And Supports:

1. Install pair of hangers close to each transverse joint and elsewhere as required by spacing indicated in table on Drawings.
2. Install upper ends of hanger securely to floor or roof construction above by method shown on Drawings.
3. Attach strap hangers to ducts with cadmium-plated screws. Use of pop rivets or other means will not be accepted.
4. Where hangers are secured to forms before concrete slabs are poured, cut off flush all nails, strap ends, and other projections after forms are removed.
5. Secure vertical ducts passing through floors by extending bracing angles to rest firmly on floors without loose blocking or shimming. Support vertical ducts, which do not pass through floors, by using bands bolted to walls, columns, etc. Size, spacing, and method of attachment to vertical ducts shall be same as specified for hanger bands on horizontal ducts.

D. Penetration Soundproofing

1. Pack space between ducts and structure full of fiberglass insulation of sufficient thickness to be wedged tight, allowing space for application of calking.
2. Provide calking at least 2 inches thick between duct and structure on both ends of opening through structure.
3. Provide metal escutcheon on Equipment Room side. Secure escutcheon to wall.

3.2 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of duct systems before final completion.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 15815 - METAL DUCTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.
7. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.

3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.
13. The shop drawings shall include the Rectangular and round ductwork construction and reinforcement methods which the contractor is proposing for this project. This shall be determined by the contractor by following the latest edition of SMACNA "HVAC duct construction Standards". Duct fabrication shall not begin until these shop drawings and be submitted and reviewed.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

D. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.
    f. Perimeter moldings.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. McGill AirFlow LLC.
2. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.

B. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for the inner duct.

C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

D. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.

3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

G. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch- diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.

H. Formed-on Transverse Joints (Flanges): Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Traverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated. Longitudinal ductwork is not allowed. All round ductwork shall have the Spiral seam.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Lindab Inc.
b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
c. SEMCO Incorporated.
d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

D. Longitudinal Seams: Not Allowed.

E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.4 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Lindab Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. SEMCO Incorporated.
4. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
5. Spiral, Inc.

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.

C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

    a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

2. Longitudinal Seams: Not Allowed.
3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.

E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

## 2.5 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 and 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.

E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.

F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.6 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
b. Johns Manville.
c. Knauf Insulation.
d. Owens Corning.

2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:

a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F 75 deg F mean temperature.

3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
    b. Armacell LLC.
    c. Rubatex International, LLC

2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

    a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick aluminum or stainless steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches diameter.

D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm .
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:

    a. Fan discharges.
    b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.

9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.

a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.

10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.7 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg , positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.9 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
3. Hilti Corp.
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
6. Vibro Acoustics.

B. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.

C. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603, galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.

D. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.

E. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated after coordination with all other trades. Submit Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings to insure ductwork system with fit. Make necessary's offsets and modifications to insure the ductwork system will fit in the allotted space.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

## 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

F. Paint ductwork as directed by the architect.

## 3.3 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible." Below are general seal Class. Refer to standards for exact Seal Class.
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.

7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

## 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 3.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems.

1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.

B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.

C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.

E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.

G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

## 3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

## 3.7 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:

a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
e. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.9 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 15 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

## 3.10 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

## 3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. General: All lined ductwork is to be increased in size to allow the required amount of insulation.

B. Outside air/fresh air ductwork shall be wrapped not lined.

C. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to, Heat Pumps:

a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
e. Provide duct liner.
f. Round ductwork is to be wrapped with 1 ½ inch 1.5-lb/cut ft with foil cover.

2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:

   a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
   e. Provide duct liner.
   f. Round ductwork is to be wrapped with 1 ½ inch 1.5-lb/cut ft with foil cover.
   g.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

   a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
   e. Ductwork is to be insulated.
   f. During the shop drawing review the Pressure class and insulation type and material will be finalized.

4. Ductwork running in areas where there are no ceilings or when noted on the drawings shall be doubled walled and shall meet the pressure class of the upstream duct. This ductwork is to be insulated between each wall.

   a. Pressure Class: Same as the upstream pressure.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
   e. Ductwork is to be insulated between each wall.
   f. Inter duct shall have perforations if it is not downstream of humidified air.
   g. During the shop drawing review the Pressure class and insulation type and material will be reviewed.

D. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to, Heat Pumps:

   a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
   e. Ductwork is to be lined.
   f. Round ductwork is to be wrapped with 2 inch thick 1.5-lb/cu. Ft density.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

   a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
   e. Ductwork is to be lined. Round ductwork is to be wrapped with 2 inch thick 1.5-lb/cu. Ft density.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
e. Ductwork is to be insulated.
f. During the shop drawing review the Pressure class and insulation type and material will be finalized.

4. Ductwork running in areas where there are no ceilings or when noted on the drawings shall be doubled walled and shall meet the pressure class of the upstream duct. This ductwork is to be insulated between each wall.

a. Pressure Class: Same as the upstream pressure.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
e. Ductwork is to be insulated between each wall.
f. Inter duct shall have perforations if it is not downstream of humidified air. During the shop drawing review the insulation type and material will be reviewed.

E. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
e. Ductwork is be lined 25 ft upstream from each fan, if the fan is an inline fan the ductwork shall be line 25 ft upstream and downstream of the fan..

F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.

2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:

a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.

3. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.

G. Liner:

1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I or Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.
2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I or Flexible elastomeric, 1 thick.
3. Exhaust Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I or Flexible elastomeric, 1 thick.
4. Supply Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II or Flexible elastomeric,1 thick.
5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II or Flexible elastomeric, 1 thick.
6. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I or Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.

H. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:

1. Supply Air Ducts: 1 inch thick or as noted on the drawings.

2. Return Air Ducts: 1 inch thick or as noted on the drawings.
3. Exhaust Air Ducts: 1 inch thick or as noted on the drawings.

I. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

J. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows.". Longitudinal Seams: Not Allowed, provide spiral round ductwork.

a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.

K. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."

a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

END OF SECTION 15815

**SECTION 15820 – AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Backdraft dampers.
2. Manual-volume dampers.
3. Fire and smoke dampers.
4. Fire dampers
5. Turning vanes.
6. Duct-mounted access doors and panels.
7. Flexible ducts.
8. Flexible connectors.
9. Duct accessory hardware.
10. Concealed damper regulators.
11. Remote damper adjustment

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 8 Section "Access Doors" for wall- and ceiling-mounted access doors and panels.
2. Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
3. Division 16 Section "Fire Alarm Systems" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

C. This division shall demonstrate that all Fire dampers and fire smoke dampers can be maintained and serviced and are operating correctly.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Backdraft dampers.
2. Manual-volume dampers.
3. Fire and smoke dampers.
4. Duct-mounted access doors and panels.
5. Flexible ducts.
6. Concealed damper regulators.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, location, and size of each field connection. Detail the following:

1. Special fittings and manual- and automatic-volume-damper installations.

2. Fire- and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves and duct-mounted access doors and panels.

C. Product Certificates: Submit certified test data on dynamic insertion loss; self-noise power levels; and airflow performance data, static-pressure loss, dimensions, and weights.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. NFPA Compliance: Comply with the following NFPA standards:

1. NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
2. NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. Galvanized, Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces of ducts exposed to view.

B. Carbon-Steel Sheets: ASTM A 366/A 366M, cold-rolled sheets, commercial quality, with oiled, exposed matte finish.

C. Aluminum Sheets: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14, sheet form; with standard, one-side bright finish for ducts exposed to view and mill finish for concealed ducts.

D. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized, sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for 36-inch length or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.2 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

A. Description: Suitable for horizontal or vertical installations.

B. Frame: 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with mounting flange.

C. Blades: 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet.

D. Blade Seals: Neoprene.

E. Blade Axles: Nonferrous.

F. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

G. Return: Spring with adjustable tension adjustable counter balance.

## 2.3 MANUAL-VOLUME DAMPERS

A. General: Factory fabricated with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.

1. Pressure Classifications of 3-Inch wg or Higher: End bearings or other seals for ducts with axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

B. Volume Dampers: Dampers smaller than 4 square feet of face area. Multiple- or single-blade, opposed-blade design as indicated, low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.

1. Galvanized Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, 16 gauge, Galvanized steel channels; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls; and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
2. Galvanized Steel Blades: Single skin 16 gauge galvanized steel.
3. Blade Axles: Nonferrous.
4. Bearings: Molder synthetic sleeve type.

C. Jackshaft: 1-inch- diameter, galvanized steel pipe rotating within a pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.

1. Length and Number of Mountings: Appropriate to connect linkage of each damper of a multiple-damper assembly.

D. Damper Hardware: Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

E. Each volume damper concealed above an inaccessible ceiling, etc., shall be provided with a shaft extended through the ceiling, to which shall be attached a chrome-plated or painted Ventlock No. 666 concealed damper regulator. No. 680 Ventlock miter gears shall be used where necessary.

## 2.4 COMBINATION FIRE-SMOKE DAMPERS

A. General: Labeled to UL 555S and meeting the code requirements. Combination fire and smoke dampers shall be labeled for one-and-one-half-hour rating to UL 555 for rating assemblies less than 3 hours and three hours for rating assemblies 3 hours or more.

B. Leakage Rate: Class 1 with less than 8 cfm square foot leakage at 4" w.g. static pressure.

C. Pressure Rating: Fully operational will velocities to 4000 FPM and pressures in excess of 4" w.g.

D. Fire Stat: Remotely resetable damper position with switches for remote indication. High Temperature limit returns damper to protection mode when temperature reaches operational limit of damper/actuator assembly.

E. Frame and Blades: 0.064-inch- thick, galvanized, sheet steel, blades are to be Airfoil.

F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch- thick, unless otherwise indicated, galvanized, sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.

G. Damper Motors: Locate outside air stream unless otherwise indicated. Provide for two-position action.

1. Electric of voltage to match fire alarm system (120V). UL listed as part of damper assembly.
2. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outside-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.

H. Provide smoke dampers with two contactor indicators, one for the open position & one for the closed position.

I. Temperature ratings are to be 250 deg F. Minimum.

J. Operational Ratings 2000 fpm at 4 in. wg.

K. Provide a factory mounted single point smoke detector with the Damper. UL Listed S1383. This is not required if a Fire Alarm is provided by division 16.

L. Provide a testable/resettable switch with each damper.

## 2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Curtain type fire dampers.

1. Ratings Fire Resistance: 1½ hours in accordance with UL 555.
2. Dynamic Closure Rating: Dampers shall be classified for dynamic closure to 2000 fpm and 4 inches w.g. (1 kPa) static pressure.

B. Construction:

1. Integral Sleeve Frame: Minimum 20 gauge roll formed galvanized steel.
2. Blades:

   a. Style: Curtain type, out of airstream.
   b. Action: Spring or gravity closure upon fusible link release.
   c. Orientation: Horizontal.
   d. Material: Minimum 24 gage (0.6 mm) roll formed galvanized steel.

3. Closure Springs: Type 301 stainless steel, constant force type, if required.
4. Temperature Release Device: 212 degrees F (100 degrees C) fusible link.
5. Mounting: Vertical and/or Horizontal. Duct Transition Connection, Damper Style: Blades out of air stream, high free area.
6. Finish: Mill galvanized.
7. Indicator Switches: Microswitch.

8. Mounting Angles: FAST, 1-1/2 x 1-1/2 inches (38 x 38 mm). Provide steel mullions for dampers in oversized masonry walls. Provide duct breakaway connection in all duct/damper connections.

## 2.6 TURNING VANES

A. Fabricate single blade vanes to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards-Metal and Flexible."

B. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate of airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

## 2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

A. General: Fabricate doors and panels airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

B. Frame: Galvanized, sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.

C. Door: Double-wall, galvanized, sheet metal construction with insulation fill and thickness, and number of hinges and locks as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.

D. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.

E. Insulation: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. General: Flame-retarded or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.

B. Standard Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a strip of fabric 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized, sheet steel or 0.032-inch aluminum sheets. Select metal compatible with connected ducts.

C. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with a synthetic-rubber, weatherproof coating resistant to the sun's ultraviolet rays and ozone environment.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp, and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. General: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

B. Flexible Ducts, Insulated: Factory-fabricated, insulated, round duct, with an outer jacket enclosing 1-1/2-inch- thick, glass-fiber insulation around a continuous inner liner.

1. Reinforcement: Steel-wire helix encapsulated in inner liner.
2. Outer Jacket: Glass-reinforced, silver Mylar with a continuous hanging tab, integral fibrous-glass tape, and nylon hanging cord.

3. Inner Liner: Polyethylene film.

C. Pressure Rating: 6-inch wg positive, 1/2-inch wg negative.

D. Flexible duct connections from the main trunk ducts to diffuser boots shall be furnished and installed as shown on the drawings. Flexible ducts shall have compression fittings on both ends. Flexible ducts shall connect to trunk duct with high efficiency takeoffs. A balance damper with locking quadrant will be provided downstream of take-off from trunk duct.

E. Ducts shall conform to the requirements for Class I connectors when tested in accordance with "Standard for Factory Made Air Ducts Materials and Air Duct Connectors" (UL 181). Ducts shall also pass the 15 minute U.L. flame penetration test as specified in the UL 181 Standard.

F. Flexible ducts shall not extend more than 5'-0". Flexible ductwork shall be run in straight lengths. Flexible ductwork is not allowed to bend 90 degrees. If a bend is needed use sheet-metal hard elbows.

G. For round ductwork 24" and smaller a True round fire damper with the same rating may be used.

## 2.10 ACCESS DOORS

A. Provide access doors for visual inspection of fire damper blades.

## 2.11 ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments, and length to suit duct insulation thickness.

B. Splitter Damper Accessories: Zinc-plated damper blade bracket; 1/4-inch, zinc-plated operating rod; and a duct-mounted, ball-joint bracket with flat rubber gasket and square-head set screw.

C. Flexible Duct Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action, in sizes 3 to 18 inches to suit duct size.

D. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## 2.12 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATOR

1. Use one of the two options below:

   A. Damper controller and cable shall be concealed above the ceiling or in the walls. Cable to consist of Bowden cable .054" stainless steel control wire encapsulated in 1/16" flexible galvanized spiral wire sheath. Control kit shall consist of 2-5/8" diameter die cast aluminum housing with 3" diameter zinc plated [polished chrome is optional] cover, and 14 gauge steel rack and pinion gear drive converting rotary motion to push-pull motion. Control shaft shall be D-style flatted 1/4" diameter with 265 degree rotation providing graduations for positive locking and control, and 1-1/2" linear travel capability. Control kit is designed to be imbedded in the ceiling flush with the finished surface or flush will the wall. Control kit shall be manually operated using Young Regulator Model 030-12 wrench. Control kit shall be Young Regulator Model 270-301 or prior approved equal.

B. Damper controller. Provide a remote control operated zone control damper. Damper shall be a butterfly type, consisting of a circular blade, fastened to a continuous 3/8" mild steel square shaft. Inside frame surface shall be clan and smooth with no blade stops or similarly inward projections that increase pressure drop. Frame shall be 20 gage minimum G60 galvanized steel and include full circumference rolled stiffener. The blade shall be of the same material as the frame. The bearing shall be molded lexan GE141 and shall be formed to shape the axle. A 9 volt DC operated damper motor shall be factory installed and commissioned prior to shipping. The actuator shall include a factory wired RJ11 connector. Damper shall be installed with plenum rated RJ11 cable terminating at the damper motor connector on one end and the wall box or diffuser on the other end. The unit shall be a Ruskin Model ZPD25.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details shown in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and NAIMA's "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards" for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install volume dampers in lined duct; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.

C. Provide test holes at fan inlet and outlet and elsewhere as indicated.

D. Install fire and smoke dampers according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.

1. Install fusible links in fire dampers.

E. Install duct access panels for access to both sides of duct coils. Install duct access panels downstream from volume dampers, fire dampers, turning vanes, and equipment.

1. Install duct access panels to allow access to interior of ducts for cleaning, inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units.
2. Install access panels on side of duct where adequate clearance is available.

F. Label access doors according to Division 16 Section "Identification for Piping and Equipment."

G. Where flexible duct is indicated, use insulated flexible duct for supply air return and exhaust air. Flexible ductwork shall only be used as indicated on the drawings and shall not exceed 6 feet. Hard turns, offsets, or kinks will not be allowed. Provide support every three feet.

H. Use the remote damper operator when they are called out on the drawings or when the damper cannot be easily accessed.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.

B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.

C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

END OF SECTION 15820

**SECTION 15853 - POWER VENTILATORS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. In-line centrifugal fans.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 7 Section "Manufactured Roof Specialties" for roof curbs and equipment supports.
2. Division 15 Section "Instrumentation and Controls for HVAC" for control devices.
3. Division 16 Section "Disconnects and Circuit Breakers" for disconnect switches.
4. Division 16 Section "Motor Controllers" for motor starters.

C. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include roof curbs for roof-mounted exhaust fans.

D. Provide neoprene gasket between fan-mounted curbs and the fan for sound transmission also isolated fans with rubber grommet.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Project Altitude: Base air ratings on actual site elevations.

B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

C. Fan Unit Schedule: The following information is described in an equipment schedule on the Drawings.

1. Fan performance data including capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
2. Fan arrangement including wheel configuration, inlet and discharge configurations, and required accessories.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data including rated capacities of each unit, weights (shipping, installed, and operating), furnished specialties, accessories, and the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material gages and finishes, including color charts.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

C. Shop Drawings from manufacturer detailing equipment assemblies and indicating dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

D. Coordination Drawings, according to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Requirements," for roof penetration requirements and for reflected ceiling plans drawn accurately to scale and coordinating penetrations and units mounted above ceiling. Show the following:

1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

E. Wiring diagrams detailing wiring for power and control systems and differentiating clearly between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

F. Maintenance data for power ventilators to include in the operation and maintenance manual specified in Division 1 and in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Requirements."

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Component Standard: Provide components that comply with NFPA 70 and that are listed and labeled by UL where available.

B. Listing and Labeling: Provide electrically operated fixtures specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.

1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the National Electrical Code, Article 100.
2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.

C. AMCA Compliance: Provide products that meet performance requirements and are licensed to use the AMCA Seal.

D. NEMA Compliance: Provide components required as part of fans that comply with applicable NEMA standards.

E. UL Standard: Provide power ventilators that comply with UL 705.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions by field measurements. Verify clearances.

B. Do not operate fans until ductwork is clean, filters are in place, bearings are lubricated, and fans have been commissioned.

1.7 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate the size and location of structural steel support members.

B. Coordinate the installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. Roof specialties are specified in Division 7 Sections.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish one set of belts for each belt-driven fan that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels clearly describing contents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. In-Line Centrifugal Fans:

a. Cook (Loren) Co.
b. Woods
c. ILG Industries, Inc.
d. Jenn Industries Inc.
e. Greenheck

2.2 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Description: In-line, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, outlet guide vanes, fan shaft, bearings, drive assembly, motor and disconnect switch, mounting brackets, and accessories.

B. Housing: Heavy gauge steel with straightening vanes; inlet and outlet flanges; and support bracket.

C. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.

D. Fan Wheels: Steel backward inclined blades welded to steel hub.

E. Accessories: The following accessories are required as indicated:

1. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
2. Fan Guards: Expanded metal in removable frame. Provide belt guards for units not connected to ductwork.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Motors" for general requirements for factory-installed motors. The Fan for the Grease utility only needs a spark rating of C

2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Sheet Metal Parts: Prime coat before final assembly.

B. Exterior Surfaces: Baked-enamel finish coat after assembly.

C. Aluminum Parts: No finish required.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Requirements: The following factory tests are required as indicated:

1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings From Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA Seal.
2. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements of installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the power ventilators. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Support units using the vibration-control devices indicated. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Vibration Control."

1. Support utility set fans on steel bases or roof supports using housed spring isolators. Secure units to anchor bolts installed in housekeeping base.
2. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware.

a. Installation of roof curbs is specified in Division 7 Sections.

3. Suspend units from structural steel support frame using threaded steel rods and vibration isolation springs.

C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors.

B. Electrical: Conform to applicable requirements in Division 16 Sections.

C. Grounding: Ground equipment. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals, including grounding connections, according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Provide services of a factory-authorized service representative to supervise the field assembly of components and installation of fans, including duct and electrical connections, and to report results in writing.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Lubricate bearings.

## 3.6 CLEANING

A. After completing installation, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

B. Clean fan interiors to remove foreign material and construction debris. Vacuum clean fan wheel and cabinet.

## 3.7 COMMISSIONING

A. Final Checks before Startup: Perform the following operations and checks before startup:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections for piping, ducts, and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnects.
3. Perform cleaning and adjusting specified in this Section.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Lubricate bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts with factory-recommended lubricants.

6. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in the fully open position.
7. Disable automatic temperature-control operators.

B. Starting procedures for fans are as follows:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated RPM.
2. Measure and record motor voltage and amperage.

C. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.

D. Refer to Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for procedures for air-handling-system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

E. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.

## 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance.

B. Review data in the operation and maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."

C. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least 7 days' advance notice.

D. Demonstrate operation of power ventilators. Conduct walking tour of the Project. Briefly identify location and describe function, operation, and maintenance of each power ventilator.

END OF SECTION 15853

**SECTION 15855 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes ceiling- and wall-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 10 Section "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.
3. Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for balancing diffusers, registers, and grilles.

C. Provide not-tamper security supply diffusers and return grilles in all secure and isolation rooms.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Diffuser: Circular, square, or rectangular air distribution outlet, generally located in the ceiling and comprised of deflecting members discharging supply air in various directions and planes and arranged to promote mixing of primary air with secondary room air.

B. Grille: A louvered or perforated covering for an opening in an air passage, which can be located in a sidewall, ceiling, or floor.

C. Register: A combination grille and damper assembly over an air opening.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each model indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: For each type of air outlet and inlet, and accessory furnished; indicate construction, finish, and mounting details.
2. Performance Data: Include throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings for each type of air outlet and inlet.
3. Schedule of diffusers, registers, and grilles indicating drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
4. Assembly Drawing: For each type of air outlet and inlet; indicate materials and methods of assembly of components.

B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and wall elevations drawn to scale to show locations and coordination of diffusers, registers, and grilles with other items installed in ceilings and walls.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for diffusers, registers, and grilles with factory-applied color finishes. Colors to be off-white, unless otherwise selected by Architect during submittal stage.

D. Samples for Verification: Of diffusers, registers, and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes, showing the full range of colors. Prepare Samples from the same material to be used for the Work.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Options: Drawings and schedules indicate specific requirements of diffusers, registers, and grilles and are based on the specific requirements of the systems indicated.

B. NFPA Compliance: Install diffusers, registers, and grilles according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Factors
2. Krueger
3. Metal Aire
4. Nailor
5. Price
6. Titus

## 2.2 REGISTERS, GRILLES, & DIFFUSERS

A. General: The frames for all registers, grilles, and diffusers shall match type of ceiling where they are to be installed. Special frames shall be provided for narrow T-bar ceilings. Refer to reflected ceiling plan and other specification divisions for ceiling type. See drawings schedules for additional information.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test performance according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions, Coordination Drawings, original design, and referenced standards.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of the panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connection to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

3.4 CLEANING

A. After installation of diffusers, registers, and grilles, inspect exposed finish. Clean exposed surfaces to remove burrs, dirt, and smudges. Replace diffusers, registers, and grilles that have damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 15855

## SECTION 15860 - ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Propeller unit heaters with coils.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Location and size of each field connection.
3. Details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
4. Equipment schedules to include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
5. Location and arrangement of integral controls.
6. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which unit heaters will be attached.
3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

a. Lighting fixtures.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.

d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.

6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: Finish colors for units with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: Finish colors for each type of cabinet unit heater and wall and ceiling heaters indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

F. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that cabinet unit heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 15 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

G. Field quality-control test reports.

H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

## 1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Cabinet Unit Heater Filters: Furnish spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PROPELLER UNIT HEATERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Are to be one of the following:

1. Airtherm; a Mestek Company.
2. McQuay International.
3. Trane.

B. Description: An assembly including casing, coil, fan, and motor in discharge configuration with adjustable discharge louvers. (See drawings for configurations).

C. Comply with UL 2021.

D. Comply with UL 823.

E. Cabinet: Removable panels for maintenance access to controls.

F. Cabinet Finish: Manufacturer's baked enamel applied to factory-assembled and -tested propeller unit heater before shipping.

G. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

H. Discharge Louver: Adjustable fin diffuser for horizontal units and conical diffuser for vertical units.

I. Electric-Resistance Heating Elements: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in steel or corrosion-resistant metallic sheath with fins no closer than 0.16 inch. Element ends shall be enclosed in terminal box. Fin surface temperature shall not exceed 550 deg F at any point during normal operation.

1. Circuit Protection: One-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection of heaters.
2. Wiring Terminations: Stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant material.

J. Fan: Propeller type with aluminum wheel directly mounted on motor shaft in the fan venturi.

K. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Type: Permanently lubricate.

L. Control Devices:

1. Wall mounting fan-speed switch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in forelectrical connections to verify actual locations before unit heater installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

B. Install propeller unit heaters level and plumb.

C. Suspend cabinet unit heaters from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified in Division 73 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

D. Suspend propeller unit heaters from structure with all-thread hanger rods. Hanger rods and attachments to structure are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Vibration hangers are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

E. Install wall-mounting thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

F. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect supply and return ducts to cabinet unit heaters with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."

B. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

C. Ground equipment according to Division 29 Section "Grounding and Bonding."

D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections Report results in writing.

B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature set points.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cabinet unit heaters. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 15875 - AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. Furnish and install air-to-air energy recovery ventilation units as described in Contract Documents

### 1.2 REFERENCES

A. Reference Standards:

1. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, & Air-Conditioning Engineers:

a. ASHRAE Standard 84-1991, 'Procedure for Testing Air to Air Heat Exchangers.'

### 1.3 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Warranty energy transfer element for ten years from date of substantial completion of Project.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
2. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ASHRAE 84, "Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers."

B. UL Compliance:

1. Packaged heat recovery ventilators shall comply with requirements in UL 1812, "Ducted Heat Recovery Ventilators."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Approved.

1. RenewAire, Madison, WI www.renewaire.com.
2. Cook.

B. Capacities:

1. Element rated by Manufacturer using method described in ASHRAE Standard 84. Exceed 70 percent temperature efficiency.
2. Applicable for range of ventilation up to 860 cfm in each air stream without disposition of dust in elements.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Energy Recovery Units:

1. Construction:

a. Vertical or Horizontal Configuration.
b. Fixed plate element.
c. 20 ga galvanized steel case with lapped corners.
d. Leveling legs.
e. Access door to blowers, energy transfer elements, and filters.

1) Gasketed to provide air tight seal.
2) Insulated with 1/4 inch Rubatex.
3) Attached to unit using stainless steel fasteners.

2. Duct Openings: Four each 12" round duct collars suitable for connection to duct work.
3. Blowers:

a. Forward curved blades directionally driven by open, drip-proof PSC motor rated for continuous duty.
b. Motor: Two, 0.75 HP.
c. Baked enamel finish.

4. 24 VAC control voltage.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Vibration Isolators:

1. Horizontal Installation:

a. Neoprene hanger type with load of 75 lbs maximum.
b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.

1) RH by Kinetics Noise Control, Dublin, OH www.kineticsnoise.com.
2) Mason Industries, Hauppage, NY www.mason-ind.com.
3) RH by Vibration Mounting & Controls, Bloomingdale, NJ www.vmc-kdc.com.

2. Vertical Installation: 4 inches square by 1/2 inch thick minimum neoprene type vibration isolation pads.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Provide evidence of independent testing of energy transfer elements by certification facility, establishing flame spread rating of 18 and smoke generation rating of 22. Meet NFPA 94-A and NFPA 94B requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION:

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install vibration isolator on each hanger rod supporting horizontal unit and under each corner of vertical unit.

B. Double nut all threaded rod hanger connections to lock in position.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 15900 – AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROLS

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the Building Management System (BMS) control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including open protocol control components for terminal heating and cooling units.

B. Related Sections include the following found in Division 15 and 16 Sections of the Specifications:

1. Fire Alarm Systems.
2. Basic Mechanical Requirements.
3. Heat Pumps.
4. Pumps.
5. Energy Recovery Ventilator.
6. Ceiling mounted Exhaust Fans.
7. Test and Balance.
8. Basic Electrical Requirements.
9. Cables, Low Voltage. (600 Volts and below)
10. Wiring Devices.
11. Motor Control Centers.
12. Basic Electrical Materials.
13. Variable Frequency Drives.

### 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION Ethernet (IEEE 802.3), peer-to-peer CSMA/CD

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment, and service necessary for a complete and operating temperature control system, utilizing a high speed peer to peer network of interoperable Direct Digital Controls (DDC), Graphical User Interface (GUI) with color graphic displays available for a minimum of at least p 64 possible client computers, and electronic interfaces and actuation devices, as shown on the drawings and as described herein.

B. The Local Area Network (LAN) shall be either a 10 or 100 Mpbs Ethernet network supporting BACnet, Java, XML, HTTP, and CORBA IIOP for maximum flexibility for integration of building data with enterprise information systems and providing support for multiple Universal Network Controllers (UNCs), user workstations and a local host computer system.

C. The Enterprise Ethernet (IEEE 802.3) LAN shall utilize Carrier Sense Multiple/Access/Collision Detect (CSMA/CD), Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) operating at 10 or 100 Mbps.

D. The TAC-IA system will consist of an open architecture that utilizes EIA standard 709.1, the LonTalk™ protocol, as the common communication protocol between all controllers and integral ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet functionality to assure interoperability between all system components. Both the LonTalk™ protocol and the ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet

protocol are required to assure that the project is fully supported by the leading HVAC open protocol to reduce future building maintenance, upgrade, and expansion costs.

E. Where utilized by a LonMark/LonWorks based Control System, LonTalk™ packets may be encapsulated into TCP/IP messages to take advantage of existing infrastructure or to increase network bandwidth.

1. Any such encapsulation of the LonTalk™ protocol into IP datagrams shall conform to existing LonMark™ guide-lines for such encapsulation and shall be based on industry standard protocols.
2. The products used in constructing the BMS shall be LonMark™ compliant.
3. In those instances in which Lon-Mark™ devices are not available, the BMS contractor shall provide LonWorks™ devices with application source code, device resource files, and external interface definitions.

F. The software tools required to network manage both LonTalk™ protocol and the ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet protocol must be provided with the system. Drawings are diagrammatic only. Equipment and labor not specifically referred to herein or on the plans that are required to meet the functional intent, shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner. Minimum BACnet compliance is Level 3; with the ability to support data read and write functionality. Physical connection of BACnet devices shall be via Ethernet/Ethernet IP or MS/TP.

a. Complete temperature control system to be DDC with electronic sensors and electronic/electric actuation of dampers and electronic actuation of terminal equipment valves and actuators as specified herein. The BMS is intended to seamlessly connect

G. All work described in this section shall be installed, wired, circuit tested and calibrated by factory certified technicians qualified for this work and in the regular employment of the authorized office representing the controls manufacturer. The authorized office shall have a minimum of 10 years of installation experience with the manufacturer and shall provide documentation in the bid and submittal package verifying longevity of the installing company's relationship with the manufacturer when requested. Supervision, calibration and checkout of the system shall be by the employees of the authorized office and shall not be subcontracted. The control contractor shall have an in place support facility within 50 miles of the site with factory certified technicians and engineers, spare parts inventory and all necessary test and diagnostic equipment for the installed system, and the control contractor shall have emergency service available.

1.4 INSTALLATION OF PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER THIS SECTION.

A. Sections from Division 15 – Ductwork Accessories:
1. Automatic Dampers.
2. Terminal Unit Controls.

1.5 PRODUCTS NOT FURNISHED OR INSTALLED BUT INTEGRATED WITH THE WORK OF THIS SECTION.
1. Variable Frequency Drives

B. Sections from Division16 - Fire Alarm System.
1. Smoke Detectors (duct).

1.6 SUBMITTALS.

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.

1. Each control device labeled with setting or adjustable range of control.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
3. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
4. Written description of sequence of operation.
5. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
6. Schedule of valves including close-off and flow characteristics.
7. Trunk cable schematic showing programmable control unit locations and trunk data conductors.
8. Listing of connected data points, including connected control unit and input device.
9. System graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, and operator notations.
10. System configuration showing peripheral devices, batteries, power supplies, diagrams, modems, and interconnections.

C. External Interface Files: XIF files or object diagrams for each DDC system component (Custom Application Controller and Application Specific Controller) proposed.

D. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:

1. Engineering, Installation, Operation and Maintenance manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
5. Licenses, guarantee, and warranty documents for all equipment and systems.

E. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.

F. Maintenance Data: For systems to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Include the following:
1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device and compressed air station.
2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
5. Calibration records and list of set points.

G. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of control components, including control units, thermostats, and sensors. Revise Shop Drawings to reflect actual installation and operating sequences.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE.

A. **Important:** Bids by wholesalers, distributors, mechanical contractors, ABCS, ACS, and non-franchised contractors shall not be acceptable. The intent of this is to ensure expertise, accountability, single point responsibility for the TAC-IA DDC System and the avoidance of conflict of interests with other divisions and contractors.

B. The system manufacturer shall, as a minimum, manufacture and supply the Custom Application Controller, Application Specific Controller, Unitary Equipment Controller, Advanced Application Controller, Graphical User Interface, damper actuators, and valve actuator assemblies., except where stated otherwise in this specification.

C. All work described in this section shall be installed, wired, circuit tested by TAC qualified and certified electricians that are licensed journeymen or enrolled in a qualified electrician apprentice program and properly supervised according to state and local ordinances. Project Management shall be furnished by a highly qualified Master Electrician with a minimum of 10-years on-campus (UVU) experience. Also work described in this section shall be calibrated by factory certified technicians qualified for this work and in the regular employment of the temperature control system manufacturer's local field office.

D. The Building Management System contractor shall have a full service facility within 50 miles of the project that is staffed with engineers trained in Integrating Interoperable TAC-IA Systems and technicians fully capable of providing LonMark/LonWorks and/or BACnet instructions and routine emergency maintenance service on all system components.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

F. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems.".

G. Comply with National Electric Code, UL-916 Energy Management Systems, LonMark™, ULC, FCC Part 15, subpart J, Class B Computing Devices.

H. Comply with EIA Standard 709.1 LonTalk™ protocol for DDC system control components.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING.

A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to unit manufacturer.

1.9 COORDINATION.

A. Coordinate location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.

B. Coordinate equipment from other divisions including Motor-Control Centers," "Panelboards," and "Fire Alarm" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with those systems.

C. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical circuits for control units and operator workstation.

D. Coordinate location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

E. Coordinate with the Owner's IT department on locations for UNC's, Ethernet communication cabling and TCP/IP addresses.

1.10 WARRANTY AND MAINTENANCE.

A. All components, system software, and parts furnished and installed by the BMS contractor shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for 1 year of substantial completion. Labor to repair, reprogram, or replace these components shall be furnished by the BMS contractor at no charge during normal working hours during the warranty period. Materials furnished but not installed by the BMS contractor shall be covered to the extent of the product only. Installation labor shall be the responsibility of the trade contractor performing the installation. All corrective software modifications made during warranty periods shall be updated on all user documentation and on user and manufacturer archived software disks. The Contractor shall respond to the owner's request for warranty service within 24 standard working hours.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS AND INSTALLING CONTRACTORS

1. Schneider Electric/TAC I/A-Series System as provided and installed by Utah-Yamas Controls Inc. Point of Contact Bob Hooper 801-990-1950.
2. No other contractor or products considered.

2.2 DDC EQUIPMENT

A. The Operator Work Station, Graphical User interface as well as the associated Web services are all existing. This contractor shall generate graphics depicting this remodel and all affected mechanical equipment. All new controllers shall be added to the existing communication trunk so that all building ATC functions can be viewed and managed from multiple locations on campus.

B. Universal Network Controllers (UNC) shall employ a Niagara Framework™ software and hardware architecture solution (solution may be an OEM, licensed or re-branded product implementing the Niagara Framework™) as the foundation for managing and facilitating all services, global and communication functions.

1. The Universal Network Controllers (UNC) shall provide the interface between the LAN or WAN and the field control devices, and provide global supervisory control functions over the control devices connected to the UNC. It shall be capable of executing application control programs to provide:
   a. Calendar functions
   b. Scheduling
   c. Trending
   d. Alarm monitoring and routing
   e. Time synchronization by means of an Atomic Clock Internet site including automatic synchronization
   f. Integration of LonWorks controller data and BACnet controller data
   g. Network Management functions for all LonWorks based devices

C. Application Specific Control Units:

Single board construction comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, RAM/EEPROM memory for custom control and unitary applications. ASCs shall be provided for Unit Ventilators, Fan Coils, Heat Pumps, Rooftop Units, and other applications as shown on the drawings. To assure complete interoperability, all ASCs firmware shall support all mandatory and all optional LonMark™ Standard Network Variables (SNVTs) for their LonMark™ profile as documented by the LonMark™ Interoperability Association. Bidder shall provide proof of ASC compliance for all the mandatory and all optional LonMark™ SNVTs. ASCs shall be based on the Echelon Neuron 3150 microprocessor working with the ASCs stand alone control program.

1. Units monitor or control each input/output point; process information; and download from the operator station.
2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
   a. Peer to peer primary network level communications with automatic communications loss detection to maintain normal control functionality regardless of available network communications.
   b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse input/output.
   c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
   d. Appropriate LonMark™ profiles for specific unitary applications.
   e. Support for all mandatory and optional LonMark™ Standard Network Variable Types (SNVTs) for their LonMark™ profile as documented by the LonMark™ Interoperability Association
   f. Internal customizable safeties and limits to prevent third party LonMark™ tools from providing improper and unrealistic inputs to ASC's.
3. Local operator interface port located on ASC and ASC sensor provides for download from or upload to portable workstation. All Lon bus devices shall be accessible from either port.
4. Communication: ASC's shall communicate with the Building Controller and CAC's at a baud rate of not less than 78.8K baud using LonTalk™ communications protocol (EIA 709.1).
5. ASC units monitor or control each input/output point; process information; and at least 50 expressions for customized HVAC control including mathematical equations, boolean logic, PID control loops with anti-windup, sequencers, timers, interlocks, thermostats, counters, interlocks, compare, limit, and alarms.
6. All ASC Controller setpoints shall be digital display setpoints with dual setpoint limits (integral hard limits which the user cannot exceed above and below and independent soft limits which are hidden from the user). All digital setpoints shall be network retentive after power outages and after replacement of sensor.
   1) Room Sensor

D. ASC –Heat Pump, or Packaged Rooftop Controller Functionality.

Controls shall be microprocessor based as shown in the drawings or indicated in the sequence of operations. The ASC shall be a single integrated package consisting of a microprocessor, power supply, field terminations, and application software. The units shall be started and stopped from the BMS. A low limit protection thermostat in the mixed air section of the unit shall close down the outdoor air damper, open coil valves, and alarm the BMS when a temperature below 38°F (adjustable) is sensed. All input/output signals shall be directly hardwired to the ASC controller. In all cases, the controller shall automatically resume proper operation following the return of power to, or control by the ASC.

1. All ASCs must have an operating temperature range -40°F to 140°F and 5 to 95% RH, non condensing because they are located in the proximity of extreme temperatures (hot water/steam pipes or the outdoor air.)

2. All ASCs shall have capability for both ASHRAE Cycle II and ASHRAE Cycle III fully tested and validated. Bidder shall provide application documentation for ASC ASHRAE cycle II and III compliance including sequence of operation, controller program, and available SNVT's. The control program shall also be fully customizable in the field to accommodate any local or project specific requirements that may be required.
3. All duct averaging sensors for ASCs must be true continuous averaging units that sense the mean temperature over the complete length of the sensor end to end. Sensors that provide four or nine sensing points, which may be accurate due to air temperature stratifications, are not acceptable.
4. All ASCs shall be easily replaceable for ease of future maintenance and to minimize downtime.
5. The outputs of the ASC shall be of the relay Form C and universal analog form. All digital outputs shall be relay type Form C. ASC devices utilizing non-relay outputs shall provide an interface relay for all points. All analog outputs shall be programmable for their start points and span to accommodate the control devices.

E. LANs:

Capacity for a minimum of 64 client workstations connected to multi-user, multitasking environment with concurrent capability to access DDC network or control units.

1. Enterprise Network LAN
   a. Media: Ethernet (IEEE 802.3), peer-to-peer CSMA/CD, operating at 10 or 100 Mbps, cable 10 Base-T, UTP-8 wire, category 5
2. Primary Controller Network LAN
   a. Media: LonTalk™ (EIA 709.1), peer to peer, FTT-10 operating at 78.8K.
3. Secondary Network LAN ( If Required)
   a. Media: LonTalk™ (EIA 709.1), peer to peer, FTT-10 operating at 78.8K
4. Remote Connection
   a. ISDN, ADSL, T1 or dial-up connection, monthly charges paid by building owner

F. Software: Existing

## 2.3 CONTROL PANELS

A. Local Control Panels: Unitized NEMA 1 cabinet with suitable brackets for wall or floor mounting, located adjacent to each system under automatic control. Provide common keying for all panels.
1. Fabricate panels 0.06-inch thick, furniture-quality steel, or extruded-aluminum alloy, totally enclosed, with hinged doors and keyed lock and with manufacturer's standard shop-painted finish.
2. Interconnections between internal and face-mounted devices pre-wired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL Listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
3. Door-Mounted Equipment: Flush-mount (on hinged door) manual switches, including damper-positioning switches, changeover switches, thermometers, and gauges.
4. Provide ON/OFF power switch with over-current protection for control power sources to each local panel.

## 2.4 SENSORS

A. Electronic Temperature Sensors: Vibration and corrosion resistant for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.
1. Resistance Temperature Detectors: Platinum, thermistor, or balco

a. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.2 percent at calibration point; thermistors shall have a maximum 5 year drift of no more than .225°F maximum error of no more than .36°F
b. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable
c. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 6 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 4 sq. ft.
d. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 60 inches, long, flexible for use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 4 sq. ft.; 264 inches long, flexible for use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 16 sq. ft; length as required.
e. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
f. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.

2. Room Temperature Sensors as manufactured by TAC will be: MN-S1 (Plain Cover), MN-S2 (Sensor and override) and MN-S3 (Sensor with set point adjustment, override and LCD Readout)

B. Equipment operation sensors as follows:
1. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Current-sensing relay with current transformers, adjustable and set to 175 percent of rated motor current.

C. Electronic Damper Position Indication: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

## 2.5 ACTUATORS

A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action under all environmental conditions (temperature, low power voltage fluctuations, tight seal damper design, maximum air and water flow forces).
1. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
2. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2": Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
3. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2": Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
6. Acceptable manufacturers are Belimo
-AF24-SR 133in-lb (Spring Return 2-10VDC or 4-20mA signal)
-NF24-SR 60 in-lb (Spring Return 2-10VDC or 4-20mA signal)
7. Electronic Damper and Valve Actuators: Direct-coupled type non-hydraulic designed for minimum 100,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque. The actuator shall have rating of not less than twice the thrust needed for actual operation of the damper or valve
8. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
9. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
10. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on non-spring-return actuators.
11. Actuators shall have the ability to be tandem mounted.
12. All spring-return actuators shall have a manual override. Complete manual override shall take no more than 10 turns.
13. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24V ac or dc, Maximum 10VA.
14. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 15 VA at 24V ac.

15. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
16. Temperature Rating: -22°F to 140°F.
17. Run Time: 200 seconds open, 40 seconds closed.
18. All actuators shall have a 5-year warranty.
19. Valves:
    a. Size for torque required for valve close-off at maximum pump differential pressure (regardless of water loop system pressures).
    b. Valve and Actuators shall come from the factory fully assembled.
    c. Spring Return Manual Override shall come with a 10 Degree Valve Preload to assure tight close off.

    d. Acceptable manufacturers shall be Belimo AF24-SR or Schneider Electric/TAC

## 2.6 DAMPERS

A. Dampers: AMCA-rated, parallel, opposed blade designs; 0.1084 inch minimum, galvanized-steel frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.0635 inch galvanized steel with maximum blade width of .8 inches.
   1. Blades shall be secured to 1/2-inch diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with nylon blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
   2. Operating Temperature Range: -40°F to 200°F
   3. For standard applications, include optional closed-cell neoprene edging.
   4. For low-leakage applications, use parallel- or opposed-blade design with inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. of damper area, at differential pressure of 4 inches wg. when the damper is being held by torque of 50 in. x lbf; when tested according to AMCA 500D.
   5. Damper shall be Ruskin CD 46 or approved equal.

## 2.7 CONTROL CABLE

A. Electronic and Fiber-Optic Cable for Control Wiring: As specified in Division 16 Section "Control/Signal Transmission Media."

B. LON communication cable shall be category 4.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that conditioned power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.

B. Verify that duct, pipe, and equipment mounted devices and wiring are installed before proceeding with installation.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install equipment level and plumb.

B. Install software in control units and operator workstation. Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.

C. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.

D. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation. Locate all 60 inches above the floor.
   1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.

E. Install guards or tamper proof enclosures on thermostats in the following locations:
   1. Entrances.
   2. Public areas.
   3. Where indicated.

F. Install automatic dampers according to Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories.

G. Install damper actuators on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.

H. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."

I. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification."

J. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Division 15 Sections specifying air ducts.

K. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Division 16 Section "Control/Signal Transmission Media."

## 3.3 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes."

B. Install building wire and cable according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

C. Install signal and communication cable according to Division 16 Section "Control/Signal Transmission Media."
   1. Cable may be installed in plenums where reasonable access is available as allowed by the National Electrical Code and local area codes.
   2. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
   3. Install exposed cable in raceway.
   4. Install concealed and inaccessible cable in raceway.
   5. Bundle and harness multi-conductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
   6. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
   7. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
   1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

B. Ground equipment.
   1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.

B. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment.
   1. Start, test, and adjust control systems.
   2. Demonstrate compliance with requirements, including calibration and testing, and control sequences.
   3. Adjust, calibrate, and fine tune circuits and equipment to achieve sequence of operation specified.

C. Verify DDC as follows:
   1. Verify software including automatic restart, control sequences, scheduling, reset controls, and occupied/unoccupied cycles.
   2. Verify operation of operator workstation.
   3. Verify local control units including self-diagnostics.

3.6 ON-SITE ASSISTANCE

A. Occupancy Adjustments: Within one year of date of Substantial Completion, provide one Project site visit, as scheduled by Owner, to adjust and calibrate components and to assist Owner's personnel in making program changes and in adjusting sensors and controls to suit actual conditions for one visit addressing summer specific sequences and operations and one visit addressing winter specific sequences and operations. The site visit will consist of no more than 8 hours.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 15975 - GENERAL TESTING, ADJUSTING, BALANCING AND COMMISSIONING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes testing, adjusting, and balancing HVAC systems to produce design objectives, including the following:

1. Balancing airflow and water flow within distribution systems, including submains, branches, and terminals, to indicated quantities according to specified tolerances.
2. Adjusting total HVAC systems to provide indicated quantities.
3. Measuring electrical performance of HVAC equipment.
4. Setting quantitative performance of HVAC equipment.
5. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
6. Measuring sound and vibration.
7. Reporting results of the activities and procedures specified in this Section.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Adjust: To regulate fluid flow rate and air patterns at the terminal equipment, such as to reduce fan speed or adjust a damper.

B. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system, including submains, branches, and terminals, according to design quantities.

C. Draft: A current of air, when referring to localized effect caused by one or more factors of high air velocity, low ambient temperature, or direction of airflow, whereby more heat is withdrawn from a person's skin than is normally dissipated.

D. Procedure: An approach to and execution of a sequence of work operations to yield repeatable results.

E. Report Forms: Test data sheets for recording test data in logical order.

F. Static Head: The pressure due to the weight of the fluid above the point of measurement. In a closed system, static head is equal on both sides of the pump.

G. Suction Head: The height of fluid surface above the centerline of the pump on the suction side.

H. System Effect: A phenomenon that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.

I. System Effect Factors: Allowances used to calculate a reduction of the performance ratings of a fan when installed under conditions different from those presented when the fan was performance tested.

J. Terminal: A point where the controlled medium, such as fluid or energy, enters or leaves the distribution system.

K. Test: A procedure to determine quantitative performance of a system or equipment.

L. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agent: The entity responsible for performing and reporting the testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

M. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

N. AMCA: Air Movement and Control Association.

O. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

P. SMACNA: Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 90 days from the Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 2 copies of the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3 of this Section.

B. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 120 days from the Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 2 copies of the testing, adjusting, and balancing strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in Part 3 "Preparation" Article below. Include a complete set of report forms intended for use on this Project.

C. Certified Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Reports: Submit 2 copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by the testing, adjusting, and balancing Agent.

D. Sample Report Forms: Submit 2 sets of sample testing, adjusting, and balancing report forms.

E. Warranty: Submit 2 copies of special warranty specified in the "Warranty" Article below.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Agent Qualifications: Engage a testing, adjusting, and balancing agent certified by either AABC or NEBB. Balancing may only be performed by the following:

1. Bonneville Test & Balance.
2. BTC Service.
3. Certified Test & Balance.
4. RS Analysis.
5. Test & Balance Inc.
6. Payson Sheetmetal.

B. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Conference: Meet with the Owner's and the Architect's representatives on approval of the testing, adjusting, and balancing strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Ensure the participation of testing, adjusting, and balancing team members, equipment manufacturers' authorized service representatives, HVAC controls Installer, and other support personnel. Provide 14ays' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Agenda Items: Include at least the following:

a. Submittal distribution requirements.

b. Contract Documents examination report.
c. Testing, adjusting, and balancing plan.
d. Work schedule and Project site access requirements.
e. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
f. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.

C. Certification of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Reports: Certify the testing, adjusting, and balancing field data reports. This certification includes the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.
2. Certify that the testing, adjusting, and balancing team complied with the approved testing, adjusting, and balancing plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

D. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Reports: Use standard forms from AABC's "National Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" or frame NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."

E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, and Accuracy: As described in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems," Section II, "Required Instrumentation for NEBB Certification."

F. Instrumentation Calibration: Calibrate instruments at least every 6 months or more frequently if required by the instrument manufacturer.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Partial Owner Occupancy: The Owner may occupy completed areas of the building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with the Owner during testing, adjusting, and balancing operations to minimize conflicts with the Owner's operations.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, HVAC controls installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist testing, adjusting, and balancing activities.

B. Notice: Provide 7 days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

C. Perform testing, adjusting, and balancing after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: The national project performance guarantee specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. National Project Performance Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on AABC or NEBB forms stating that AABC or NEBB will assist in completing the requirements of the Contract Documents if the testing,

adjusting, and balancing Agent fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee includes the following provisions:

1. The certified Agent has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Contract Documents to become familiar with project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems and equipment.

1. Contract Documents are defined in the General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract.
2. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.

C. Examine project record documents described in Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents."

D. Examine equipment performance data, including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system. Calculate system effect factors to reduce the performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from those presented when the equipment was performance tested at the factory. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," Sections 7 through 10; or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems--Duct Design," Sections 5 and 6. Compare this data with the design data and installed conditions.

E. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Specification Sections have been performed.

F. Examine system and equipment test reports.

G. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

H. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.

I. Examine air-handling equipment to ensure clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes and mixing boxes, to verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

K. Examine plenum ceilings, utilized for supply air, to verify that they are airtight. Verify that pipe penetrations and other holes are sealed.

L. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.

M. Examine 3-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

N. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

O. Examine open-piping-system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

P. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.

Q. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:

1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices operate by the intended controller.
2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions. This includes dampers in multizone units, mixing boxes, and variable-air-volume terminals.
4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including 2-way valves and 3-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected.
5. Thermostats and humidistats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
8. Controller set points are set at design values. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from design values.
9. Interlocked systems are operating.
10. Changeover from heating to cooling mode occurs according to design values.

R. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a testing, adjusting, and balancing plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:

1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so design conditions for system operations can be met.

## 3.3 GENERAL TESTING AND BALANCING PROCEDURES

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC or NEBB national standards and this Section.

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to the insulation Specifications for this Project.

C. Mark equipment settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

## 3.4 FUNDAMENTAL AIR SYSTEMS' BALANCING PROCEDURES

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.

E. Check the airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.

## 3.5 CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS' BALANCING PROCEDURES

A. The procedures in this Article apply to constant-volume supply-, return-, and exhaust-air systems. Additional procedures are required for variable-air-volume, multizone, dual-duct, induction-unit supply-air systems and process exhaust-air systems. These additional procedures are specified in other articles in this Section.

B. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable rpm listed by the fan manufacturer.

1. Measure fan static pressures to determine actual static pressure as follows:

a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practicable and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from flexible connection and downstream from duct restrictions.
d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.

2. Measure static pressure across each air-handling unit component.

a. Simulate dirty filter operation and record the point at which maintenance personnel must change filters.

3. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices such as sound traps, heat recovery equipment, and air washers under final balanced conditions.
4. Compare design data with installed conditions to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Compare actual system effect factors with calculated system effect factors to identify where variations occur. Recommend corrective action to align design and actual conditions.
5. Adjust fan speed higher or lower than design to achieve design conditions. Make required adjustments to pulley sizes, motor sizes, and electrical connections to accommodate fan-speed changes.
6. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full cooling, full heating, and economizer modes to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

C. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to design airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.

a. Where sufficient space in submains and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

2. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submains and branch ducts to design airflows within specified tolerances.

D. Measure terminal outlets and inlets without making adjustments.

1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or the outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

E. Adjust terminal outlets and inlets for each space to design airflows within specified tolerances of design values. Make adjustments using volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at the air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in the same room or space to within specified tolerances of design quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

## 3.6 FUNDAMENTAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:

1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
2. Check expansion tank liquid level.
3. Check makeup-water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation and set at design flow.
5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type, unless several terminal valves are kept open.
6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

## 3.7 HYDRONIC SYSTEMS' BALANCING PROCEDURES

A. Determine water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures, except for positive-displacement pumps:

1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Verify with the pump manufacturer that this will not damage pump. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on the manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and confirm that the pump has the intended impeller size.
2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark the pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on the pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 5 percent of design.

B. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.

C. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.

1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.

D. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than design flow.

E. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of design flow rate as follows:

1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over design flow.

2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over design flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over design flow.
3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.

F. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures, including outdoor-air temperature.

G. Measure the differential-pressure control valve settings existing at the conclusions of balancing.

## 3.8 VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS' ADDITIONAL PROCEDURES

A. Balance systems with automatic 2- and 3-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

## 3.9 PRIMARY-SECONDARY-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS' ADDITIONAL PROCEDURES

A. Balance the primary system crossover flow first, then balance the secondary system.

## 3.10 MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating if high-efficiency motor.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass for the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations, including controller manufacturer, model and serial numbers, and nameplate data.

## 3.11 HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Water Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperatures of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperatures of entering and leaving air for cooling coils designed for more than 5000 cfm.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

B. Heat Pumps: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Entering water temperature.

2. Entering air temperature.
3. Leaving air temperature.
4. Air Flow

## 3.12 TEMPERATURE TESTING

A. During testing, adjusting, and balancing, report need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.

B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of 2 successive 8-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.

C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

## 3.13 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION

A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.

B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.

C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.

D. Verify operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).

E. Verify free travel and proper operation of control devices such as damper and valve operators.

F. Verify sequence of operation of control devices. Note air pressures and device positions and correlate with airflow and water-flow measurements. Note the speed of response to input changes.

G. Confirm interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.

H. Confirm interaction of interlock and lockout systems.

I. Verify main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.

J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine if the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.

K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

## 3.14 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans: Plus 5 to minus 10 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: 0 to minus 10 percent.
3. Heat pump loop Flow Rate: 0 to minus 5 percent.

3.15 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article above, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: As Work progresses, prepare reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.16 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in 3-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.

B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.

1. Include a list of the instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

C. Final Report Contents: In addition to the certified field report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include approved Shop Drawings and Product Data.

D. General Report Data: In addition to the form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of testing, adjusting, and balancing Agent.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of testing, adjusting, and balancing Agent who certifies the report.
10. Summary of contents, including the following:

    a. Design versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

11. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
12. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from design values.
14. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms, including the following:

a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
b. Conditions of filters.
c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
d. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
e. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
f. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present with single-line diagrams and include the following:

1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.

F. Equipment Test Reports: For all equipment tested:

1. Unit Data: Include the following:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.

2. Motor Data: Include the following:

a. Make and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.

3. Test Data: Include design and actual values for the following: (all elements of the system that were tested, including air and water flows, static pressures, pump hoods, inlet and outlet static pressures, inlet, outlet pressure type of coils, raws, circuits face areas, inlet, outer wet bulb, dry bulb temperatures, duct sizes tested, inlet and outlet flows temperatures and pressures and all other pertinent data. The report to be organized per each item tested.)

a. Total rate in cfm, gpm and lbs/hr.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
f. Preheat coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
g. Cooling coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Heating coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
i. Outside airflow in cfm.
j. Return airflow in cfm.
k. Outside-air damper position.
l. Return-air damper position.

G. Instrument Calibration Reports: For instrument calibration, include the following:

1. Report Data: Include the following:

   a. Instrument type and make.
   b. Serial number.
   c. Application.
   d. Dates of use.
   e. Dates of calibration.

## 3.17 BUILDING ENVELOPE LEAKAGE PREFORMANCE TEST

Provide the necessary equipment, fans, pre-heaters, air flow measurement devices and all other items to measure the air leakage in the building. With all HVAC Systems off and all openings closed maintain the building to a positive 0.03 in. sp. and record required pressurization air flow, outdoor air temperature, building space temperature, and make-up air temperature. The mechanical HVAC systems, if appropriately equipped, may be used to help perform this test.

## 3.18 WARRANTY

During the first year and as part of the warrantee period this division shall make the necessary adjustment to change air pressurization, volumes on the air and water systems at no cost to the owner.

## 3.19 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 120 days of completing testing, adjusting, and balancing, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional inspections, testing, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 15975

## SECTION 15993 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes control sequences for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 15 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" for control equipment and devices and for submittal requirements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct digital control.

#### 1.4 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

A. GENERAL:

1. All heat pumps, ERV's, fans, pumps, etc shall be monitored through the ATC Control System with proof of flow devices. The run time of all monitored motors shall be available at the ATC Control. A maintenance alarm message shall be programmed at a specific run time as designated by the system operator. The alarm message shall be as designated by the operator.
2. Inputs and outputs required to meet the sequence of operation shall be provided.
3. Although specific set points, time periods and reset values are listed in the sequence of operation, all values shall be changeable through the operator's terminal or portable operators' terminal. The initial occupied/unoccupied schedules shall be as designated by the owner's representative. Program changes requested by the mechanical engineer during the warranty period shall be included at no additional cost to the owner.

B. ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION UNITS

1. The energy recovery ventilation unit is enabled when any of the heat pumps served by it are in occupied mode. The supply fan and exhaust fan run continuously subject to smoke detectors and a fire alarm interlock.
2. Monitor supply air, return air, outside air (downstream of frost control heater), and exhaust air temperatures.

C. HEAT PUMP CONTROL

1. The water source heat pumps receive DDC zone controllers which cycle the compressor and reversing valve with the supply fan on in occupied mode to provide for heating and cooling in the space. A discharge sensor monitors the discharge temperature of the heat pump as well as a safety alarm output of the heat pump to the DDC zone controller to notify the BMS system there is a safety trip condition with the heat pump. In the unoccupied mode the heat pumps cycles fan to provide night setback/set up heating/cooling.
2. Provide morning warm-up mode. Heat pumps shall operate in the heating mode with fan on and the ERV shall be off.
3. An override on all thermostats provides for after hours operation
4. De-superheater. Cycle circulation pump when heat pump compressor is in operation.

D. BUILDING SYSTEM PUMPS

1. System pumps P-1 and P-2 shall operate in primary/standby and when any of the heat pumps require flow.
2. System pumps P-1 and P-2 shall be controlled through "HAND-OFF-AUTO" switches. In the "AUTO" position, the pumps shall run when any of the heat pumps require flow. Pumps shall be on for a minimum of 30 minutes when started. The local DDC controllers shall alternate the lead pump on a monthly basis. If a pump does not run when it is commanded to do so, the second pump shall start and an alarm shall be sent to the DDC system.
3. Provide supply and return temperature sensors connected to the DDC system.
4. The two building pumps are controlled by VFD's. The DDC system shall modulate the pump VFD speed to maintain a heating water differential pressure set point of 15 PSI (adjustable).
5. The ATC contractor shall provide two differential pressure sensors for monitoring the heating loop pressure. Both shall be hardwired back the DDC controller responsible for controlling the heating water pump VFD speed. No indirect points will be acceptable. Both pressure sensors shall be located near the ends of the main building water loop as indicated by the engineer. The DDC system shall use the sensor that indicates the best pressure change as the heating valves in the building are opened and closed to control the VFD speed

E. DOMESTIC HOT WATER SYSTEMS

1. The 130°F system hot water heater & its associated circulation pumps shall be enabled through the DDC system & the loop pump shall run continuously.
2. A temperature sensor shall be provided by the ATC contractor for the domestic hot water systems and connected to the DDC system.

F. ELECTRICAL ROOM EXHAUST FAN

1. Exhaust fans shall be controlled via a cooling only wall mounted thermostat provided by the ATC contractor. These fans shall operate regardless of building schedule whenever the temperature in the space that they serve rises above 75 degF (adjustable).

END OF SECTION 15993

**SECTION 16051 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
3. Grout.
4. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-dieneter polymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:

1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Metal Thickness:

a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.

C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.

E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

F. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch** annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.

G. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry

1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.

H. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants.".

I. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

J. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

K. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Provide steel pipe sleeves and seal penetrations using NBR.

## 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

## 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 16051

**SECTION 16060 - GROUNDING AND BONDING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Field quality-control test reports.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
4. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
5. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

2.2 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.

1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Lighting circuits.
3. Receptacle circuits.
4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
6. Flexible raceway runs.
7. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
8. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.

B. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.

1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bus.
2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

C. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

D. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Installbonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at ground test wells.

a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

B. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 16060

# SECTION 16073 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

D. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
2. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
3. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
4. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

C. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

## 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.

4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27 complying with MSS SP-69 Spring-tension clamps.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.

C. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

## 3.3 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

END OF SECTION 16073

# SECTION 16074 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Isolation pads.
2. Spring isolators.
3. Restrained spring isolators.
4. Channel support systems.
5. Restraint cables.
6. Hanger rod stiffeners.
7. Anchorage bushings and washers.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 16 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. The IBC: International Building Code.

B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. SEISMIC RESTRAINT

1. The work in this section consists of furnishing engineering and materials necessary for vibration isolation and seismic restraints for equipment contained herein for the project.
2. Other sections of DIVISION 16 form a part of this section. Refer to all sections for a complete description of the work.
3. All electrical equipment .75 HP and over listed in the equipment schedule shall be mounted on vibration isolators to prevent the transmission of objectionable vibration and vibration induced sound to the building structure.
4. All isolation materials, flexible connectors and seismic restraints shall be of the same manufacturer and shall be selected and certified using published or factory certified data. Any

variance or non-compliance with these specification requirements shall be corrected by the contractor in an approved manner.

5. The contractor and manufacturer of the isolation and seismic equipment shall refer to the isolator and seismic restraint schedule which lists isolator types, isolator deflections and seismic restraint type. Vibration isolators shall be selected in accordance with the equipment or conduit weight distribution so as to produce reasonably uniform deflections.
6. Unless otherwise specified, all electrical equipment and conduit shall be restrained to resist seismic forces. Restraints shall maintain equipment and conduit in a captive position. Restraint devices shall be designed and selected to meet the seismic requirements as defined in the latest issue of the IBC or local jurisdiction building code.
7. These exceptions are based on IBC 2006. Verify local code is the same. The 2006 IBC requires that electrical components be given an importance factor. This importance factor is used to determine which equipment may or may not be exempt from seismic design force requirements. The component importance factor is determined as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| $I_p = 1.5$ | Life-safety component is required to function after an earthquake. |
| $I_p = 1.5$ | Component contains hazardous or flammable material. |
| $I_p = 1.5$ | Storage racks in occupancies open to the general public (e.g., warehouse retail stores). |
| $I_p = 1.0$ | All other components. |

8. In addition, for structures in Seismic Use Group IV (Buildings having essential facility required for post earthquake recovery, and those containing substantial quantities of hazardous substances as designated by local building officials),

| | |
|---|---|
| $I_p = 1.5$ | For components needed for continued operation of the facility or whose failure could impair the continued operation of the facility. This project shall use an $I_p = 1.5$. |

B. SEISMIC RESTRAINT SHALL NOT BE REQUIRED FOR THE FOLLOWING:

1. Rigidly floor mounted electrical components in all seismic design categories, where I p = 1.0 and flexible connections between the components and associated conduit are provided, that are mounted at 4 feet (1219 mm) or less above a floor level and weight 400 pounds (1780 N) or less and are not critical to the continued operation of the structure. Suspended, wall mounted and flexibly mounted equipment are not included in this exclusion.
2. Hanging, wall mounted, and flexibly supported electrical components that weigh 20 pounds (89 N) or less, where I p = 1.0 and flexible connections are provided between the components and associated conduit.
3. Conduit supported by individual clevis hangers where the distance, as measured from the top of the conduit to the supporting structure, is less than 12 inches (305mm) for the entire conduit run and the conduit can accommodate the expected deflections. Trapeze or double rod hangers where the distance from the top of the trapeze or support to the structure is less than 12 inches for the entire run. Hanger rods shall not be constructed in a manner that would subject the rod to bending moments (swivel, eye bolt, or vibration isolation hanger connection to structure).
4. High deformability conduit (steel, aluminum with screwed connections) designated as having an Ip = 1.5 and a nominal size of 1 inch (25 mm) or less where provisions are made to protect the conduit from impact or to avoid the impact of larger conduit, piping or other equipment. Note, any combination of conduit supported on a trapeze where the total weight exceeds 10 lb/ ft. must be braced.
5. High deformability conduit (steel, aluminum with screwed connections) and limited deformability conduit (PVC) designated with an Ip = 1.0 and a nominal conduit size of 1 inch and less in the electrical equipment room, or 2" and less outside the electrical equipment room.

6. Equipment items installed in-line with the mechanical duct system (e.g, fans, heat exchangers and humidifiers) with an operating weight less than 76 pounds (334 N). Equipment must be rigidly attached to duct at inlet and outlet.

C. MANUFACTURER'S RESPONSIBILITIES:
1. Manufacturer of vibration and seismic control products shall have the following responsibilities:
   a. Determine vibration isolation and seismic restraint sizes and locations.
   b. Provide conduit and equipment isolation systems and seismic restraints as scheduled or specified.
   c. Provide installation instructions and shop drawings for all materials supplied under this section of the specifications.
   d. Provide calculations to determine restraint loads resulting from seismic forces presented in local building code or IBC, Chapter 16 latest edition. Seismic calculations shall be certified by a licensed engineer in the employ of the seismic equipment manufacturer with a minimum 5 years experience. Provide calculations for all floor or roof mounted equipment 400lbs (1780 N) or greater (20lbs (89 N)or greater for Ip=1.5), all suspended or wall mounted equipment 20lbs (89 N)or greater, and vibration isolated equipment 20lbs (89 N)or greater.
   e. Seismic restraint load ratings must be certified and substantiated by testing or calculations under direct control of a registered professional engineer.
   f. Calculations and restraint device submittal drawings shall specify anchor bolt type, embedment, concrete compressive strength, minimum spacing between anchors, and minimum distances of anchors from concrete edges. Concrete anchor locations shall not be near edges, stress joints, or an existing fracture. All bolts shall be ASTM A307 or better.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The isolators and seismic restraint systems manufacturer shall be a member of the Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control Manufacturers Association (VISCMA).

B. Steel components shall be cleaned and painted with industrial enamel. All nuts, bolts and washers shall be zinc-electroplated. Structural steel bases shall be thoroughly cleaned of welding slag and primed with zinc-chromate or metal etching primer.

C. All isolators, bases and seismic restraints exposed to the weather shall utilize cadmium-plated, epoxy coat or PVC coated springs and hot dipped galvanized steel components. Nuts, bolts and washers may be zinc-electroplated. Isolators for outdoor mounted equipment shall provide adequate restraint for the greater of either wind loads required by local codes or withstand a minimum of 30 lb. / sq. ft. applied to any exposed surface of the equipment.

D. Provide a written quality control procedure that outlines complete compliance of attachment of cabling restraints to brackets. For swaged connections, provide a gage to verify swage. For screw/clamp connection, provide torque values for attachment fasteners.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Deferred-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, seismic calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1) Submittals shall be submitted to and approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.

2) Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:

a) Qualified Professional engineer licensed in the state of Utah.

B. The manufacturer of vibration isolation products shall submit the following data for each piece of isolated equipment: clearly identified equipment tag, quantity and size of vibration isolators and seismic restraints for each piece of rotating isolated equipment. Submittals for mountings and hangers incorporating springs shall include spring diameter and free height, rated deflections, and solid load. Submittals for bases shall clearly identify locations for all mountings as well as all locations for attachment points of the equipment to the mounting base. Submittals shall include seismic calculations signed and checked by a qualified licensed engineer in the employ of the manufacturer of the vibration isolators. Catalog cut sheets and installation instructions shall be included for each type of isolation mounting or seismic restraint used on equipment being isolated.

C. Submit quality assurance procedures as required under 1.4.4 at time of isolator/seismic submittals. Submittal must be stamped by a registered professional engineer who is responsible for the seismic restraint design. All vibration isolation/seismic submittals not complying with this certification will be rejected.

D. Provide shop drawings indicating location of all specification SC cable restraints required. Drawings must be stamped by manufacturer's registered professional engineer.

E. Electrical equipment manufacturers shall provide certification that their equipment is capable of resisting expected seismic loads without failure. Equipment manufacturers shall provide suitable attachment points and/or instructions for attaching seismic restraints.

F. Provide a certification from the seismic design engineer that the seismic restraints will comply with the applicable code requirements. Certification must be stamped by a registered profession engineer.

G. Provide a Certificate of Completion from the manufacturer's representative upon completion of the job.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
2. Kinetics Noise Control.
3. Mason Industries.
4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
5. Vibro Acoustics

B. Specification W: a pad type mounting consisting of two layers of ribbed elastomeric pads with a ½" poro-elastic vibration absorptive material bonded between them. Pads shall be sized for approximate deflection of 0.10" to 0.18". Pads shall be Amber / Booth Type NRC.

C. Specification A: an elastomeric mounting having a steel baseplate with mounting holes and a threaded insert at top of the mounting for attaching equipment. All metal parts shall be completely embedded in the elastomeric material. Mountings shall be designed for approximately 1/2" deflection, and incorporate a steel seismic snubber with all directional restraint. Mountings shall be Amber/Booth Type SRVD.

D. Specification B: an adjustable, freestanding, open spring mounting with combination leveling and equipment fastening bolt. The spring shall be welded to the spring mounting baseplate and compression plate for stability. The isolator shall be designed for a minimum kx/ky (horizontal-to-vertical spring rate) of 1.0. An elastomeric pad having a minimum thickness of 1/4" shall be bonded to the baseplate. Nuts, adjusting bolts and washers shall be zinc-electroplated to prevent corrosion. This type isolator must be used with specification SL seismic restraint (section 2.3.1). Isolators shall be Amber/Booth Type SW.

E. Specification C: a unitized adjustable, stable open spring isolator with a seismic restraint housing which serves as a blocking device during equipment installation. The spring package shall include an elastomeric pad for high frequency absorption at the base of the spring. The springs shall be designed for a minimum kx/ky (horizontal-to-vertical spring rate) of 1.0. Nuts, adjusting bolts and washers shall be zinc-electroplated to prevent corrosion. The spring assembly shall be removable with equipment in place and shall fit within a welded steel enclosure consisting of a top plate and rigid lower housing. Isolated seismic restraint bolts shall connect top plate to lower housing to resist seismic and wind forces in all directions and limit motion to a maximum of 1/4" movement before engaging. Surfaces that engage under seismic motion shall be cushioned with a resilient elastomeric pad or grommet to protect equipment. Top plate shall have adequate means for fastening to the equipment, and baseplate shall have adequate means for bolting to structure. Entire assembly shall be rated to exceed the applied seismic load (para 1.3.4.). Seismic isolator shall be Amber/Booth Type CTER.

F. Specification D: an elastomeric hanger consisting of a rectangular steel box capable of 200% minimum overload without visible deformation, 30 degree rod misalignment and an elastomeric isolation element designed for approximately 1/2" deflection. Hangers shall be Amber/Booth Type BRD.

G. Specification E: a combination spring and elastomeric hanger consisting of a rectangular steel box capable of 200% minimum overload without visible deformation, 30 degree rod misalignment, coil spring, spring retainers and elastomeric element designed for approximately 1/2" deflection. The spring shall be designed for a minimum kx/ky (horizontal-to-vertical spring rate) of 1.0. Spring hangers shall be Amber/Booth Type BSRA.

H. Specification F: a set (two or more) of spring thrust resisting assemblies, which consist of coil springs, spring retainer, isolation washer, angle mounting brackets, and elastomeric tubing for isolating thrust resister rod from fan discharge. Thrust restraints shall be Amber / Booth Type TRK.

I. Specification SB: a unitized adjustable open spring isolator and a welded steel housing designed to resist seismic forces in all directions. Restraint surfaces which engage under seismic motion shall be cushioned with a resilient elastomer to protect equipment. Restraints shall allow a maximum of 1/4" movement before engaging and shall allow for the spring to be changed if required. Isolator shall be a stable spring with a minimum ky/ky of 1.0. The spring package shall include an elastomeric pad for high frequency absorption at the base of the spring. Nuts and bolts shall be zinc-electroplated to prevent corrosion.
   1. Bolting equipment to isolator with bolts smaller than main adjusting bolt will not be allowed.
   2. Base plate shall provide means for bolting to the structure. Entire assembly shall be rated to exceed the applied seismic load. Mountings shall be Amber/Booth Type SWSR.

## 2.2 BASES

A. Specification G: a welded integral structural steel fan and motor base with NEMA standard motor slide rails and holes drilled to receive the fan and motor slide rails. The steel members shall be adequately sized to prevent distortion and misalignment of the drive, and specifically, shall be sized to limit deflection of the beam on the drive side to 0.05" due to starting torque. Snubbers to prevent excessive motion on starting or stopping shall be furnished if required; however, the snubbers shall not be engaged under steady running conditions. Bases shall be Amber/Booth Type SFB.

B. Specification H: a welded WF (main member) structural steel base for increasing rigidity of equipment mounted thereon or for unitizing belt driven fans. Fan bases shall have holes drilled to match fan and located to provide required center distance between fan and supplied NEMA standard motor slide rails. The steel members shall have minimum depth of 1/12" of the longest span, but not less than 6" deep. Junior beams and junior channels shall not be used. Cross members shall be provided where necessary to support the equipment or to prevent twisting of the main members. Where height restrictions prevent the use of members having a depth of 1/12 of the longest span, beams of less depth may be used provided they have equal rigidity. Provide height-saving brackets for side mounting of the isolators. Brackets for use with Specification type B isolators having 2.5" deflection or greater shall be of the precompression type to limit exposed bolt length. Bases shall be Amber/Booth Type WSB.

C. Specification J: a concrete inertia base consisting of perimeter structural steel concrete pouring form (CPF), reinforcing bars welded in place, bolting templates with anchor bolts and height-saving brackets for side mounting of the isolators. Brackets for use with Specification type B isolators having 2.5" deflection or greater shall be of the pre-compression type to limit exposed bolt length. The perimeter steel members shall have a minimum depth of 1/12 of the longest span, but not less than 6" deep. The base shall be sized with a minimum overlap of 4" around the base of the equipment and, in the case of belt-driven equipment, 4" beyond the end of the drive shaft. Fan bases are to be supplied with NEMA standard motor slide rails. The bases for pumps shall be sized to support the suction elbow of end suction pumps and both the suction and discharge elbows of horizontal split-case pumps. The bases shall be T-shaped where necessary to conserve space. Inertia bases shall be Amber/Booth Type CPF.

## 2.3 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

A. Specification SL: a restraint assembly for floor mounted equipment consisting of welded steel interlocking assemblies welded or bolted securely to the equipment or the equipment bases and to the supporting structure. Restraint assembly surfaces which engage under seismic motion shall be lined with a minimum ¼" thick resilient elastomeric pad to protect equipment. Restraints shall be field adjustable and be positioned for 1/4" clearance as required to prevent interference during normal operation. Restraint assembly shall have minimum rating of 2 times the catalog rating at 1 G as certified by independent laboratory test. Restraint shall be Amber/Booth Type ER.

B. Specification SC: a restraint assembly for suspended equipment or conduit consisting of high strength galvanized steel aircraft cable. Cable must have Underwriters Laboratories listed certified break strength, and shall be color-coded for easy field verification. Secure cable to structure and to braced component through bracket or stake eye specifically designed to exceed cable restraint rated capacity. Cable must be manufactured to meet or exceed minimum materials and standard requirements per AISI Manual for structural applications of steel cables and ASTM A603. Break strengths must be per ASTM E-8 procedures. Safety factor of 1.5 may be used when prestretched cable is used with end connections designed to meet the cable break strength. Otherwise safety factor 3.76 must be used. Cables shall be sized for a force as listed in section 1.3. Cables shall be installed to prevent excessive seismic motion and so arranged that they do not engage during normal operation. Restraint shall be type LRC.

## 2.4 CONDUIT GUIDES AND ANCHORS FOR ISOLATED CONDUIT

A. Specification M: For conduit Guides where specifically shown on drawings to accommodate expansion loops and compensators, the vibration isolator manufacturer shall provide conduit guides consisting of a telescopic arrangement of two sizes of steel tubing separated by a minimum, half inch thickness of heavy duty neoprene and duck or elastomeric isolation material. Guides shall be Amber/ Booth type AG.

B. Specification N: For anchors where specifically shown on drawings to accommodate expansion loops and compensators, the vibration isolator manufacturer shall provide all directional acoustical conduit anchors consisting of a telescopic arrangement of two sizes of steel tubing separated by a minimum half inch thickness of heavy duty neoprene and duck or elastomeric isolation material. All-directional anchors shall be Amber/Booth type AG.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Isolator and seismic restraints shall be installed as recommended by the manufacturer. Isolate and restrain all electrical equipment as required by these specifications.

B. All floor mounted isolated equipment shall be protected with type SB or type C unitized isolator and restraint or with separate type SL restraints (minimum of 4) in conjunction with type B isolators. For equipment with high center of gravity additional cable restraints shall be furnished, as required by isolation manufacturer, to limit forces and motion caused by rocking.

C. All suspended isolated equipment and vessels shall be protected with specification SC restraints. Cables shall be installed to prevent excessive seismic motion and so arranged that they do not engage during normal operation.

D. Rigidly Mounted Equipment:
1. Floor mounted which are exempt shall be protected by properly sized anchor bolts with elastomeric grommets provided by the isolation manufacturer.
2. Suspended equipment shall be protected with type SC bracing.

E. Conduit:
1. All conduit shall be protected in all planes by SC restraints, designed to accommodate thermal movement as well as restrain seismic motion. (Spring-loaded control rods should be used on flexible connectors in system). Equipment connected conduit shall be restrained independently. Locations shall be as determined by the isolator/seismic restraint supplier and shall include, but not be limited to: (1) At a proximity to protect all drops to equipment connections. (2) At changes in direction of conduit as required to limit over stressing or movement that contacts other building material. (3) At horizontal runs not to exceed the spacing as presented in Amber/Booth design criteria. (4) SMACNA design criteria.
2. Where conduits pass through cored holes, core diameters to be a maximum of 2" larger than conduit O.D. including insulation. Cored holes must be packed with resilient material or firestop as provided by other sections of this specification or local codes. No additional horizontal seismic bracing is required. Restrained isolators type C or SB shall support risers and provide longitudinal restraint at floors where thermal expansion is minimal and will not bind isolator restraints. For

risers in pipe shafts, specification SC cable restraints shall be installed at each level in a manner that does not interfere with thermal movement.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for the installation and load application of vibration isolation materials and products. Adjust to ensure that units do not exceed rated operating deflections or bottom out under loading, and are not short-circuited by other contacts or bearing points. Remove space blocks and similar devices (if any) intended for temporary support during installation or shipping.

B. Locate isolation hangers as near the overhead support structure as possible.

C. Adjust leveling devices as required to distribute loading uniformly on isolators. Shim units as required where leveling devices cannot be used to distribute loading properly.

D. Install isolated inertia base frames and steel bases on isolator units as indicated so that a minimum of 2 inch clearance below base will result when supported equipment has been installed and loaded for operation.

## 3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Representative of seismic restraint system manufacturer to walk the project and provide documentation indicating conformance to ISAT shop drawing seismic restraint layout.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after isolated equipment is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.

D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 16074

**SECTION 16075 - ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control cables.
3. Identification for conductors.
4. Equipment identification labels.
5. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.

B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on an white field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

D. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

2.2 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.

B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

C. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

2.3 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.

B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

C. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

2.4 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 9 painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

B. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

C. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

D. Attach plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

E. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

F. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in Division 9 painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

## 3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Accessible Raceways, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A, and 120 V to ground: Install labels at [**10-foot**] [**30-foot**] maximum intervals.

B. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. Power.

C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.

1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.

   a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
   b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

      1) Phase A: Black.
      2) Phase B: Red.
      3) Phase C: Blue.

   c. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

D. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source.

E. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.

2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

F. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

   a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
   b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
   c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
   d. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

END OF SECTION 16075

## SECTION 16120 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 16 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
2. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
3. General Cable Corporation.
4. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
5. Southwire Company.

B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.

C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN, THWN-2.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
5. Tyco Electronics Corp.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND WIRING METHODS

A. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN, THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

C. Use pulling means; including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

E. Support cables according to Division 16 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 16 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least **12 inches** of slack.

## 3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

B. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:

1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

C. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.

E. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

F. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.

G. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

H. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

I. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

J. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

## 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Contractor shall perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

D. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 16120

**SECTION 16130 - RACEWAY AND BOXES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Alflex Inc.
3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
5. Electri-Flex Co.
6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
7. Maverick Tube Corporation.

8. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
9. Wheatland Tube Company.

B. EMT: ANSI C80.3.

C. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.

D. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
1. Fittings for EMT: Steel set-screw or compression type.
2. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

E. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 COMMUNICATIONS CABLE RACEWAY AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Arnco Corporation.
2. Endot Industries Inc.
3. IPEX Inc.
4. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

B. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible type, approved for general-use installation.

## 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
2. Hoffman.

B. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

C. Wireway Covers: As indicated.

D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. EGS/Appleton Electric.

3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.
6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet Division.
10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.

B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

C. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

D. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT

3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit IMC.
6. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: EMT.
7. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: General-use, optical fiber/communications cable raceway EMT.
8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel in damp or wet locations.

B. Minimum Raceway Size: **3/4-inch** trade size.

C. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.

D. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

E. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Support raceways as specified in Division 16 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

E. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.

F. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

I. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.

J. Raceways for Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic as follows:
   1. 1-Inch Trade Size minimum: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet.
   2. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

K. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

   1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
   2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

L. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.

3.3 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:

1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.

I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 16130

**SECTION 16139 - CABLE TRAYS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes steel cable trays and accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of cable tray.

1. Show fabrication and installation details of cable tray, including plans, elevations, and sections of components and attachments to other construction elements. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, splice-plate connectors, expansion-joint assemblies, straight lengths, and fittings.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cable trays to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain cable tray components through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store indoors to prevent water or other foreign materials from staining or adhering to cable tray. Unpack and dry wet materials before storage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Chalfant Manufacturing Company.
2. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
3. Cope, T. J., Inc.; a subsidiary of Allied Tube & Conduit.
4. GS Metals Corp.; GLOBETRAY Products.
5. MONO-SYSTEMS, Inc.
6. MPHusky.
7. PW Industries.

2.2 MATERIALS AND FINISHES

A. Cable Trays, Fittings, and Accessories: Steel, complying with NEMA VE 1.
1. Provide all fittings and accessories as required for a complete system. Provide bends having radii of 12", intersections, expansion joints, transition fittings, reducers, barrier strips, conduit-to-tray clamps, hangers, supports, retaining clips, etc.

2. Factory-standard primer, ready for field painting; with cadmium-plated hardware according to ASTM B 766.

B. Provide UL-listed cable tray systems of sizes and types indicated that are compatible with the existing cable tray. Provide ladder type cable tray, 12" wide, 4" high, 12" rung spacing, NEMA class 8A, and hot-dip galvanized finish (after fabrication) or aluminum with Engineers written approval.

C. Provide center hung tray support systems. Provide support systems including lateral and longitudinal bracing to meet the requirements of Section 16073 – Hangers and Supports for electrical System.

D. Grounding: Provide cable tray systems that are completely continuous.

2.3 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.

B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as cable tray.

C. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

2.4 WARNING SIGNS

A. Lettering: 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) high, black letters on yellow background with legend "WARNING! NOT TO BE USED AS WALKWAY, LADDER, OR SUPPORT FOR LADDERS OR PERSONNEL."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

A. Comply with recommendations in NEMA VE 2. Install as a complete system, including all necessary fasteners, hold-down clips, splice-plate support systems, barrier strips, hinged horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, and crosses.

B. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.

C. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure.

1. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements.
2. Place supports so that spans do not exceed maximum spans on schedules.
3. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.
4. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
5. Manufacture center-hung support, designed for 60 percent versus 40 percent eccentric loading condition, with a safety factor of 3.
6. Locate and install supports according to NEMA FG 1.

D. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable tray and to equipment. Support cable tray independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable tray on equipment enclosure.

E. Install expansion connectors where cable tray crosses building expansion joint and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in NEMA FG 1. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.

F. Make changes in direction and elevation using standard fittings.

G. Make cable tray connections using standard fittings.

H. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

I. Workspace: Install cable trays with enough space to permit access for installing cables.

J. After installation of cable trays is completed, install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays.

3.2 CABLE INSTALLATION

A. Install cables only when cable tray installation has been completed and inspected.

B. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties as recommended by NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket. Install cable ties with a tool that includes an automatic pressure-limiting device.

C. On vertical runs, fasten cables to tray every 18 inches (457 mm). Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of the tray rungs.

D. In existing construction, remove inactive or dead cables from cable tray.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground cable trays according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor with cable tray, in addition to those required by NFPA 70.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements. Perform the following field quality-control survey:

1. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable tray, vibration, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.
2. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable tray do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communication or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers.
3. Verify that there is no intrusion of such items as pipe, hangers, or other equipment that could damage cables.
4. Remove deposits of dust, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.
5. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and retorque in suspect areas.
6. Check for missing or damaged bolts, bolt heads, or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
7. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable tray.

B. Report results in writing.

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed cable trays.

1. Install temporary protection for cables in open trays to protect exposed cables from falling objects or debris during construction. Temporary protection for cables and cable tray can be constructed of wood or metal materials until the risk of damage is over.

END OF SECTION 16139

# SECTION 16140 - WIRING DEVICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. Wall-box motion sensors.
3. Snap switches.
4. Communications outlets.
5. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 16 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for workstation outlets.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

E. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

D. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:

1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description: Straight blade, feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; GF20.
b. Pass & Seymour; 2084.

2.4 SNAP SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

B. Switches, 120V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).

2.5 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; 6111 for 120 V.
b. Hubbell; WS1277.
c. Leviton; ODS 10-ID.
d. Pass & Seymour; WS3000.
e. Watt Stopper (The); WS-200.

2. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).

B. Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Hubbell; AT120 for 120 V.
b. Leviton; ODS 15-ID.

2. Description: Adaptive-technology type, 120 V, adjustable time delay up to 20 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).

C. Long-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Hubbell; ATP1600WRP.
b. Leviton; ODWWV-IRW.
c. Pass & Seymour; WA1001.
d. Watt Stopper (The); CX-100.

2. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 110-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).

D. Wide-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Hubbell; ATP120HBRP.
b. Leviton; ODWHB-IRW.
c. Pass & Seymour; HS1001.
d. Watt Stopper (The); CX-100-3.

2. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 150-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).

## 2.6 COMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS

A. Telephone Outlet:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cooper; 3560-6.
b. Leviton; 40649.

2. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for terminating 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e. Comply with UL 1863.

## 2.7 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) brushed brass with factory polymer finish.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

## 2.8 FINISHES

A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: **As selected by Architect**, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:

   a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
   b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
   c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 16140

**SECTION 16145- LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:

1. Indoor occupancy sensors.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. LED: Light-emitting diode.

B. PIR: Passive infrared.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.

1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Hubbell Lighting.
2. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
4. Sensor Switch, Inc.
5. Watt Stopper (The).

B. General Description: Wall- or ceiling-mounting, solid-state units with a separate relay unit.

1. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when covered area is occupied and off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
2. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
3. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
4. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

5. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
6. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; keep lighting off when selected lighting level is present.

C. PIR Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by sensing a combination of heat and movement in area of coverage.

1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
2. Detection Coverage (Room): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
3. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot-high ceiling.

D. Ultrasonic Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by sensing a change in pattern of reflected ultrasonic energy in area of coverage.

1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot- high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.

E. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by using a combination of PIR and ultrasonic detection methods in area of coverage. Particular technology or combination of technologies that controls on-off functions shall be selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.

## 2.2 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

A. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Division 16 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 16 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify circuits or luminaries controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
2. Operational Test: Verify operation of each lighting control device, and adjust time delays.

B. Lighting control devices that fail tests and inspections are defective work.

END OF SECTION 16145

**SECTION 16269 - VARIABLE FREQUENCY CONTROLLERS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to this section.

B. Division – 16 Basic Materials and Methods sections apply to work specified in this section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Extent of variable frequency drive (VFD) work is indicated by drawings, schedules and specified herein. Work includes complete installation, electrical connections, testing, and commissioning.

B. Verify compatibility of VFD with motors supplied under Division 15. Review Division 15 specifications, plans, schedules, etc., to issue compatibility.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NEC, NEMA and IEEE (including Harmonic Standard IEEE-519) Standards as applicable to wiring methods, construction and installation of variable frequency drives. Comply with applicable requirements of UL 508 "Power Conversion Equipment". Provide complete packaged units which have been UL-listed and labeled by Underwriters Laboratory or ETL Testing Laboratories, Inc. Note: The entire unit shall carry the label, not just components.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. PRODUCT DATA: Submit manufacturer's data on variable frequency drives.

B. SHOP DRAWINGS: Submit dimensioned drawings of variable frequency drives including, but not necessarily limited to, the following.

1. Complete data sheet.
2. Set of outline drawings giving complete mounting information, conduit entry and exit dimensions, over all unit dimensions, weights, physical characteristics, etc.
3. Set of complete electrical drawings for power and control wiring
4. Manufacture's literature giving detailed information of equipment being supplied including parts numbers, model numbers and ratings.

C. HARMONIC DISTORTION REPORT: After installation is complete, submit harmonic voltage and current distortion report as specified herein.

D. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products manufactured by and supplied by the following vendor(s) only:

| VENDOR | VFD MANUFACTURER |
|---|---|
| Energy Management Corporation | Mitsubishi |
| Debenham | Yaskawa |

A. Must be actively engaged in manufacturing and supplying pulse width modulated variable frequency drives and built up systems, and must have a minimum of five years of experience in each supply or manufacture, as applicable.

B. Must maintain full time service personal on call 24 hours/day as well as authorized parts and service facilities within 250 miles of the project with demonstrated record of service for at least the last three years.

C. Must have UL 508C or ETL certification if project requires "built-up" assemblies which are not "factory – standard" products.

D. Must be an ISO-9001 certified facility; manufacturing all products to ISO-9001 quality standards.

2.2 GENERAL:

A. Except as otherwise indicated, provide pulse width modulated variable frequency A.C. drives and ancillary components; of types, sizes, ratings and electrical characteristics indicated which comply with manufacture's standard materials, design and construction in accordance with published information and as required for a complete installation.

2.3 APPLICATION:

A. Provide drive units which are applicable to the driven load characteristics. For centrifugal fan and pump applications, provide variable torque rated VFD's capable of providing 115% rated current for one minute. For conveyor, positive displacement pumps, and compressor applications, provide constant torque rated VFD's capable of providing 150% of rated current for one minute. In addition, provide drives which meet the following operating conditions:

1. Operable on facility power, with voltage and phase indicated on the drawings and without the need for isolation or step up /down transformers unless indicated.
2. Capable of performing at an altitude of 4500 feet above sea level and have an operating temperature range 0° to 40°C (32° to 104°F) with a relative humidity of 0 to 90% (non-condensing). If mounted outdoors or in unconditioned spaces, provide environmental control necessary to operate in climate of -20°C to 50°C (-4° to 1224°F), 0 to 100%.

2.4 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE SYSTEM:

A. The variable frequency AC drive shall convert 3 phase, 60 Hertz input power to an adjustable AC frequency and voltage for controlling the speed of AC squirrel cage motors. The rectifier section (converter) shall employ a diode or fully gated bridge to develop a constant DC bus voltage, Variable voltage rectifiers utilizing partially gated SCR's are unacceptable. The DC bus shall utilize filler capacitors and DC link inductors to minimize generated harmonics. The PWM invertor control scheme shall produce an output wave form which closely approximates actual sine wave current. The output voltage shall vary proportionally with the output frequency to maintain a constant above 60 Hz. The continuous current rating shall be equal to or greater than the full load amperes required by the application. Provide units capable of starting and continuously driving the specified maximum motor load as identified on drawings and schedules.

B. Each drive shall have a MDI system pure-power harmonic filters integrated within the VFD enclosure. Typical harmonic current and voltage distortion performance levels shall be submitted.

C. Provide system capable of operating without any system trip or damage based on the nominal power specifications and requirements indicated and subject to the following

1. Plus or minus 10% voltage fluctuation.
2. Plus or minus 3% frequency variation (5% if served by back-up generator.
3. Distorted voltage waveform with up to 10% total voltage harmonic distortion.

D. Provide system with voltage sag ride-through coordination under normal operating (average load) conditions to prevent nuisance trips with the following utility interruptions (based on preliminary IEEE working group P1346 data):

1. 0% voltage for 1 cycle.
2. 60% voltage for 10 cycles.
3. 87% voltage continuous.

E. The drive shall have sufficient capacity to provide speed control of the motor throughout the operating range as specified herein.

2.5 EFFICIENCY AND POWER FACTOR:

A. Provide solid state converter and invertor power switching components and controls to achieve a minimum 95% efficiency at full load and speed.

B. The displacement power factor (as measured at the input to the VFD System) shall be 95% or better across the operational speed range.

2.6 PROTECTION

A. Provide short circuit protection by means of an externally operated, door interlocked circuit breaker or motor circuit protector (MCP) rated at 65,000 AIC minimum. Provide VFD's with fast acting semi-conductor fuses to protect against input short circuits. The door interlocked handle must be capable of being locked off to meet NEC requirements.

B. Provide VFD operated motor overload protection by means of programmable, speed sensitive, electronic overload circuits with instantaneous trip, inverse time trip and current limit functions. These shall be adjustable and optimized for the application. Comply with NEC requirements and UL 991.

C. In addition to the protection above, provide over- and under-voltage protection, over temperature protection, ground fault protection, and control or microprocessor fault protection. These protective circuits shall cause an orderly shutdown of the VFD, provide indication of the fault condition, and require a manual reset (except under-voltage) before restart. Under-voltage from a power loss shall be set to automatically restart after return to normal. The history of the previous three faults shall be retained in a fault buffer for later review.

2.7 CONSTRUCTION:

A. Provide NEMA configuration enclosure for each variable frequency drive system. The enclosure shall be either wall mounted or free standing, as required, with forced ventilation. Mount all components in a single enclosure including, but not limited to, the VFD unit, contractors, door interlocked circuit breaker, and/or other items listed in the specification or shown on the drawings. All components shall be completely wired within the enclosure.Limit overall size of unit to space allocated on the drawings. Verify code required clearance requirements before manufacture and installation of unit.

B. Indoor location: Provide NEMA 12 dust tight, non-ventilated enclosure, or NEMA 1ventilated enclosure, ventilated by means of filtered air forced through the enclosure to create a positive internal pressure.

C. Outdoor location or location exposed to weather: Provide NEMA 4 (was down type), non-ventilated, enclosure. Locate all external heat sinks, fans, etc. associated with heat transfer in the rear of the enclosure with adequate stand offs for proper convection.

D. Mount the variable frequency drive ancillary components on a removable panel within the enclosure such that panel is removable from enclosure for maintenance and part replacement.

E. Provide "Machine Tool" type control Transformer with primary and secondary fusing. All control power for operator devices and customer connections shall be 120 volts.

F. Mount door with a minimum of two hinges with removable pins. Door shall be rigid and large doors shall have additional hinges and stiffening steel.

G. Provide door mounted, Industrial type, oil tight operator devices similar to those found on motor control centers.

H. Paint enclosure with high grade epoxy (ANSI 61 Grey), a minimum of 50-70 microns thick.

I. Provide an electrical shock warning label to warn personnel that a potential of electric shock exists.

J. Provide screened or engraved labels on all door operator and pilot devices.

K. Each VFD system shall include a 3-phase line voltage monitor relay to protect the overall system from phase loss, phase imbalance, and phase reversal. User adjustable voltage trip and reset levels will be set by the VFD startup technician as part of the system commissioning.

2.8 STANDARD FEATURES:

A. Provide the following standard features on all VFD units:

1. Motor Braking Torque shall be accomplished by means of DC injection Into the motor or by regenerative braking.

2. The drive shall contain an output frequency clamp such that minimum or maximum output frequency can be set at desired limits.

3. Frequency Jump: The drive shall be supplied with frequency jump control to avoid operating at a point of resonance with the natural frequency of the machine.

4. Synchronous Transfer: Provide synchronous transfer feature to allow transfer of motor from VFD to the utility line and back to VFD operation while the motor is running.

5. Provide the following door mounted operator controls as a minimum:

   a. Hand/Off/Auto switch
   b. Local/Remote speed control
   c. Frequency setting speed pot
   d. Frequency indication meter calibrated in % speed.
   e. Motor voltage indication
   f. Motor current indication
   g. VFD enable light
   h. VFD fault light
   i. External fault light (safeties interlock). If drive has an english character based display, this indication can be shown on that display in lieu of a pilot light.

6. Provide a minimum of the following protective features with an alarm display indication:
   a. Instantaneous over-current
   b. Motor stalled
   c. Motor overload
   d. Heat-sink over temperature
   e. Power loss
   f. Output ground fault
   g. Output short circuit
   h. Loss of process speed signal (I.e. 4-20 rna.)
   i. Microprocessor malfunction
   j. Provide the following termination points on a terminal strip for field connection:

      1) Safeties interlock connection

   k. Remote Start/Stop connection
   l. Remote VFD fault connection
   m. Remote speed reference signal input (See item 10 below)

7. Provide the following parameter adjustments to tune the VFD system:
   a. Minimum and maximum speeds; maximum output voltage at output frequency
   b. Acceleration and deceleration times (adjustable from 1 to 120 seconds, minimum)
   c. Over-current trip point
   d. Current limit response to overload
   e. Adjustable carrier frequency to minimize audible motor noise.
   f. DC boost to automatically (or manually, 3%) adjust boost voltage on each start to compensate for load changes.

8. The VFD shall be capable of starting into a rotating motor at any speed.

9. Remote signal connection terminals (0-5 VDC or 0-10 VDC = 0-100% speed or 4-20 ma – 20 - 100% Speed). Analog signals shall be programmable as normal or inverted.

10. The VFD shall have a programmable response to loss of a 4-20 ma signal. The following responses are acceptable.

    a. Fault and stop the drive.
    b. Alarm and maintain last reference (within 10%)
    c. Alarm and go to preset speed
    d. Alarm and go to minimum speed
    e. Alarm and go to maximum speed

11. The VFD shall have a programmable analog outpul rated either 0-20 ma or 0-5 volts to represent one of the following:

    a. Proportional to output frequency
    b. Proportional to output current
    c. Proportional to DC bus voltage
    d. Proportional to output power
    e. programmable output offset shall be provided to allow modification of the analog output obtain 2-10 volt DC or 4-20 ma.
    f. The VFD shall have output relay contacts rated 115 volt *AC/30* volt DC 5 amp resistive, 2 amp inductive. The contacts shall be:
    g. Form A run contact
    h. Form C fault contact
    i. Form C alarm contact
    j. Form A programmable contact to change state upon the following conditions: at speed. at frequency, at current, or at torque

12. Provide VFD with transient voltage surge suppression with maximum UL 1449 suppression rating of 1000 amps, line to ground on 480 volt systems, and 500 amps, line to ground on 208 volt systems.

B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

2.9 ADDITIONAL FEATURES

A. The following additional features shall be provided:

1. Digital or analog ammeter.
2. Digital or analog voltmeter.
3. Wallmeter
4. Controls for manual forward/reverse motor operation.

B. Rated overload current upgraded to 150% for constant torque rated VFD's and 115% for variable torque rated VFD's. Hardware overcurrent shall be 225% of VFD's constant torque rating.

C. Hand-held Programming Unit with 14 function fault indication. The following faults shall be indicated.

| | |
|---|---|
| Overvoltage | Overload motor |
| Power failure | Overload invertor |
| Overheat (invertor) | Stall trip |
| Brake Fault | Under-voltage |
| Acceleration Over-current | Ground Fault |
| Steady Speed Over-current | External Temp.Trip |
| Deceleration Over-current | Option Failure |

D. Upgraded adjustable acceleration/deceleration item settings adjustable from 0.1 to 3600' seconds.

E. (Provide terminals for connecting dynamic braking resistors in the event load inertia is such that the required deceleration time generates bus overvoltage faults.)

F. Provide several ports for remote control/monitoring of the drive functions.)

G. Forward/Reverse Switch (door mounted).)

H. Multi-motor units with overload for each motor.)

I. Lead/lag motor control when VFD is operating more than one motor, if applications require.)

2.10 TESTING:

A. Prior to shipping, test each unit and provide a certified test report with each unit. Standard tests shall include:

1. Visual Inspection: Consisting of checking unit enclosure, wiring, connections, fasteners, covers and locking mechanism.

2. High pot test: Two (2)X rated voltage plus 1000 volts AC for 60 seconds shall be applied per UL 508 on all peripheral drive system power components (circuit breakers, contactors, motor overloads, line reactor, disconnect switches etc.) as a complete package. A copy of test results shall be included in operation manuals.

3. System run test under actual motor load.

4. Control panel devices: test all devices, lights, switches, etc.

5. Additional Equipment: test additional equipment specified with VFD system.

6. Special tests: as required and specified.

B. IDENTIFICATION:

1. Provide 1/16" black formica label with 1/4" high lettering on each VFD unit identifying the equipment served.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MECHANICAL COORDINATION:

A. Meet with the supplier of the mechanical equipment and determine the exact characteristics of the motors for which VFD's are to be provided. Verify the exact control requirements, including interface signal type, reversing/non-reversing drives, interlocks, etc.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES;

A. Install variable frequency drives as indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, applicable requirements of NEC, NEMA standards, and NECA's "Standards of Installation", and in compliance with recognized industry practices to ensure that products fulfill requirements.

3.3 MOTOR DISCONNECT INTERLOCK:

A. Where motor disconnect switches are installed on the load side of VFD's, provide latemake, early-break auxiliary contacts on each disconnect switch. Wire auxiliary contact to VFD safety contact, such that disconnecting the motor will shut down the drive first, and closing the switch will start the drive only after power is applied to the motor.

3.4 ADJUST AND CLEAN

A. Inspect operating mechanisms for malfunctioning and, where necessary, adjust units for free mechanical movement.

B. Touch-up scratched or marred surfaces to match original finish.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. The supplier of the AC drive described herein, shall provide field start-up service by an authorized factory trained service representative. The factory representative shall be trained in the maintenance and troubleshooting of the equipment as specified herein. Start-up service shall include system check-out, start-up and system run, and harmonic testing.

1. Verify that the input voltage is within the manufacturer's specification tolerances.
2. Verify that the motor rotation is correct in all modes of operation.
3. Verify all operator devices, programming and monitoring functions to be fully operational
4. Verify operation of all field signal control connections.
5. Measure and record system output voltage and current at 50% and 100 % speed. Tune the output voltage to correspond to motor nameplate data.
6. Make all parameter adjustments to tune and optimize the VFD system to the application. Record all configuration values as part of this report.

7. Conduct harmonic tests as identified below.

8. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide owner training for each model and type of VFD system provided.

3.6 HARMONIC DISTORTION REPORT:

A. After installation is complete, measure the harmonic voltage and current distortion of each Variable Frequency Drive, with the VFD unit running at 50% operating speed and at highest operating speed. Take measurements on each phase (L-L and L-N) on the line side (input terminals) of the VFD.

B. Submit report which includes the following:

1. Data (text and graphical) showing voltage and current waveforms, voltage and current THD and individual harmonic spectrum analysis.
2. Power quality reports including telephone influence factor, true and displacement power factor, and voltage and current imbalance.

C. Provide the Engineer with two copies of the harmonic distortion report.

3.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS:

A. The vendor shall supply two complete manuals consisting of, as a minimum, general system arrangement, power wiring diagram, control wiring diagram, schematic of VFD System components and options, factory test reports, trouble shooting data, parts lists, and preventative maintenance information.

END OF SECTION 16269

## SECTION 16410 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
4. Enclosures.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. NC: Normally closed.

B. NO: Normally open.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 800 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with cartridge fuse interiors to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
4. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.

2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
4. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.

## 2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

D. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

D. Install fuses in fusible devices.

E. Comply with NECA 1.

## 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 16410

**SECTION 16442 - PANELBOARDS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes distribution panelboards and lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
8. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards.

C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Panelboard schedules for installation in panelboards.

F. Operation and maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Enclosures: Surface-mounted cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.

2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
4. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.

C. Incoming Mains Location: Top and bottom.

D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses: Tin-plated aluminum.

E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
3. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
4. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.

F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

G. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

## 2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following to match existing:
1. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.

C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
1. Re-use the existing breakers from the old MDP and provide new as required for panel P5 to match existing with an equivalent AIC.

## 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following to match existing:
1. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
2. Cutler hammer.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

E. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

## 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following to match existing:
1. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
3. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
    c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application;
    d. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
    e. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

## 2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, store and install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.

B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Mount top of trim 72 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

D. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

G. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future.

H. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

I. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads and incorporating Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 16442

**SECTION 16511 - INTERIOR LIGHTING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
2. Emergency lighting units.
3. Exit signs.
4. Lighting fixture supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 16 Section "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BF: Ballast factor.

B. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

C. CRI: Color-rendering index.

D. HID: High-intensity discharge.

E. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.

F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

G. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:

1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
3. Ballast, including BF.

4. Energy-efficiency data.
5. Air and Thermal Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Furnish data required in "Submittals" Article in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
6. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
7. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
8. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.

    a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by manufacturer.
    b. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Lighting fixtures.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extends to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.

D. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.

E. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, from manufacturer.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

H. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining nine years.
2. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: 10% and not less than one for less than 10 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Plastic Diffusers and Lenses: 10% and not less than one for less than 10 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Fluorescent-fixture-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every 20 emergency lighting units.
4. Ballasts: 10% and not less than one for less than 10 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS

A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.

B. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.

C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

D. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

a. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
b. UV stabilized.

G. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12, etc.), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple, etc.), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
c. Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start, etc.) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
d. ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
e. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

H. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.

2.3 BALLASTS FOR LINEAR FLUORESCENT LAMPS

A. General Requirements for Electronic Ballasts:

1. Comply with UL 935 and with ANSI C82.11.
2. Designed for type and quantity of lamps served.
3. Ballasts shall be designed for full light output unless another BF, dimmer, or bi-level control is indicated.
4. Sound Rating: Class A.
5. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.
6. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
7. Operating Frequency: 42kHz or higher.
8. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
9. BF: 0.88 or higher.
10. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
11. Parallel Lamp Circuits: Multiple lamp ballasts shall comply with ANSI C82.11 and shall be connected to maintain full light output on surviving lamps if one or more lamps fail.

B. Luminaires controlled by occupancy sensors shall have programmed-start ballasts.

C. Electronic Programmed-Start Ballasts for T8 Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.11 and the following:
1. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.

D. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1; energy saving, high-power factor, Class P, and having automatic-reset thermal protection.

1. Ballast Manufacturer Certification: Indicated by label.

E. Single Ballasts for Multiple Lighting Fixtures: Factory wired with ballast arrangements and bundled extension wiring to suit final installation conditions without modification or rewiring in the field.

F. Ballasts for Bi-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.

1. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.

a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
b. Low-Level Operation: 30 percent of rated lamp lumens.

2. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated.

2.4 BALLASTS FOR COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS

A. Description: Electronic-programmed rapid-start type, complying with UL 935 and with ANSI C 82.11, designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated. Ballast shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated:

1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
2. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
3. Sound Rating: Class A.
4. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.

5. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
6. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
7. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
8. BF: 0.95 or higher unless otherwise indicated.
9. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
10. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.

## 2.5 EMERGENCY FLUORESCENT POWER UNIT

A. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
2. Nightlight Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously.
3. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.

    a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
6. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.

## 2.6 EXIT SIGNS

A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:
1. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
2. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.

    a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
    b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
    c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
    d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

2.7 FLUORESCENT LAMPS

A. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 32 W maximum, nominal length of 48 inches, 2800 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature **3500** K, and average rated life 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.

B. Compact Fluorescent Lamps: 4-Pin, CRI 80 (minimum), color temperature **3500** K, average rated life of 10,000 hours at three hours operation per start unless otherwise indicated.

1. 13 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 900 initial lumens (minimum).
2. 18 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 1200 initial lumens (minimum).
3. 26 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 1800 initial lumens (minimum).
4. 32 W: T4, triple tube, rated 2400 initial lumens (minimum).
5. 42 W: T4, triple tube, rated 3200 initial lumens (minimum).
6. 57 W: T4, triple tube, rated 4300 initial lumens (minimum).
7. 70 W: T4, triple tube, rated 5200 initial lumens (minimum).

2.8 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Division 16 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.

C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.

D. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gage**.

E. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, **12 gage**.

F. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

G. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Lighting fixtures:

1. Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install lamps in each luminaire.

B. Temporary Lighting: If it is necessary, and approved by Architect, to use permanent luminaires for temporary lighting, install and energize the minimum number of luminaires necessary. When

construction is sufficiently complete, remove the temporary luminaires, disassemble, clean thoroughly, install new lamps, and reinstall.

C. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and fixture shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.

D. Lay-in Ceiling Lighting Fixtures Supports: Use grid as a support element.

1. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches from lighting fixture corners.
2. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.

E. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

F. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.

G. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

## 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels with panel and circuit numbers on concealed junction and outlet boxes. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.

B. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

## 3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Burn-in all lamps that require specific aging period to operate properly, prior to occupancy by Owner. Burn-in fluorescent and compact fluorescent lamps intended to be dimmed, for at least 100 hours at full voltage.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting aimable luminaires to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required after dark.

1. Adjust aimable luminaires in the presence of Architect.

END OF SECTION 16511

# SECTION 16521 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
2. Poles and accessories.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 16 Section "Interior Lighting" for exterior luminaires normally mounted on exterior surfaces of buildings.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color-rendering index.

C. HID: High-intensity discharge.

D. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.

E. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

F. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.

G. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:

1. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
2. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
3. Details of installation and construction.
4. Luminaire materials.

5. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.

   a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
   b. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

6. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
7. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.
8. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
9. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
10. Anchor bolts for poles.
11. Manufactured pole foundations.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
3. Design calculations, certified by a qualified professional engineer, indicating strength of screw foundations and soil conditions on which they are based.
4. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a professional engineer.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MATERIALS MAINTENANCE SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Glass and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

3. Ballasts: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.

B. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.

C. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than 1/4 inch deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below ground line.

D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

E. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.

1. Warranty Period for Luminaires: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on the light fixture schedule.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LUMINAIRES

A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. LER Tests Incandescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
2. LER Tests Fluorescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
3. LER Tests HID Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.

B. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.

C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

D. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.

G. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.

H. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

I. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.

J. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

K. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

L. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

M. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

N. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:

a. "USES ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
c. Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
d. Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
e. ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
f. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

## 2.3 BALLASTS FOR HID LAMPS

A. Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029 and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F.
3. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F.

## 2.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.

1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.

B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.

D. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

E. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

F. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.

G. Breakaway Supports: Frangible breakaway supports, tested by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, according to AASHTO LTS-4-M.

## 2.5 STEEL POLES

A. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig; one-piece construction up to 40 feet in height with access handhole in pole wall.

1. Shape: Square, straight.
2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

B. Steel Mast Arms: Single-arm type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as pole.

C. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.

1. Adapter fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole mounted adapter, then bolted together with stainless galvanized-steel bolts.
2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
3. Match pole material and finish.

D. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.

E. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported cable times a 5.0 safety factor.

F. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

    a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.6 POLE ACCESSORIES

A. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

A. Install lamps in each luminaire.

B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.

C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

## 3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.

B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:

1. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: 60 inches.
2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet.
3. Trees: 15 feet from tree trunk.
4. .

C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

## 3.3 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Steel Conduits: Comply with Division 16 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

## 3.4 GROUNDING

A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

B. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.

B. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.

1. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

C. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires.

END OF SECTION 16521

## SECTION 16852 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Heat detectors.
5. Notification appliances.
6. Remote annunciator.
7. Addressable interface device.

#### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Noncoded, addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:

a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
b. NICET-certified fire-alarm technician, Level III minimum.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits.
3. Include battery-size calculations.
4. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
5. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
6. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For smoke and heat detectors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings showing the location of each smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the detector.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72.

E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

F. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction and include the following:

1. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA 72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
3. Record copy of site-specific software.
4. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:

    a. Frequency of testing of installed components.
    b. Frequency of inspection of installed components.
    c. Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
    d. Manufacturer's user training manuals.

5. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
6. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Copy of NFPA 25.

I. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level III technician.

C. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer. Components shall be compatible with, and operate as, an extension of existing system.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.6 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Comply with UL 864.

B. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

C. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Bosch Security Systems.
2. Fire Control Instruments, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
3. Fire Lite Alarms; a Honeywell company.
4. Gamewell; a Honeywell company.
5. NOTIFIER; a Honeywell company.
6. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
7. Silent Knight; a Honeywell company.
8. SimplexGrinnell LP; a Tyco International company.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:

1. Manual stations.
2. Heat detectors.
3. Smoke detectors.
4. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
5. Heat detectors in elevator shaft and pit.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm-notification appliances.
2. Identify alarm at the fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
5. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
6. Record events in the system memory.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
5. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
6. Break in standby battery circuitry.
7. Failure of battery charging.
8. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.

E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864 and listed and labeled by an NRTL.

a. System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.

2. Addressable control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment.

B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 2 line(s) of 40 characters, minimum.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.

C. Circuits:

1. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A.

a. Initiating Device Circuits: Style D.
b. Notification Appliance Circuits: Style Z.
c. Signaling Line Circuits: Style 6.
d. Install no more than 25 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.

D. Notification Appliance Circuit: Operation shall sound in a temporal pattern.

E. Elevator Recall:

1. Smoke detectors at the following locations shall initiate automatic elevator recall.

a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.

2. Elevator lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor.
3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.

a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.

F. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

G. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.

1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

H. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.

I. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

## 2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.

## 2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
5. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power-on status.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

   a. Primary status.
   b. Device type.
   c. Present average value.
   d. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

## 2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting with smoke-detector bases.
2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

## 2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.

1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.

B. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.

C. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.

D. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.

E. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights comply with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- high letters on the lens.

1. Rated Light Output:

a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.

2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.

## 2.8 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.

1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.

B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

## 2.9 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

A. Description: Microelectronic monitor module, NRTL listed for use in providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.

B. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall.

2.10 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.

B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:

1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
2. Programming device.
3. LED display.
4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
6. .

D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:

1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
2. Address of the supervisory signal.
3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
4. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
5. Low battery.
6. Abnormal test signal.
7. Communication bus failure.
8. .

E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.

F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

1. Install seismic bracing. Comply with requirements inDivision 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

C. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on finished floor with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:

1. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
2. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix Ain NFPA 72.
5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 3 feet from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture.

F. Heat Detectors in Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location.

G. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

H. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.

I. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling.

J. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

K. Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

L. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 3 feet from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
1. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
2. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.

   a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
   b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.

C. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

D. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

G. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 13852